

M 751  
H I S T O R Y

OF THE

C A M P A I G N S

OF

1780 AND 1781,

IN THE

SOUTHERN PROVINCES

OF

N O R T H A M E R I C A.

BY

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL TARLETON,

COMMANDANT OF THE LATE BRITISH LEGION.

---

L O N D O N :

PRINTED FOR T. CADELL, IN THE STRAND.

M.DCC.LXXXVII.

1787





# C O N T E N T S.

## CHAPTER I.

	Page.
<b>E</b> FFECT of D'Estaing's attack upon Savannah	2
Rhode island evacuated	3
Embarkation of a body of troops	<i>ib.</i>
Sir Henry Clinton sails from New York, and arrives at Savannah	4
Difficulties to encounter before the siege of Charles town	<i>ib.</i>
The army crosses Ashley river	9
The admiral passes the bar and fort Moultrie	10
Charles town summoned	12
Americans surprised at Monk's corner	13
Charles town completely invested	17
Earl Cornwallis takes the command in the country	18
Americans surprised at Lenew's	20
Fort Moultrie surrenders	<i>ib.</i>
Charles town capitulates	22
Proclamations	24
Effect of proclamations	25
Part of the army embark	26
Earl Cornwallis passes the Santee river	27
Action at Wacaw	30
A 2	Sir

	Page
Sir Henry Clinton sails from Charles town	32
Notes to the First Chapter	33 to 84

## CHAPTER II.

Earl Cornwallis takes the command of the King's troops in Georgia and South Carolina	85
His disposition of the King's troops	86
Earl Cornwallis goes to Charles town	89
Eight hundred loyalists from North Carolina join the British	91
Intelligence of a continental army	92
The effect it produces in South Carolina	<i>ib.</i>
Colonel Sumpter attacks Rocky mount and Hanging rock	94
Baron de Kalb approaches with the American army	97
General Gates supercedes De Kalbe	<i>ib.</i>
Lord Rawdon assembles the King's troops	101
Earl Cornwallis arrives at Camden	102
Battle near Camden	105
Action near the Catawba fords	114
Notes to the Second Chapter	117 to 153

## CHAPTER III.

State of the royal army	155
State of South Carolina	156
The King's troops move forward	158
And halt at Charlotte town	159
Lieutenant-colonel Brown attacked by Colonel Clarke	161
And relieved by Lieutenant-colonel Cruger	162
Ferguson defeated	164
The British army falls back	167

Passes

# C O N T E N T S.

	Page
Passes the Catawba river	167
And takes post at Wynnesborough	169
Marion overruns the lower districts	171
Ineffectual attempt upon Sumpter	173
Sumpter moves towards Ninety Six	174
Action at Blackstock's	178
State of the American army	181
Major-general Greene takes the command	182
Preparations for a second invasion of North Carolina	<i>ib.</i>
Major-general Leslie arrives with a reinforcement	184
Notes to the Third Chapter	185 to 207

## C H A P T E R IV.

Movements of the Americans	207
The British light troops pass Broad river	210
Earl Cornwallis moves from Wynnesborough	212
Action at the Cowpens	215
General Leslie joins Earl Cornwallis	222
Pursuit of General Morgan	<i>ib.</i>
Morgan passes the Catawba river	223
The King's troops pass the Catawba	224
Affair at Tarrant's	226
Earl Cornwallis marches to Salisbury	227
Skirmish at the Trading ford	<i>ib.</i>
Earl Cornwallis moves to the upper fords	228
General Greene passes the Dan	229
Earl Cornwallis marches to Hillsborough, and erects the King's standard	<i>ib.</i>
General Greene re-crosses the Dan	233
Earl Cornwallis passes Haw river	234
Skirmish near Allamance	235

Affair

	Page
Affair at Wetzell's mill	237
Earl Cornwallis passes a branch of Deep river	239
Notes to the Fourth Chapter	241 to 269

## CHAPTER V.

Battle of Guildford	271
Earl Cornwallis crosses Deep river, and retires towards Cross creek	279
General Greene follows the British	<i>ib.</i>
Earl Cornwallis arrives at Cross creek	280
And moves to Wilmington	281
General Greene advances towards South Carolina	282
Earl Cornwallis marches towards the Roanoke	285
Skirmish at Halifax	287
Earl Cornwallis unites the royal armies at Petersburg	291
The British pass James river at Westover	293
The Marquis de la Fayette crosses the South and North Anna	294
Earl Cornwallis sends detachments to destroy stores	295
The British move towards Richmond	299
The Marquis de la Fayette follows the King's troops	<i>ib.</i>
Earl Cornwallis moves towards Williamsburgh	300
Affair near the Chickahomany	301
Notes to the Fifth Chapter	303 to 351

## CHAPTER VI.

Earl Cornwallis moves to James river	352
Affair near James island	354
Earl Cornwallis marches to Portsmouth	359
Hampton road not approved of as a station for the navy	360
Earl Cornwallis takes possession of York town	361
	Portsmouth

# C O N T E N T S.

vii.

	Page
Portsmouth evacuated — —	361
The French fleet enter the Chesapeake — —	364
La Fayette takes post at Williamsburgh —	ib.
General Washington's force concentrated at Williamsburgh —	371
York town invested — —	375
Two redoubts carried at York town by the French and Americans	385
Sortie from York town — —	386
Surrender of York town and Gloucester —	388
Notes to the Sixth Chapter — —	395. to 459.

# A P P E N D I X.

Action near Camden — —	462
Surrender of fort Watson — —	471
Camden evacuated — — —	477
Ninety Six invested — —	485
Surrender of Augusta — —	487
General Greene repulsed with loss at Ninety Six —	497
Lord Rawdon forces Greene to retreat — —	498
Ninety Six evacuated — —	502
Action at Eutaw — —	509

## DIRECTIONS TO THE BINDER.

MAP of the country to face page 1.

Plan of the siege of Charles town, page 32.

Plan of the battle near Camden, page 108.

Plan of the battle of Guildford, page 276.

Plan of the siege of York town, page 394.

---

## E R R A T A.

Page 27, line 23, for *discretionary* read *discretionary*.

164, 16, — to which he opposed, read to which he *was* opposed.

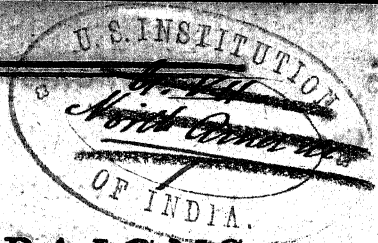
166, 2, — *Charles* town read *Charlotte* town.

183, 18, — with *on* intention read with *an* intention.

223, 15, — *general* read *generals*.

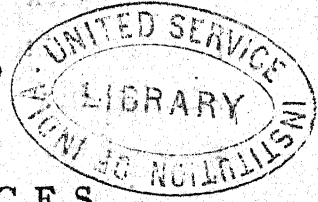


M. 751  
A



# HISTORY OF THE CAMPAIGNS

OF 1780 AND 1781,



IN THE

SOUTHERN PROVINCES

OF

NORTH AMERICA.

United Service Institution  
of India.

---

## CHAPTER I.

*Effect of D'Estaing's attack upon Savannah.—Rhode island evacuated.—Embarkation of a body of troops.—Sir Henry Clinton sails from New York, and arrives at Savannah.—Difficulties to encounter before the siege of Charles town.—The army crosses Ashley river.—The Admiral passes the Bar, — and fort Moultrie. — Charles town summoned. — American's surprised at Monk's Corner. — Charles town completely invested. — Earl Cornwallis takes the command in the country. — Americans surprised at Lenew's. — Fort Moultrie surrenders. — Charles town capitulates. — Proclamations. — Effect of proclamations. — Part of the army embark. — Earl Cornwallis passes the Santee river. — Action at Wacsarw. — Sir Henry Clinton sails from Charles town.*

THIS short history commences at a time, when the whole aspect  
of the American war experienced a change the most critical and  
B interesting ;

CHAP. I.

CHAP. I. interesting; when prospects, big with the utmost importance, sprung up in a variety of shapes, and gave birth to those decisive events which so speedily followed. Whilst several European powers privately assisted the colonies, in opposition to the mother country, they undoubtedly injured the interests of Great Britain, without allowing her the advantage of reprisal; but when France and Spain threw off the mask, and openly embraced the cause of American independence, the nature of the war underwent a manifest alteration. From that epoch, different political, as well as naval and military measures, might have been adopted. The magnitude of the confederacy was evident; and fortunate would it have been for England, had she attacked the vulnerable situation of her avowed enemies at that momentous and critical period. An immediate attention to the West Indies, and an early evacuation of New York, might have produced such important consequences, as would in all human probability, have given a different termination to the war: Her blood and treasures might then have been saved; her natural enemies might then have been humbled; and America would have resorted again to the protection of her parent state, after Great Britain had vindicated her own dignity, and established that pre-eminence, which she had acquired in her late contest with the house of Bourbon. But as it is intended only to enter into a detail of occurrences which took place in the southern provinces, during the campaigns of 1780 and 1781, and not to deviate into political disquisitions, it will be sufficient to point out the primary cause upon which the principal events were hinged, and then proceed to the narrative of military operations.

Effect of  
D'Eſtaing's  
attack upon  
Savannah.

IN the autumn of the year 1779, Congress was considerably advanced in credit and power by the military combination in Georgia.

The

The appearance of the French, although the attack upon Savannah CHAP. I. was not crowned with success, re-animated the expiring vigour of the desponding Americans, and confirmed the attachment of the unsteady. The loss of the naval superiority presented an unexpected scene to the British commander in chief, counteracted the promise of the minister, (1) and equally deranged the intentions of both. After that event, Administration could never hope for a fortunate period to the American war, except in full confidence that the fleets of England could prevent the ships of France, from giving interruption to the military operations in that quarter of the globe: And undoubtedly, the success of the commander in chief on the western continent, and the future expectations of the loyalists, could only be founded on the permanent superiority of the British navy.

DURING the siege of Savannah, Sir Henry Clinton withdrew the garrison from Rhode Island, and by concentrating his force, he prepared for a vigorous defence, if attacked at New York, or for offensive operations, after the departure of the French from the American coast. The failure of D'Estaing in Georgia, and the approach of December, caused the numerous levies of militia to disperse, and the continental army to retire to winter quarters in the Jerseys and upon Hudson's river. Rhode Island evacuated.

UPON receiving intelligence of these events, Sir Henry Clinton Embarkation of a body of troops. ordered a number of transports to be fitted up for the reception of a corps of about eight thousand five hundred men; likewise, horse, ordnance, and victualling vessels, requisite for such an army. South

(1) Lord George Germain.

CHAP. I. Carolina suggested itself as the grand object of enterprize ; the mildness of the climate, the richness of the country, its vicinity to Georgia, and its distance from General Washington, pointed out the advantage and facility of its conquest. As soon (a.) as the commander in chief had certain intelligence of the return of the French fleet to the West Indies, he arranged the public business at New York, committed the command of the King's troops during his absence to Lieutenant-general Knyphausen, and embarked with four flank battalions, twelve regiments and corps, British, Hessian, and Provincial, a powerful detachment of artillery, two hundred and fifty cavalry, and ample supplies of military stores and provisions.

Sir Henry Clinton sails from New York, and arrives at Savannah.

VICE-ADMIRAL Arbuthnot, with a naval force competent to the purpose, and which was superior to any thing in the American seas, prepared to convoy this expedition to the place of its destination. On the 26th of December 1779, the whole fleet got under way, and without difficulty cleared the ice in New-York harbour. For a few days the weather proved favourable ; the admiral led the van, and kept in shore ; but this gleam of good fortune was not sufficiently permanent to give a fortunate termination to the voyage : a succession (b.) of storms dispersed the fleet ; few ships arrived at Tybee in Georgia before the end of January, some were taken, others separated, one ordnance vessel foundered, most of the artillery, and all the cavalry and horses perished. These accidents greatly deranged and impeded the intended attack upon Charles town. The loss of stores, cavalry, and military equipage, would have been sensibly felt in any situation ; but in the present, nearly proved destructive to the expedition. The commander in chief, with the assistance of the admiral, the generals,

Difficulties to encounter before the siege of Charles town.

(a.) In note B.

(b.) In note B.

and!

and other officers, fought with indefatigable ardour to remedy these misfortunes. The troops who had so gallantly defended Savannah against the joint efforts of the French and Americans, welcomed the arrival of the royal army, and contributed their endeavours to alleviate present difficulties, and to participate in future glory. According to American accounts, (a.) the delay occasioned by the damage sustained on the voyage, yielded the continentals, the state troops, and the militia, a favourable opportunity to augment the fortifications of Charles town, and by the united exertions of art and labour to render them formidable. From this circumstance it may be inferred, that the crosses and accidents which had hitherto befallen the King's troops, did not in the end prove a real calamity; as the period consumed in reparation of the losses sustained, allowed time to the Americans, enabled them to assemble their forces, and collect provisions and other stores necessary for the garrison, and finally, by affording them an opportunity to perfect their fortifications, gave them confidence (b.) to hazard their lives and fortunes upon the event of a siege.

SIR Henry Clinton lost no time in forwarding the original intention of the expedition. On the 10th of February 1780, the transports, with great part of the army on board, convoyed by a proper force, sailed from Savannah to (c.) North Edisto, the place of debarkation, which had been previously appointed. They had a favourable and speedy (a.) passage; and though it required time to have the bar explored, and the channel marked, by the activity of the navy, these difficulties were surmounted, the transports all entered the harbour the next day, and the army immediately took possession of John's island and Stono ferry: James' island, Perreneau's land-

(a.) In note A.

(b.) In note A.

(c.) In note B.

(a.) In note F.



CHAP. I. ing, Wappo cut, and other adjacent places, were soon afterwards obtained; and by a bridge thrown over the canal, the necessary communications were secured, and the advanced part of the King's army occupied the bank of Ashley river, opposite to Charles town: This position, for the present, was the most eligible that could be established; the air was healthful, and provisions were plentiful; its situation equally covered the Wappo cut, through which the boats and galleys were to pass for the crossing the troops over Ashley river, and protected the corps which was to march under the command of Brigadier-general Patterson from Savannah.

WHEN the commander in chief quitted that place, to proceed to the neighbourhood of Charles town, many of the transports were not arrived from the voyage; the loss of men and stores, made it necessary to dispatch an order to New York for reinforcements of both, from that garrison. Intelligence was now daily obtained, that the defences of Charles town increased very fast, and that the troops who were to maintain them, received hourly additions from Virginia and the two Carolinas. In consequence of this information, the general did not hesitate to make preparations, to assemble in greater force than appeared requisite at the first view of the expedition; in addition, therefore, to the order conveyed to the northward, commands were forwarded to Major-general Prevost, to send a detachment of twelve hundred (d.) men, the cavalry inclusive, from the garrison of Savannah. This order reached its destination, before Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton with the principal part of the dragoons, arrived in Tybee harbour. He found the condition of his corps mortifying and distressing; the horses of both officers and men, which had been embarked

(d.) In note B.

in

in excellent order were destroyed, owing to the badness of the vessels employed to transport them, or to the severity of the weather on the passage; and unfortunately there was no substitute to be found in Georgia to remedy such a catastrophe. In this forlorn condition, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton requested the use of some of the quartermaster-general's boats, to transport his men and furniture to Port-Royal island, in order to collect at that place, from friends and enemies, by money or by force, all the horses belonging to the islands in the neighbourhood. This demand was complied with, as there was no other chance of obtaining horses to carry the dragoons and their appointments to Brigadier-general Patterson's corps, which was soon to march in the vicinity of that quarter, on its route to the main army. CHAP. I.

ABOUT the middle of March, General Patterson crossed the Savannah river, and on his march towards the Cambayee, through swamps and difficult passes, had frequent skirmishes with the militia of the country: A casual engagement likewise took place between Majors Ferguson and Cochrane, the former with his own corps, the latter with the infantry of the British legion; in which, the intrepidity and presence of mind of the leaders prevented any fatal extremity. These active officers, with their light troops, moved on the flanks of Brigadier-general Patterson's command, and each receiving intelligence of a corps of the enemy in the front, thought to surprise the Americans, and by an attack in the night deliver the main body from molestation. Ferguson marched, and arrived early in the night near the post from which he meant to dislodge the enemy; he found they were decamped, and he took their position, as the King's troops were to pass near it in the morning: Cochrane reached the place before day, and judging by the fires that the enemy were still in possession, he led his men to the attack with fixed bayonets, when the two commanders,



CHAP. I. in front of their respective corps, recognized each other's voice, and suppressed a conflict which might have been both mortifying and destructive. Officers of this enterprising description, removed the difficulties which occurred to General Patterson, on his march through a country intersected with creeks and morasses, and facilitated his approach to the neighbourhood of Port-Royal island; from whence, he dispatched an order to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, to join him with the cavalry, then lying at Beaufort, if he had assembled a sufficient number of horses to remount the dragoons; the number was complete, but the quality was inferior to those embarked at New York by the detachment of the 17th light dragoons, and by the legion. The corps felt not discouraged by this circumstance, but instantly joining General Patterson, sought for occasion to acquire better horses by exertion and enterprise. The inhabitants of Carolina having heard of the loss of the cavalry horses at sea, had flattered themselves that they could not be speedily recruited. In order to confine the British troops as much as possible to the line of march, and to prevent their collecting horses in the country, some of them accoutred themselves as cavaliers, and a few days after the junction of the dragoons from Beaufort, ventured to insult the front of General Patterson's corps, which was composed of his cavalry, who made a charge, unexpected by the Americans, and without any loss took some prisoners, and obtained a number of horses. This affair was nearly counterbalanced in the neighbourhood of Rantol's bridge, where a body of the continental cavalry, consisting of Washington's and Bland's light horse, and Pulaski's hussars, carried off Lieutenant-colonel Hamilton, of the North-Carolina provincial regiment, with some other prisoners; and owing to the imprudence of the officer who commanded the advanced guard of the British dragoons, sent in pursuit, was on the point of gaining advantage over that corps. The error was rectified, and the

affair ended with equal loss to both parties. Nothing material occurred from this period, and General Patterfon soon after joined Sir Henry Clinton, who was occupied in establishing magazines, and erecting works to defend the communications, near the banks of (a.) Ashley river. CHAP. I.

CAPTAIN Elphinstone of the navy, having stationed the gallies to protect the boats on their passage with the troops to the neck, twelve miles above Charles town, the main body of the forces moved from their ground, embarked, and crossed the river on the 29th of March without opposition. (b.) On the following day, Sir Henry Clinton ordered the light infantry and yagers, supported by the grenadiers, and the other corps and regiments, to gain the principal road, and move on towards the lines of the enemy. A few scattered parties of the Americans skirmished with the head of the column, and after wounding the Earl of Caithness, acting aid-de-camp to the commander in chief, and a few private men, fell back to their fortifications. The royal army, without farther molestation, took a position across the neck, about a mile and half from Charles town, and effectually invested it, between the rivers Ashley and Cooper. The army  
crosses Ashley  
river.

GREAT part of Brigadier-general Patterfon's command was left near Wappo cut, in order to guard the magazines, till the main body should gain the neck; when a passage across Ashley river was to be sought for, nearer the town, for the conveniency of transporting all the requisites for a siege. Captain Elphinstone soon discovered a landing place, which shortened the trouble and delay attendant upon land carriage, and by which the King's troops received supplies of cannon, stores, provisions, and baggage, with facility and expedition.

(a.) In note E.

C

(b.) In note E.

THE

CHAP. I. THE general and his engineers having fixed upon the point and mode of attack, a large working party broke ground, under cover of an advanced detachment, on the night of the 1st of April: (c.) Two large redoubts were thrown up within eight hundred yards of the American lines, and were not discovered before day-break, when the fire from the town had very inconsiderable effect. The next evening, another redoubt was added, and for five successive days and nights, the labour of the artificers and soldiers was directed to the construction of batteries, which on the (d.) eighth were completed with artillery.

The admiral  
passes the bar,  
and fort  
Moultrie.

IN the mean time, Admiral Arbuthnot had been fully occupied in accomplishing the general's wishes; heavy cannon (b.) were collected from the line-of-battle ships, and conveyed to the magazines; detachments of seamen were furnished to act on shore, under the command of Captains Elphinstone and Evans; and preparations were made for passing Charles-town bar, to second more effectually the operations of the army: For this latter purpose, he shifted his flag from the Europe, of the line, to the Roebuck of forty-four guns, which with the Renown and Romulus, were lightened of their (c.) guns, provisions, and water; the smaller frigates being capable of passing the bar, without that previous exoneration. The bar was passed on the 20th of March without any accident, notwithstanding the enemy's galleys attempted to prevent the boats from founding the channel. The Americans had a considerable marine force in Charles-town harbour, from which, powerful assistance to their defences, and great obstruction to the approach of the British fleet, might be equally apprehended: It consisted of an American ship, built since the com-

(c.) In note E.

(d.) In note E.

(b.) In note F.

(c.) In note F.  
mencement

mencement of the war, and pierced for sixty guns, but mounting only forty-four; of seven frigates, of the same country, from thirty-two to sixteen guns; with a French frigate of twenty-six guns, and a polacre of eighteen: These at first adopted the plan of disputing the passage up the channel, by mooring with their galleys at a narrow pass between Sullivan's island and the middle ground, in which station they could have raked the British squadron on its approach to fort Moultrie; but this design was abandoned for a less judicious operation: The French and American armament retired to the neighbourhood of Charles town, without yielding any assistance to the fortifications on Sullivan's island, where being furnished with chevaux (d.) de frise, the ships were sunk to block up the passage of Cooper river, between the town and Shute's folly.

ON the (e.) 9th of April, the admiral, by signal, discovered his intention to the navy and army, of passing Sullivan's island, on which was constructed a formidable fort, with batteries of heavy cannon. The Roebuck, Richmond, Romulus, Blonde, Virginia, Raleigh, Sandwich, and Renown, weighed about one o'clock, and exhibited a magnificent and satisfactory spectacle to the royalists, by steadily effecting their passage, under the fire of the American batteries, with the trifling loss of twenty-seven men, killed and wounded: The Acetus, a storeship, in following the squadron, grounded, and was burnt; otherwise the navy suffered less than could have been expected from so severe a cannonade. The frigates now taking a position under James' island, blocked up the harbour, and Charles town was debarred from all communication with the country, in every point of its circumference, except in that quarter which faced the river Cooper.

(d.) In note F.

(e.) In note F.

## CHAP. I.

PREVIOUS to the admiral's passing fort Moultrie, the commander in chief had ordered Major André, acting adjutant general, to direct Brigadier Patterson to send the cavalry, (a.) with two light companies and the legion infantry, to the main army, by a circuitous march up the banks of Ashley river : This movement was accomplished without any opposition from the American corps of cavalry and infantry which lay at Middleton's plantation, near Goose creek, no great distance from the route of the British troops. A large quantity of forage, and some horses, were collected on the march, by the detachment of the 17th light dragoons, and by the British legion, previous to their arrival at the quarter house ; where, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton received orders to take post with his own corps, and to send the light infantry forwards to the army.

Charles town  
summoned  
10th April.

AT this period of the siege, and before the batteries opened, Sir Henry Clinton and Admiral Arbuthnot thought it advisable to send a summons (a.) to Major-general Lincoln, who commanded in Charles town, representing the dangerous consequences of a cannonade and storm, stating the present as the only favourable opportunity for preserving the lives and properties of the inhabitants, and warning the commander, that he should be responsible for all the calamities which might be the result of his temerity and obstinacy. General Lincoln answered, (b.) that the same duty and inclination which had prevented him from abandoning Charles town, during sixty days knowledge of their hostile intentions, operated now with equal force in prompting him to defend it to the last extremity.

THE defences (c.) of Charles town, on the land side, consisted of a chain of redoubts, lines, and batteries, extending from one river to

(a.) In note C.

(a.) In note G.

(b.) In note G.

(c.) In note E.

the



the other, and furnished with eighty cannon and mortars; the front works of each flank were strengthened by swamps, originating from the neighbouring rivers, and tending towards the center, through which they were connected by a canal passing from one to the other: Between these outward impediments and the redoubts, were two strong rows of abbatis; the trees being buried slanting in the earth, with their branches facing outwards, formed a fraize work against the assailants; and these were farther secured by a ditch double picketted: In the center, the natural defences were inferior to those on the flanks; to remedy this defect, and to cover the principal gate, a horn work of masonry had been constructed; which being closed during the siege, formed a kind of citadel. The fortifications facing the two rivers and the harbour had been erected with uncommon labour and expence: Ships with chevaux de frise, connected by spars and booms, were employed to block up the channels, in order to hinder a near approach of the King's frigates; and piles and pickets were fixed in the ground, at all the landing places, to prevent any debarkation from boats: The whole extent was likewise covered by batteries, formed of earth and pimento wood, judiciously placed, and mounted with heavy cannon.

THE garrison, under the orders of Major-general Lincoln, was composed of ten (f.) weak continental and state (2.) regiments; of militia, drawn from the Carolinas and Virginia; and of inhabitants of the town; amounting in the whole to near six thousand men, exclusive of the sailors. The body of regular troops destined for this service, though assisted by the militia and by the inhabitants, was scarcely

(f.) In note E.

(2.) State regiments, troops engaged by the different states, for a stipulated period of twelve or eighteen months.

adequate.





munition, and provision, might be conveyed to the garrison during the siege; and by which, the continental troops might escape after the defences were destroyed. Sir Henry Clinton was thoroughly sensible of the inconveniencies that might arise from this situation of the enemy's light troops; and being lately relieved by a detachment of sailors and marines, from the charge of fort (h.) Johnson, he directed his attention to dislodge them from their position. As soon as he received intelligence of the arrival of a number of waggons, loaded with arms, ammunition, and clothing, from the northward, he selected a detachment of one thousand four hundred men, whom he committed to Lieutenant-colonel Webster, with orders to counteract the designs of the Americans, and to break in upon the remaining communications of Charles town.

ON the 12th of April, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, being reinforced at the quarter house by Major Ferguson's corps of marksmen, advanced to Goose creek: Colonel Webster arrived on the following day at the same place, with the 33d and 64th regiments of infantry; Tarleton again moved on in the evening, with his own and Ferguson's corps, towards Monk's Corner, (i.) as had been previously concerted with the commander in chief, in order, if possible, to surprise the Americans encamped at that place: An attack in the night was judged most advisable, as it would render the superiority of the enemy's cavalry useless, and would, perhaps, present a favourable opportunity of getting possession of Biggin bridge, on Cooper river, without much loss to the assailants. Profound silence was observed on the march. At some distance from Goose creek, a negro was secured by the advanced guard, who discovered him attempting to leave the road. A letter was taken

Americans  
surprised at  
Monk's corner.

(h.) In note E.

(i.) In note E.

CHAP. I. from his pocket, written by an officer in General Huger's camp the afternoon of that day, and which he was charged to convey to the neighbourhood of Charles town : The contents of the letter, which was opened at a house not far distant, and the negro's intelligence, purchased for a few dollars, proved lucky incidents at this period : Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's information relative to the situation of the enemy was now complete. It was evident, that the American cavalry had posted themselves in front of Cooper river, and that the militia were placed in a meeting house, which commanded the bridge, and were distributed on the opposite bank. At three o'clock in the morning, the advanced guard of dragoons and mounted infantry, supported by the remainder of the legion and Ferguson's corps, approached the American post : A watch word was immediately communicated to the officers and foldiers, which was closely followed by an order to charge the enemy's grand guard on the main road, there being no other avenue open, owing to the swamps upon the flanks, and to pursue them into their camp. The order was executed with the greatest promptitude and success. The Americans were completely surprised : Major Vernier, of Pulaski's legion, and some other officers and men who attempted to defend themselves, were killed or wounded ; General Huger, Colonels Washington and Jamieson, with many officers and men, fled on foot to the swamps, close to their encampment, where, being concealed by the darkness, they effected their escape : Four hundred horses belonging to officers and dragoons, with their arms and appointments, (a valuable acquisition for the British cavalry in their present state) fell into the hands of the victors ; about one hundred officers, dragoons, and hussars, together with fifty wag-gons, loaded with arms, clothing, and ammunition, shared the same fate. Without loss of time, Major Cochrane was ordered to force the bridge and the meeting house with the infantry of the British  
I legion :

legion: He charged the militia with fixed bayonets, got possession of the pass, and dispersed every thing that opposed him. In the attack at Monk's corner, and at Biggin bridge, the British had one officer and two men wounded, with five horses killed and wounded. This signal instance of military advantage, may be partly attributed to the judgment and address with which this expedition was planned and executed, and partly to the injudicious conduct of the American commander; who, besides making a false disposition of his corps, by placing his cavalry in front of the bridge during the night, and his infantry in the rear, neglected sending patrols in front of his videttes; which omission, equally enabled the British to make a surprise, and prevented the Americans recovering from the confusion attending an unexpected attack.

WHEN the news of this success reached Colonel Webster, he commenced his march for Biggin bridge, with the two British regiments under his command, as there were other difficulties to be surmounted before the general's plan was fully accomplished. On his arrival at Monk's corner, he detached Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to seize the boats, and take possession of Bonneau's ferry; a necessary, but easy operation, whilst the country felt the influence of the late unexpected defeat. This passage over another branch of Cooper river was secured, and by the subsequent movement of the King's troops into the district of St. Thomas, (k.) Charles town became completely invested. The corps under Lieutenant-colonel Webster had a large space to guard, and a number of points to watch, in the present situation of the town and the country. The garrison possessed a sufficient quantity of boats to throw over the river, in a very short period, a body of troops infi-

Charles town  
completely  
invested.

(k.) In note E.

D

nitely

CHAP. I. nitely superior to Webster's command: Vigilance to guard against surprise, and judgement to occupy advantageous ground, were equally requisite. The cavalry were constantly kept in motion, to gain intelligence of the enemy's designs, and to learn the situation of the country. Not long after the arrival of the British troops at the Wando, a detachment of continentals from Charles town took possession of Lamprey's point, a peninsula on the east side of Cooper river: Colonel Webster, with the principal part of his command, marched towards the neck, which the Americans had fortified with indefatigable ardour since their arrival, and in all probability would have ventured an attempt to dislodge them, if a masked battery of eighteen pounders had not, fortunately for the English, opened upon a reconnoitering party; which circumstance, together with the flank fire of a galley and an armed vessel, demonstrated the impracticability of the design. Colonel Webster judiciously reassumed his former position in the country, until the junction of a powerful reinforcement from the army.

Earl Cornwallis takes the command in the country.

A CONSIDERABLE corps of troops, recently arrived from New York, (1.) enabled Sir Henry Clinton to strengthen the detachment under Webster: The importance of the command, and the critical situation of the enemy, induced him to request Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to direct the future operations of the army on the east side of Cooper river. The intention of General Lincoln in fortifying Lamprey's point, seems to have been counteracted by the arrival of Lord Cornwallis with additional troops, as it was evacuated soon after that event; and from this period, no enterprise was undertaken in that quarter by the garrison of Charles town. The army (a.) in St. Thomas's made various movements to occupy different positions, for

(1.) In note E.

(a.) In note D.

the conveniency of forage and provisions, and to frustrate the designs of the enemy, both in the town and in the country. CHAP. I.

THE American cavalry began to assemble on the north of the Santee river, towards the latter end of April, under the protection of two Virginia regiments of infantry and the militia of Carolina: Colonel White had brought some dragoons from the northward, and had collected those who escaped from Monk's corner; he was soon after joined by a detachment from George town, and by Colonel Horry's regiment of light horse. On the 5th of May, he crossed the Santee at Dupui's ferry. Fortune favoured his first attempt. He suddenly surrounded a detachment of an officer and seventeen dragoons, who were foraging the next morning at Ball's plantation, and made them prisoners without resistance: From thence he directed his march towards Lenew's ferry, with an intention to recross the river, under the protection of two hundred continental infantry, ordered by Colonel Buford to meet the cavalry at that place. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, without any knowledge of the misfortune which had happened to the detachment of light-infantry cavalry, was proceeding on the same day with a patrol of one hundred and fifty dragoons, to gain intelligence at Lenew's ferry, of the force and motions of the enemy: On the road, the British were overtaken by a loyal American, who had been a witness to the success which had attended Colonel White in the morning, but had luckily escaped his power. The description of the troops, the assurance of their intention to pass the river at Lenew's, and the hope of retaking the prisoners, stimulated Tarleton to push forward his patrol with the greatest expedition: At the same time, the distance of Lord Cornwallis's camp, (3.) the fa-

(3.) Then at Huger's bridge, twenty-six miles from Lenew's ferry.



## CHAP. I.

Americans  
surprised at  
Lenew's  
ferry.

tigue of the march, the heat of the weather, and the sight of their infantry on the opposite bank, threw the Americans quite off their guard. At three o'clock in the afternoon, the advanced dragoons of the English arrived in presence of their videttes: (m.) Tarleton instantly forming his troops, ordered them to charge the enemy's grand guard, and to pursue them into the main body. The corps being totally surprised, resistance and slaughter soon ceased. Five officers and thirty-six men were killed and wounded; seven officers and sixty dragoons were taken prisoners; and the whole party of the light infantry were rescued, as the boat was pushing off to convey them to the opposite shore. All the horses, arms, and accoutrements of the Americans were captured. Colonels White, Washington, and Jamieson, with some other officers and men, availed themselves of their swimming, to make their escape, while many who wished to follow their example perished in the river. The British dragoons lost two men and four horses in the action; but returning to Lord Cornwallis's camp the same evening, upwards of twenty horses expired with fatigue.

Fort Moul-  
trie surren-  
ders.

THIS success was closely followed by the reduction of fort Moultrie. The admiral having taken the fort at Mount Pleasant, acquired from it, and the information of deserters, a full knowledge of the state of the garrison and defences of fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's island. In pursuance (f.) of this intelligence, and wishing not to weaken the operations of the army, which became every day more critical, he landed a body of seamen and marines, under the command of Captain Hudson, to attempt the fort by storm, on the west and north-west faces; whilst the ships of the squadron battered it in front. The garrison, consisting of continentals and militia, to the amount of

(m.) In note E..

(f.) In note F.

two hundred men, seeing the imminent danger to which they were exposed, and sensible of the impossibility of relief, accepted of the terms offered by a summons on the 7th of May; and by capitulation, (g.) surrendered themselves prisoners of war. CHAP. I.

DURING these operations, the besieging army finished their third parallel, (n.) which they had carried close to the canal, and by a sap pushed to the dam which supplied it with water on the right, drained it in several parts to the bottom. On the 6th and 7th of May, the artillery was mounted in the batteries of this parallel, and the traverses and communications were perfectly completed. Thus enclosed (4.) on every side, and driven to its last defences, Sir Henry Clinton wishing to preserve Charles town from destruction, and to prevent that effusion of blood which must be the inevitable consequence of a storm, opened a correspondence on the 8th with General Lincoln, for the purpose of a surrender: But the conditions demanded by the American commander being deemed higher than he had a right to expect from his present situation, they were (c.) rejected, and hostilities renewed. The batteries on the third parallel were then opened, and by the superiority of fire, both of artillery and small arms, the British troops were enabled to gain the counterscarp of the outwork which flanked the canal; which they likewise passed, and then pushed on their approaches directly towards the ditch of the place. The present state of danger now urged the citizens and militia, who had formed the objections to the late conditions, to acquiesce (d.) in their being relinquished: General Lincoln accordingly proposed to surrender on the terms lately offered. The commander in chief and the admiral,

(g.) In note F.                      (n.) In note E.

(4.) Annual Register 1780, page 221.

(c.) In note G.                      (o.) In note E.                      (d.) In note G.



CHAR. I. besides their dislike to the cruel extremity of a storm, were not disposed to press to unconditional submission an enemy whom they wished to conciliate by clemency. They now granted the same conditions which they had before prescribed as the foundation for treaty. The (p.) capitulation was signed the 11th of May, and on the 12th, Major-general Leslie, by the order of Sir Henry Clinton, took possession (q.) of Charles town.

\*Charles town capitulates.

As the siege was not productive of sallies, or desperate assaults, which were in a considerable degree prevented by situation and the nature of the works, the carnage was not great on either side, and was not unequally shared. The loss (r.) of the King's troops during the siege, before the town and in the country, amounted to seventy-six killed, and one hundred and eighty-nine wounded; and that of the Americans, in the town, to eighty-nine killed, and one hundred and forty wounded.

By the articles of capitulation the garrison were allowed some of the honours of war; they (e.) were to march out of the town, at an hour appointed for that purpose, to the ground between the works of the place and the canal, where they were to deposit their arms; but the drums were not to beat a British march, or the colours to be uncased: The continental (f.) troops and seamen were to keep their baggage, and to remain prisoners of war until they were exchanged: The militia (g.) were to be permitted to return to their respective homes, as prisoners on parole; and while they adhered to their parole, were not to be molested by the British troops in person or property: The citi-

(p.) In note E.

(e.) In note G.

(q.) In note E.

(f.) In note G.

(r.) In note E.

(g.) in note G.

zens (h.) of all descriptions, to be considered as prisoners on parole, and to hold their property on the same terms with the militia: The officers (i.) of the army and navy to retain their servants, swords, pistols, and their baggage unsearched: They were permitted to sell their horses, but not to remove them out of Charles town. A vessel (k.) was allowed to proceed to Philadelphia with General Lincoln's dispatches, which were not to be opened.

SEVEN general officers, (a.) ten continental regiments, and three battalions of artillery, became prisoners upon this occasion. The whole number of men in arms who surrendered, including town and country militia, and French, amounted to five thousand six hundred and eighteen, exclusive of near a thousand seamen. A considerable quantity of artillery (b.) was taken; the total exceeded four hundred pieces. (5.) Three stout American (h.) frigates, one French, and a polacre of sixteen guns, of the same nation, which escaped the operation of being sunk to block up the channel, fell likewise into the hands of the victors.

AFTER the surrender of the town, the commander in chief, without loss of time, adopted measures which appeared both judicious and necessary. He returned thanks to the army (r.) in general, and expressed himself in the language of gratitude when he particularized those officers and men, whose attention, toils, and courage, had contri-

(h.) In note G.

(i.) In note G.

(k.) In note G.

(a.) In note H.

(b.) In note H.

(5.) A number of small arms were likewise collected in the town, for the use of the friends to the British government in the province of South Carolina; but they were unfortunately destroyed by the magazine taking fire a few days after the capitulation, together with Captain Collins, a valuable officer, and several men of the royal artillery.

(h.) In note E.

(r.) In note E.

CHAP. I. buted to his success. He dispatched the Earl of Lincoln to Europe, with intelligence of the important advantage which had attended His Majesty's arms; and he circulated proclamations amongst the inhabitants of South Carolina, well calculated to induce them to return to their allegiance, and to manifest their loyalty by joining the King's troops. (6.) It was stated, that (a.) the helping hand of every man was wanted to re-establish peace and good government: And that as the commander in chief wished not to draw the King's friends into danger, while any doubt could remain of their success; so now that this was certain, he trusted that one and all would heartily join, and, by a general concurrence, give effect to such necessary measures for that purpose as from time to time might be pointed out. Those who had families were to form a militia to remain at home, and occasionally to assemble in their own districts, when required, under officers of their own choosing, for the maintenance of peace and good order. Those who had no families, and who could conveniently be spared for a time, it was presumed, would cheerfully assist His Majesty's troops in driving their oppressors, acting under the authority of Congress and all the miseries of war, far from that colony. For this purpose it was said to be necessary, that the young men should be ready to assemble when required, and to serve with the King's troops for any six months of the ensuing twelve that might be found requisite, under proper regulations. They might choose officers to each company to command them, and were to be allowed, when on service, pay, ammunition, and provisions, in the same manner as the King's troops. When they joined the army, each man was to be furnished with a certificate, declaring that he was not only engaged to serve as militiaman for the time spe-

(a.) In note I.

(6.) Annual Register, year 1780, page 74.

cified;

cified; that he was not to be marched beyond North Carolina and Georgia; and that when the time was out, he was freed from all claims whatever of military service, excepting the common and usual militia duty at the place of his residence: He would then, it was said, have paid his debt to his country, and be entitled to enjoy, undisturbed, that peace, liberty, and property, at home, which he had contributed to establish.

THE proclamations issued by the general produced great effect in South Carolina: In most of the districts adjoining to Charles town, <sup>Effect of the proclamations.</sup> great numbers offered to stand forth in defence of the British government, and many did voluntarily take up arms, and place themselves under the direction of Major Ferguson, who was appointed to receive and command them. A general revolution of sentiment seemed to take place, and the cause of Great Britain appeared to triumph over that of the American Congress. (7.) Two hundred and ten of the inhabitants of the town, signed an address to the commander in chief and the admiral, soliciting to be re-admitted to the character and condition of British subjects, the citizens having been hitherto considered as prisoners on parole, declaring their disapprobation of the doctrine of American independency, and expressing their regret, that, after the repeal of those statutes which gave rise to the troubles, the overtures made by His Majesty's commissioners had not been regarded by the general assembly of the United States of America. Sir Henry Clinton, in one of the manifestoes issued at this period, declared, (b.) that if any persons should thenceforward appear in arms, in order to prevent the establishment of His Majesty's government in that country, or

(7.) Annual Register, 1780, page 75.

(b.) In note I,

CHAP. I. should, under any pretence or authority whatever, attempt to compel any other person or persons so to do, or who should hinder the King's faithful and loyal subjects from joining his forces, or otherwise performing those duties their allegiance required, such persons should be treated with the utmost severity, and their estates be immediately seized for confiscation.

Part of the  
army em-  
bark.

THE commander in chief having established order in Charles town, and having marked the general line of conduct to be observed throughout Carolina towards the friends and enemies of Great Britain, began to make arrangements for his return with part of the army to New York; which had been particularly exposed to the attempts of General Washington, owing to an uncommonly severe winter. Previous to his embarkation, he planned several (a.) expeditions to march into the interior parts of the country: One, to move up the Savannah river in Georgia; another, to pass the Saluda to Ninety Six; and a third, under the command of (a.) Earl Cornwallis, to cross the Santee river, and by marching up the north-east bank, to endeavour to strike at Colonel Buford's corps, which was retreating to North Carolina, with artillery, and a number of waggons, containing arms, ammunition, and clothing.

EARL Cornwallis left his ground near Huger's bridge on the 18th of May, and directed his march to Lenew's ferry, with five pieces of cannon, and upwards of two thousand five hundred men: Boats were collected with some difficulty to pass the troops; the Americans having concealed or destroyed all within their reach, to retard the progress of the royal army: By the information of negroes, who dis-

(a.) In note M.

(a.) In note K.



covered where some were secreted, and by the assistance of carpenters, CHAP. I.  
who repaired others that were damaged, the light troops were not  
long prevented from crossing the river. As soon as the legion and the Earl Corn-  
wallis passes  
the Santee  
river.  
detachment of 17th dragoons had passed, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton  
received instructions to march to George town, in order to chase away,  
or take prisoners, all the violent enemies to the British govern-  
ment, and to receive the allegiance of the well affected. This service  
was performed without any opposition, during the passage of the other  
troops. On (b.) the 22d, the army moved forwards upon the same  
road by which Colonel Buford had retreated ten days before: The  
infantry marched to Nelson's ferry with as much expedition as the  
climate would allow. From this place, Earl Cornwallis thought pro-  
per to detach a corps, consisting of forty of the 17th dragoons, and  
one hundred and thirty of the legion, with one hundred mounted in-  
fantry of the same regiment, and a three pounder, to pursue the  
Americans, who were now so much advanced, as to render any ap-  
proach of the main body impracticable. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton,  
on this occasion, was desired to consult his own judgement, as to the  
distance of the pursuit, or the mode of attack: To defeat Colonel  
Buford, and to take his cannon, would undoubtedly, in the present  
state of the Carolinas, have considerable effect; but the practicability  
of the design appeared so doubtful, and the distance of the enemy so  
great, that the attempt could only be guided by discretionary powers,  
and not by any antecedent commands. The detachment left the army  
on the 27th, and followed the Americans without any thing material  
happening on the route, except the loss of a number of horses, in  
consequence of the rapidity of the march, and the heat of the climate:  
By pressing horses on the road, the light troops arrived the next day

(b.) In note K.

E 2

at

CHAP. I. at Camden, when Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton gained intelligence, that Colonel Buford had quitted Rugeley's mills on the 26th, and that he was marching with great diligence to join a corps then upon the road from Salisbury to Charlotte town in North Carolina.

THIS information strongly manifested that no time was to be lost, and that a vigorous effort was the only resource to prevent the junction of the two American corps. At two o'clock in the morning, the British troops being tolerably refreshed continued their pursuit: They reached Rugeley's by day light, where they learned that the continentals were retreating above twenty miles in their front, towards the Catawba settlement, to meet their reinforcement. At this period, Tarleton might have contented himself with following them at his leisure to the boundary line of South Carolina, and from thence have returned upon his footsteps to join the main army, satisfied with pursuing the troops of Congress out of the province; but animated by the alacrity which he discovered both in the officers and men, to undergo all hardships, he put his detachment in motion, after adopting a stratagem to delay the march of the enemy: Captain Kinlock, of the legion, was employed to carry a summons (a.) to the American commander, which, by magnifying the number of the British, might intimidate him into submission, or at least delay him whilst he deliberated on an answer. Colonel Buford, after detaining the flag for some time, without halting his march, returned a defiance. (b.) By this time many of the British cavalry and mounted infantry were totally worn out, and dropped successively into the rear; the horses of the three pounder were likewise unable to proceed. In this dilemma, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton found himself not far distant from the

(a.) In note L.

(b.) In note L.

enemy,

enemy, and, though not in a suitable condition for action, he determined as soon as possible to attack, there being no other expedient to stop their progress, and prevent their being reinforced the next morning: The only circumstance favourable to the British light troops at this hour, was the known inferiority of the continental cavalry, who could not harass their retreat to Earl Cornwallis's army, in case they were repulsed by the infantry.

At three o'clock (a.) in the afternoon, on the confines of South Carolina, the advanced guard of the British charged a serjeant and four men of the American light dragoons, and made them prisoners in the rear of their infantry. This event happening under the eyes of the two commanders, they respectively prepared their troops for action. Colonel Buford's force consisted of three hundred and eighty continental infantry of the Virginia line, a detachment of Washington's cavalry, and two six pounders: He chose his post in an open wood, to the right of the road; he formed his infantry in one line, with a small reserve; he placed his colours in the center; and he ordered his cannon, baggage, and waggons, to continue their march.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Tarleton made his arrangement for the attack with all possible expedition: He confided his right wing, which was composed of sixty dragoons, and nearly as many mounted infantry, to Major Cochrane, desiring him to dismount the latter, to gall the enemy's flank, before he moved against their front with his cavalry: Captains Corbet and Kinlock were directed, with the 17th dragoons and part of the legion, to charge the center of the Americans; whilst Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, with thirty chosen horse:

(a.) In. note M.

CHAP. I. and some infantry, assaulted their right flank and reserve: This particular situation the commanding officer selected for himself, that he might discover the effect of the other attacks. The dragoons, the mounted infantry, and three pounder in the rear, as they could come up with their tired horses, were ordered to form something like a reserve, opposite to the enemy's center, upon a small eminence that commanded the road; which disposition afforded the British light troops an object to rally to, in case of a repulse, and made no inconsiderable impression on the minds of their opponents.

Action at  
Wacław.

THE disposition being completed without any fire from the enemy, though within three hundred yards of their front, the cavalry advanced to the charge. On their arrival within fifty paces, the continental infantry presented, when Tarleton was surprised to hear their officers command them to retain their fire till the British cavalry were nearer. This forbearance in not firing before the dragoons were within ten yards of the object of their attack, prevented their falling into confusion on the charge, and likewise deprived the Americans of the farther use of their ammunition: Some officers, men, and horses, suffered by this fire; but the battalion was totally broken, and slaughter was commenced before Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton could remount another horse, the one with which he led his dragoons being overturned by the volley. Thus in a few minutes ended an affair which might have had a very different termination. The British troops had (b.) two officers killed, one wounded; three privates killed, thirteen wounded; and thirty-one horses killed and wounded. The loss of officers and men was great on the part of the Americans, owing to the dragoons so effectually breaking the infantry, and to a report amongst the ca-

(b.) In note M.

cavalry,

valry, that they had lost their commanding officer, which stimulated the soldiers to a vindictive asperity not easily restrained. Upwards (c.) of one hundred officers and men were killed on the spot; three (d.) colours, two six-pounders, and above two hundred prisoners, with a number of waggons, containing two royals, quantities of new clothing, other military stores, and camp equipage, fell into the possession of the victors. CHAP. I.

THE complete success of this attack may, in great measure, be ascribed to the mistakes committed by the American commander: If he had halted the waggons as soon as he found the British troops pressing his rear, and formed them into a kind of redoubt, for the protection of his cannon and infantry against the assault of the cavalry, in all probability he either would not have been attacked, or by such a disposition he might have foiled the attempt: The British troops, in both cases, would have been obliged to abandon the pursuit, as the country in the neighbourhood could not immediately have supplied them with forage or provisions; and the continentals might have decamped in the night, to join their reinforcement. Colonel Buford, also, committed a material error, in ordering the infantry to retain their fire till the British dragoons were quite close; which when given, had little effect either upon the minds or bodies of the assailants, in comparison with the execution that might be expected from a successive fire of platoons or divisions, commenced at the distance of three or four hundred paces.

THE wounded of both parties were collected with all possible dispatch, and treated with equal humanity. The American officers and soldiers who were unable to travel, were paroled the next morning,

(c.) In note M.

(d.) In note M.



CHAP. I. and placed at the neighbouring plantations and in a meeting house, not far distant from the field of battle : Surgeons were sent for from Camden and Charlotte town to assist them, and every possible convenience was provided by the British. This business being accomplished, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton gained intelligence, that the American reinforcement had fallen back upon the report of the late affair ; therefore, on the evening of the 30th, he commenced his march towards Earl Cornwallis. The main army (e.) had not moved more than forty miles from Nelson's ferry, when the first express arrived with the news of the advantage obtained by the light troops. A few days afterwards, Lord Cornwallis was joined at Camden by the detachment under Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, with the addition of the American cannon, royals, and waggons, which were delivered to the artillery and quarter-master-general's departments.

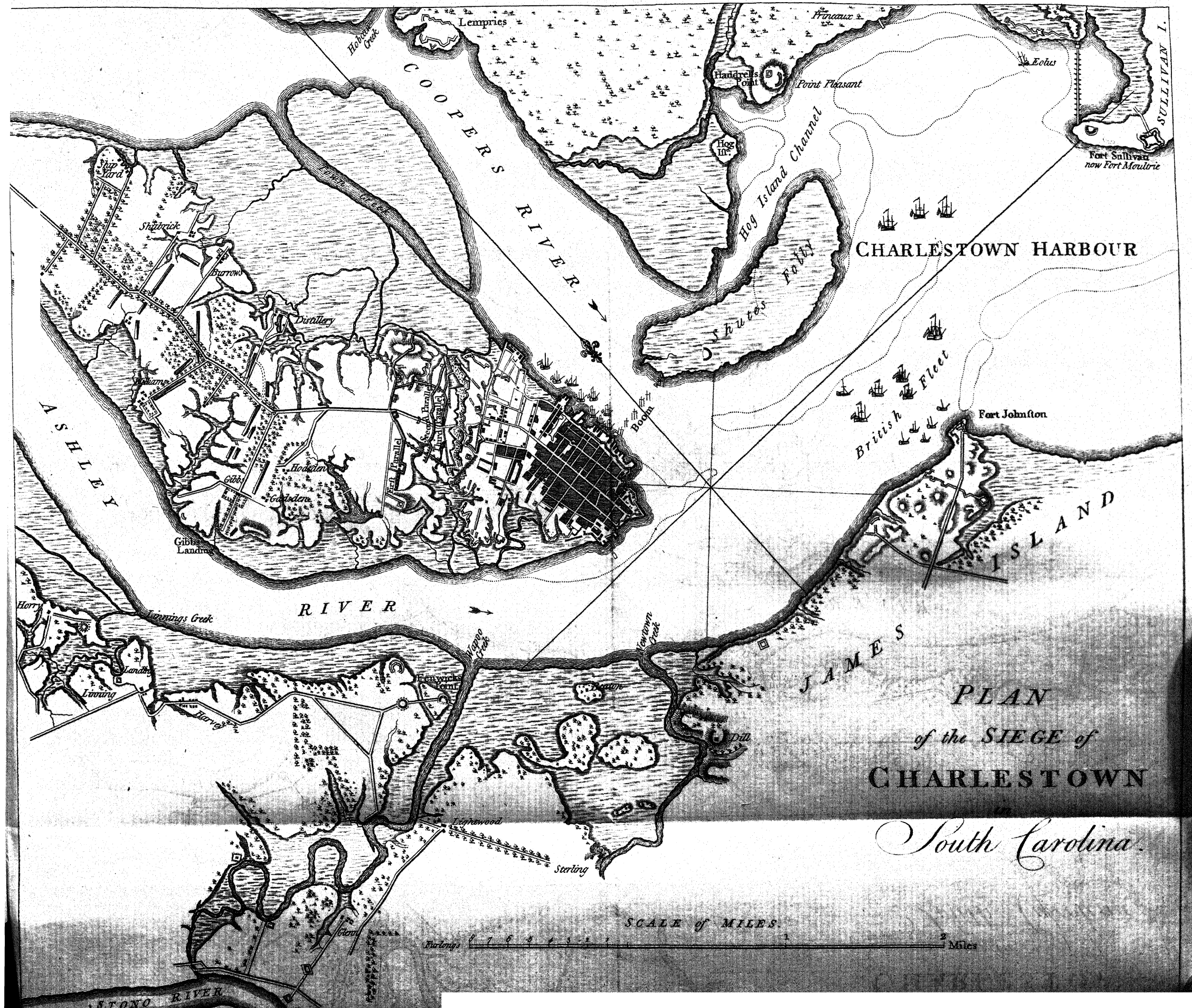
Sir Henry Clinton fails from Charles town.

On the 5th of June, Sir Henry Clinton left Charles-town harbour, on board the Romulus. Before he failed, he had the agreeable intelligence of the defeat of the Americans at Wacław ; a circumstance that evinced the total extirpation of the continental troops within the provinces of Georgia and South Carolina. This event tended to increase the satisfaction he had before experienced, on account of the favourable reports (f.) from Augusta and Ninety Six ; where the inhabitants had manifested their peaceable intentions, and some thousands of militia men had flocked to the royal standard.

(e.) In note M.

(f.) In note M.

NOTES



CHARLESTOWN HARBOUR

British Fleet

Fort Johnston

PLAN  
of the SIEGE of  
CHARLESTOWN  
South Carolina.

SCALE of MILES.

Barlongs 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 Miles


Sir Henry  
Clinton  
fails from  
Charles  
town.

## N O T E S

TO THE

## F I R S T C H A P T E R.

---

*The author thinks it necessary to observe, that the originals of all letters marked thus  are in his possession; the rest are copied from authentic publications.*

---

## (NOTE A.)

*Extracts from a letter, written by Colonel John Lawrence.*

Charles town, Feb. 25, 1780.

THE British army, said to be under the command of Sir Henry Clinton, are distributed on Port-Royal island, John's island, Stono ferry, and a detachment last night upon James island — Head quarters are at Fenwick's house, on John's island — Four of their gallies have been seen between John and James islands; the number of troops not known, supposed to be much diminished since the embarkation at New York — There is, undoubtedly, some grand impediment to the enemy's progress. All their horses perished at sea, and much of their

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

F furniture



Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

furniture was captured. — The enemy's (a.) delay has afforded an opportunity for strengthening the lines of Charles town, which will be in pretty good order to-morrow — Reinforcements are expected — General Hagan is within a few miles — The Virginia troops are somewhere! *Assistance from that sister state has been expected these eighteen months* — General Moultrie is forming a camp at Bacon bridge, where he has about five hundred horse, being horse of this state, Baylor's and Bland's of Virginia. General Williamson is encamped at Augusta. A thousand men are expected from his brigade — General Richardson and Colonel Caphew are raising the militia at and about Camden. — At this moment our escape depends on farther delay on the enemy's part. Two or three weeks more will make this garrison strong; the inhabitants, in general, are in good spirits. Competent judges (b.) say, that Sir Henry Clinton will then have cause to repent his enterprise.

---

(NOTE B.)

*From the London Gazette.*

Whitehall, April 26, 1780.

*Extract of a letter from Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the Bath, to Lord George Germain, dated Head Quarters, James' island, South Carolina, March 9th, 1780. Received by the Swift packet, Capt. Nichols, from New York.*

MY last dispatch, No. 83, will have informed your lordship, that the admiral and I only waited positive information concerning Count D'Estaing's fleet to put to sea.

INTEL.



INTELLIGENCE (a.) of their having quitted the coast arrived late in December, and the troops having been some time embarked, the admiral was enabled to sail the 26th. Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

I WILL trouble your lordship with no other particulars of a very tedious voyage in (b.) uncommon bad weather, than to mention, that in our losses of transports the lives of the crews have been saved; that only one ship is missing, having on board a detachment of Hessians, and supposed to have bore away for the West Indies: But we have to regret the total loss of an ordnance ship, which foundered at sea, and of much the greater part of the horses brought for cavalry, or other public uses. It was judged best to proceed by a second navigation from Tybee to North (c.) Edisto, and from thence to pass to John's and next to James island. By a bridge over Wappoo cut, we have from this last gained the banks of Ashley river. My intention is to pass to the neck of Charles town as soon as possible. The enemy have, I find, collected their whole force to that place. This is said not to exceed five thousand men at present; but reinforcements are daily expected. In the mean time, as the rebels have made the defence of Charles town their principal object, I have determined on my part to assemble in greater strength before it, and with this view have called immediately to this army a corps (d.) I had left in Georgia. They will pass the Savannah river, and join me by land.

THE force afloat at Charles town is four rebel and one French frigate, with an old sixty-gun ship, and some brigs and gallies.

ALTHOUGH our long voyage, and unavoidable delays since, have given the rebels time to fortify Charles town towards the land, a labour their number in negroes has greatly facilitated; yet, confiding

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

in the merit of the troops I have the honour to command, in the great assistance I have from Earl Cornwallis, and the farther co-operation of the navy, I entertain great hopes of success.

I CANNOT close my letter without expressing how much I am obliged hitherto to Admiral Arbuthnot for the assistance given me through Captain Elphinstone, who as yet has been chiefly employed in the naval transactions immediately relative to the army. This gentleman's unremitted attention to us, from his so ably and successfully conducting the transports into North Edisto to this hour, with the great benefit I have derived from his knowledge of the inland navigation of this part of the coast, merit my warmest thanks.

P. S. SINCE the above a reinforcement is arrived in Charles town, said to consist of two thousand men, from the northern army.

---

(NOTE C.)

*Extract of a letter from Major André, Deputy Adjutant General, to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.*



Head Quarters, William's House,  
the 1st April, 1780.

I HAVE, by the general's orders, just closed a letter to Brigadier-general Paterson, in consequence of which a march of cavalry, (a.) light and legion infantry will be ordered: It is to seek a passage across Ashley river, at or above Dorchester and Baycon bridge, and by this means to join the army before Charles town. The general would not have you undertake any excursion out of your route to us, or make

any

any other delays, after passing the river, than for the purpose of taking forage: Between your present encampment and the passage you will of course make none, as it wou'd invite opposition.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

---

( N O T E D . )

*Copy of a letter from Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.*

✍

Camp, near St. Thomas's Church;

April 25th, 1780.

S I R,

THE commander in chief having directed me to use every effort to prevent supplies and reinforcements being thrown into Charles town, but particularly to guard against the garrison's escaping out of *it* and its dependent fortresses; (a.) I find it necessary at present to place the corps under my command on the east side of Miller's bridge, keeping a redoubt on the west side to secure a communication; I must therefore commit the care of the country between the Cooper and Wando to your charge; with the cavalry and infantry of the legion. The principal objects of your care will be the landing places on the west side of the Wando and in Daniel's island; and I trust in your vigilance that I shall receive the earliest information of any material movement of the enemy in that quarter; I must likewise recommend it to you to take every opportunity of procuring intelligence, either from the town, or the Santee river and the back country. I leave it to your discretion to take such positions as you shall find most convenient: You will please to report to me whenever you move, that I may know where to find you. As you will be so constantly moving, you will not of course be able

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

able to embarrass yourself with the care of such stores as may fall into your hands: If you apprehend that any *such* may be in danger of being retaken by the enemy, and that they will be useful to them, you will please to destroy them. I must recommend it to you in the strongest manner to use your utmost endeavours to prevent the troops under your command from committing irregularities, and I am convinced that my recommendation will have weight, when I assure you that such conduct will be highly agreeable to the commander in chief.

I am, SIR,

Your most obedient, humble servant,

CORNWALLIS.

Lieut. Col. Tarleton.

---

(NOTE E.)

*From the London Gazette Extraordinary.*

Whitehall, June 15, 1780.

*This morning the Earl of Lincoln, aid-de-camp to his Excellency General Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the Bath, arrived at this office with the following dispatch for the Right Honourable Lord George Germain:*

Charles town, May 13, 1780.

MY LORD,

I WILL not trouble your lordship with a repetition of the delays and difficulties which protracted serious operation until the 29th of March, on which day the landing on Charles-town neck was effected.

By this time a depot was formed; the admiral had passed the bar, and I had the essential assistance of officers and seamen of the royal

navy for my operations. I was also strengthened with the corps from Georgia, under Brigadier-general Patterson, which, through a country intersected with rivers, and rendered more difficult by heavy rains, had advanced, not unopposed, in the space of twelve days from Savannah to (a.) Ashley river.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

THE passage of Ashley, under the conduct of Captain Elphinstone, and by the good service of the officers and sailors of the fleet, was accomplished with order and expedition, and without resistance on the part of the enemy.

THE day succeeding it the army moved towards Charles town, and on the night of the 1st of (c.) April broke ground within eight hundred yards of the rebel works.

By the (d.) 8th our guns were mounted in battery; and I had the satisfaction to see the admiral pass into Charles-town harbour with the success his conduct deserved, though under a very heavy fire from Sullivan's island.

AT this period we judged it advisable to send the inclosed summons to the place, which returned the answer I have the honour to transmit with it.

THE batteries (g.) were opened the next day. From their effect we soon observed the fire of the enemy's advanced works to abate considerably; the attention of the engineers, and the diligence of the troops, but increasing as they proceeded. A second parallel was completed on the 19th of April, and secure approaches opened to it. We were now within four hundred and fifty yards of the place.

MY



Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

My communications had hitherto required the greatest attention: They had been chosen from Perrenau's landing in Stono river across the Wappoo, and by small inlets, leaving only a mile of land carriage into the part of Ashley river opposite our camp.

WORKS for the protection of the stores and shipping in Stono, others on the communication, and several redoubts and batteries on Ashley, were the labours necessary to give security in so important a point.

THE presence of the fleet in the harbour relieving me from apprehension on that part, and the admiral taking to himself the defence of Fort (h.) Johnson, I was able to detach one thousand four hundred men, under Lieutenant-colonel Webster, of the 33d regiment, to break in upon the enemy's remaining communication with the country.

OUR success but for this measure would have been incomplete, as I had reason to fear a naval force could not be got into Cooper river, nor consequently the place to be totally invested.

YOUR lordship will observe, that Colonel Webster had, in the execution of his orders, rivers to cross, and other difficult operations to effect, in presence of a very superior cavalry, which might harass him much. It was, therefore, of the utmost importance to strike at this corps, and, as suddenly as possible, to seize the principal passes of the country.

THE surprise (i.) and defeat of the collected cavalry and militia of the rebels, and the possessing Biggin's bridge over Cooper, by Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton with the horse, the legion, and Major Ferguson's detachment,

detachment, gave the command of the country (k.) to Colonel Webster, threw into his hands great supplies of provision, and enabled him to take a post near the head of Wandoo river, forbidding by land all farther access to the town from Cooper to the inland navigation. An armed naval force which the admiral sent into Servee bay, and another stationed in Spencer's inlet, completed the investiture to the sea.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

A CONSIDERABLE reinforcement joining me from (l.) New York the 18th of April, I immediately strengthened the corps beyond Cooper river, which, thus augmented, I requested Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to take under his command.

ON the 6th of May, the third parallel (n.) was completed close to the edge of the rebel canal, and a sap carried to the dam, which contained its water on the right, by which means a great part was drained to the bottom.

WE could now form juster opinions of the defences of the town towards the land, which extended in a chain (e.) of redoubts, lines, and batteries, from Ashley to Cooper. In front of either flank of the works, swamps, which the canal connects, ooze to each river; betwixt these impediments and the place are two rows of abatis, various other obstructions, and a double picketted ditch; a horn-work of masonry, which, during the siege, the enemy closed as a kind of citadel, strengthened the center of the line and the gate, where the same natural defences were not found as near the water: Eighty pieces of cannon or mortars were mounted in the extent of these lines.

ON the 6th of May our batteries were ready in the third parallel. New and very forcible motives now prevailed to induce the place to capitulate.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter. pitulate. Admiral Arbuthnot had landed a force of seamen and marines on Sullivan's island, under Captain Hudson, to whom, on the threat that ships should batter the fort, the garrison delivered themselves upon terms.

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL Earl Cornwallis had been no less successful in the country. The cavalry under Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton had again the good fortune which conduct and gallantry deserve, and overtook at the Santee a body of horse the enemy had, with infinite difficulty, collected together. They (m.) were most spiritedly charged, and defeated. Most of the riders fled to the morasses, or threw themselves into the river, from whence few have extricated themselves. Fifty or sixty men were killed or taken, and every horse of the corps, with the arms and appointments, fell into our hands.

ALTHOUGH, in a second correspondence which the enemy solicited, they had shewn in their proposals for a surrender far too extensive pretensions, the admiral and myself could not refrain from attempting once more to avert the cruel extremity of a storm. In this renewal of treaty, however, we did not find their indiscretion much abated.

THE batteries of the third parallel (o.) were therefore opened, and a manifest superiority of fire soon obtained; the corps of yagers acting as marksmen, were on this occasion extremely useful.

UNDER this fire we gained the counterscarp of the outwork which flanked the canal, the canal itself was passed, and work carried on towards the ditch of the place.

THE

THE 11th, General Lincoln sent to us his acquiescence in the terms he had two days before objected to. Whatever severe justice might dictate on such an occasion, we resolved not to press to unconditional submission a reduced army, whom we hoped clemency might yet reconcile to us. The articles of capitulation were therefore signed, such as I have the honour to inclose them.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

ON the 12th, Major-general Leslie took (q.) possession of the town. There are taken, seven general officers, a commodore, (f.) ten continental regiments, and three battalions of artillery, together with town and country militia, French, and seamen, make about six thousand men in arms. The titular deputy governor, council, and civil officers, are also prisoners.

FOUR frigates and several armed vessels, with a great number of boats, have likewise fallen into our possession, and about four hundred pieces of cannon.

OF the garrison, artillery, and stores, your lordship will have as perfect returns as I shall be able to collect.

I HAVE yet, my lord, to add to this letter, the expressions of gratitude I owe to the army, (r.) whose courage and toil have given me success.

I HAVE most warmly to thank Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, Major-generals Leslie, Huynes, and Kolborth, and Brigadier-general Patterson, for their animated assistance.

G 2

I TRUST

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

I TRUST I do not flatter myself vainly, that the good services during the siege, of the officers and soldiers of the royal artillery, of Captain Elphinstone, and the officers and seamen of the royal navy serving with us on shore, of the corps of engineers, of the officers and soldiers of every corps, British and Hessian, and particularly the yager detachment, will receive His Majesty's gracious approbation.

I HAVE especially to express my obligation to Lieutenant-colonel Webster, and the corps which acted under him. And I have to give the greatest praise to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton and the cavalry, for their conduct, bravery, and eminent services.

BUT to Major Moncrieff, the commanding engineer, who planned, and, with the assistance of such capable officers under him, conducted the siege with so much judgement, intrepidity, and laborious attention, I wish to render a tribute of the very highest applause, and most permanent gratitude; persuaded that far more flattering commendations than I can bestow will not fail to crown such rare merit.

YOUR lordship has seen how great a share Admiral Arbuthnot and the fleet have had in every measure. I can add, that had we been necessitated to make an assault, I am persuaded a very conspicuous part would have been taken by the ships, to favour us at that important crisis.

I HAVE the honour to send your lordship returns of our loss.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

*Return*



*Return (r.) of the killed and wounded of the troops under the command of his Excellency General Sir Henry Clinton, from the debarkation in South Carolina the 11th of February, to the surrender of Charles town the 12th of May.*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

## BRITISH.

Royal artillery. 5 rank and file killed; 7 ditto wounded.

1st battalion of light infantry. 8 rank and file killed; 1 serjeant, 17 rank and file wounded.

2d battalion ditto. 11 rank and file killed; 1 lieutenant, 12 rank and file wounded.

Detachment of ditto. 3 rank and file killed; 7 ditto wounded.

1st battalion grenadiers. 1 serjeant, 4 rank and file killed; 2 lieutenants, 1 serjeant, 13 rank and file wounded.

2d battalion ditto. 10 rank and file killed; 1 lieutenant, 11 rank and file wounded.

7th. 1 rank and file killed; 2 ditto wounded.

23d. 4 rank and file wounded.

33d. 1 rank and file killed; 2 ditto wounded.

62d. 2 rank and file killed.

63d. 4 rank and file wounded.

64th. 1 rank and file wounded.

71st. 2 ensigns, 6 rank and file killed; 1 captain, 1 lieutenant, 14 rank and file wounded.

## GERMAN.

Yagers. 7 rank and file killed; 14 ditto wounded.

Linsing. 2 rank and file killed; 7 ditto wounded.

Lengerck. 1 rank and file killed; 15 ditto wounded.

Notes to the First Chapter. Schuler. 3 rank and file killed ; 18 ditto wounded.  
 Graff. 2 rank and file killed ; 2 lieutenants, 8 rank and file wounded.  
 Hoyne. 5 rank and file wounded.

#### PROVINCIAL.

New-York volunteers. 2 rank and file killed ; 1 ditto wounded.  
 British legion. 5 rank and file killed ; 9 ditto wounded.  
 Ferguson's corps. 5 rank and file wounded.

#### TOTAL BRITISH, GERMAN, AND PROVINCIAL.

2 ensigns, 1 serjeant, 73 rank and file, killed ; 1 captain, 7 lieutenants,  
 2 serjeants, 179 rank and file, wounded.

#### OFFICERS KILLED.

71st regiment. Ensign M'Gregor, Ensign Cameron.

#### OFFICERS WOUNDED.

22d regiment grenadier company. Lieutenant White.  
 33d ditto. Lieutenant Bevor.  
 42d ditto. Lieutenant Grant.  
 64th ditto. Light infantry. Lieutenant Freeman.  
 71st regiment. Captain M'Leod, Lieutenant Wilson.  
 Graff's grenadiers. Lieutenant Frietson, Lieutenant Oethanfs.

H. CLINTON.

(NOTE

## (NOTE F.)

Admiralty Office, June-15, 1780.

*His Majesty's ship the Perseus, commanded by the Hon. Keith Elphinstone, arrived late last night at Spithead, from Charles town, in South Carolina, from whence she sailed the 17th of last month, having on board Sir Andrew Hammond, who came to this Office this forenoon with a letter from Vice-admiral Arbuthnot, to Mr. Stevens, of which the following is a copy:*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

Roebuck, off Charles town, May 14, 1780.

SIR,

I HAVE the satisfaction to acquaint you, for the information of my lords commissioners of the admiralty, that Charles town, with all its dependencies, the shipping in the harbour, and the army under General Lincoln, has surrendered to His Majesty's arms.

My last letters, by a Dutch ship bound to Amsterdam, which failed the 16th of February, will have informed you of my departure from New York, and my arrival off Savannah, with a squadron of His Majesty's ships, escorting a considerable body of troops under the command of Sir Henry Clinton.

Most of the missing ships having arrived, no time was lost in prosecuting the intended expedition. I shifted my flag from the Europe to this ship; and the transports having repaired their damages sustained on the passage, I proceeded with the fleet, on the 10th of February, to North Edisto, the place of debarkation previously agreed upon. Our passage (a.) thither was favourable and speedy; and although it required time to have the bar explored, and the channel

Notes to the First Chapter. marked, the transports all entered the harbour the next day ; and the army took possession of John's island without opposition.

THE general having made a requisition for heavy (b.) cannon, and a detachment of seamen from the fleet, the latter were put under the command of Captain Elphinstone and Captain Evans, and the guns forwarded to the army as soon as they could be collected from the line-of-battle ships, which the bad weather had forced from their anchors.

PREPARATIONS were next made for passing the squadron over Charles-town bar, where the high water spring tides there, is only nineteen feet water. The guns, (c.) provision, and water were taken out of the Renown, Roebuck, and Romulus, to lighten them ; and we lay in that situation on the open coast in the winter season of the year, exposed to the insults of the enemy, for sixteen days, before an opportunity offered of going into the harbour, which was effected without any accident, on the 20th of March, notwithstanding the enemy's galleys continually attempted to prevent our boats from founding the channel.

I ENCLOSE a list of the rebel naval force, which, at this time, made an appearance of disputing the passage up the river, at the narrow pass, between Sullivan's island and the middle ground, having moored their ships and galleys in a position to make a raking fire as we approached fort Moultrie ; but on the squadron arriving near the bar, and anchoring on the inside, they abandoned that idea, retired to the town, and changed their plan of defence. The Bricole, Notre Dame, Queen of France, Truite, and General Moultrie frigates, with several merchant ships, fitted with chevaux de frise (d.) on their decks, were sunk

in

in the channel between the town and Shute's Folly; a boom was extended across, composed of cables, chains, and spars, secured by the ships' masts, and defended from the town by strong batteries of pimento logs, in which were mounted upwards of forty pieces of heavy cannon.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

EVERY thing being in readiness for crossing the army over the Ashley river, the boats of the fleet, with the flat boats, under the command of Capt. Elphinstone and Capt. Evans of the *Raisonné*, the whole army, with the artillery and stores necessary for the siege, were landed under the cover of the galleys, on the town side, with astonishing expedition.

As soon as the army began to erect their batteries against the town, I took the first favourable opportunity to pass Sullivan's island, upon which there is a strong fort and batteries, the chief defence of the harbour; accordingly I weighed at one o'clock, on the (e.) 9th ult., with the *Roebuck*, *Richmond*, *Romulus*, *Blonde*, *Virginia*, *Raleigh*, and *Sandwich* armed ship. The *Renown* bringing up the rear, and passing through a severe fire, anchored in about two hours under James' island, with the loss of twenty-seven seamen killed and wounded. The *Richmond*'s foretop mast was shot away, and the ships in general sustained damage in their masts and rigging; however, not materially in their hulls: But the *Acetus* transport, having on board a few naval stores, grounded within gunshot of Sullivan's island, and received so much damage, that she was obliged to be abandoned and burnt.

HAVING stationed ships and armed vessels off the different inlets, upon the coast, and the town being now nearly invested, attempts were made to pass a naval force into Cooper river, by Hog's island,

H

(the



Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

(the main channel being rendered impracticable) and small vessels to carry heavy guns were fitted for that service: But on being found the enemy had also sunk vessels in that channel, and its entrance was defended by the works on Sullivan's island, and mount Pleasant, it was resolved to dispossess them of the latter, by the seamen of the fleet; and in the mean time, to arm the small vessels that had been taken by Earl Cornwallis in the Wandoo river.

For this purpose a brigade of five hundred seamen and marines was formed from the squadron, and under the command of the Captains Hudson, Orde, and Gambier, landed at day break, on the 29th, at mount Pleasant; where receiving information that the rebels were abandoning their redoubt at Lamprie's point, (an advantageous post on Cooper river) they marched with a view of cutting off their rear, but, on a near approach, found the garrison had escaped in vessels to Charles town; but their sudden appearance prevented the rebels from carrying off their cannon and stores, or from destroying their works. About the same time, a major, a captain, and some other commissioned and non-commissioned officers, with eighty privates, were made prisoners by the guard boats of the fleet, in retiring to the town.

CAPTAIN Hudson being relieved in his post by Colonel Ferguson, returned to the fort at mount Pleasant, which being in the neighbourhood of fort Sullivan, brought us in deserters daily, from whom I learnt very favourable accounts of its garrison; I therefore (f.) formed a plan to attack it, which should not interfere with the important operations the army were carrying on, and which now became every day more and more critical.

THE attention of the rebels, I found, had been chiefly directed to the south and east sides of the fort, which were most open to attack ; but the west face and north-west bastion, I discovered, had been neglected ; I therefore determined to attempt to carry the fort by storm, under cover of the fire from the ships of the squadron. The Captains Hudson and Gambier, and Captain Knowles, agent for transports, with two hundred seamen and marines, embarked in the boats of the squadron, in the night of the 4th instant, and passing by the fort unobserved, landed before day light, and took possession of a redoubt on the east end of the island ; whilst other boats were preparing to carry over the same number of seamen and marines from mount Pleasant, under the command of Captain Orde. On the whole being ready, and the ships only waiting for the tide, to begin the attack, the fort was summoned by Captain Hudson, when, after a little consideration, the garrison surrendered themselves prisoners of war. A copy of the capitulation, and the return of prisoners and stores, accompany this letter.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

THE reduction of the city followed four days after ; for the preparations to storm it in every part being in great forwardness, and the ships ready to move to the assault, the town was summoned on the 9th, by his Excellency Sir Henry Clinton, to surrender ; terms were in consequence proposed, and the enclosed capitulation, signed by the general and myself, the 10th instant.

I HAVE commissioned the rebel and French frigates, in the King's service, and have given the command of them to officers of long service, and acknowledged merit.

THE conduct of Sir Andrew Hammond, of the Roebuck, who bears this dispatch to you, deserves particular mention ; whether in the

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter. great line of service, or in the detail of duty, he has been ever ready, forward, and animated. The Captains Hudson, Orde, Gambier, Elphinstone, and Evans, have distinguished themselves particularly on shore; and the officers and seamen, who have served with them on this occasion, have observed the most perfect discipline.

Our whole loss in the ships and galleys, and the batteries on shore, is twenty-three seamen killed, and twenty-eight wounded; among the latter is Lieutenant Bowers, of the Europe, but in fair way of recovery.

THE fleet has endeavoured most heartily and effectually to co-operate with the army in every possible instance; and the most perfect harmony has subsisted between us.

I just add, that rebel privateering has recently received a severe check; the Iris and Galatea having lately, in the space of ten days, taken nine privateers, (two of which were ships of twenty guns, and none less than sixteen) and eight hundred seamen.

I have the honour to be,

SIR,

Your most obedient servant,

M. ARBUTHNOT.

*A list of rebel ships (h.) of war taken or destroyed in the harbour of Charles town.*

THE Bricole, pierced for 60, mounting 44 guns, twenty-four and eighteen pounders, sunk, her captain, officers, and company, prisoners.

soners. — The Truite, 26 twelve pounders, funk, her captain, &c. pri-  
 soners. — Queen of France, 28 nine pounders, funk, ditto. — General  
 Moultrie, 20 six pounders, funk, ditto. — Notre Dame, (brig) 16 ditto,  
 funk, ditto. — Providence, 32 guns, eighteen and twelve pounders,  
 taken, captain, officers, and company, prisoners. — Boston, of the same  
 force, taken, ditto. — Ranger, 20 six pounders, taken, ditto.

Notes to the  
 First  
 Chapter.

### FRENCH SHIPS.

L'AVANTURE, 26 nine and six pounders, commanded by the Sieur  
 de Brulot, Lieutenant de Vaisseau, taken, ditto. — Polacre, 16 six  
 pounders, taken. — Some empty brigs lying at the wharfs, with other  
 small vessels, were also taken, with four armed galleys.

### M. ARBUTHNOT.

*Articles (g.) of Capitulation, agreed on between Captain Charles Hudson,  
 commander of His Majesty's ship the Richmond, and Lieutenant-colonel  
 Scott, commandant of fort Moultrie, on the surrender of that fort and its  
 dependencies, May 7, 1780.*

ART. I. THAT the troops in garrison shall be allowed to march  
 out with the usual honours of war, and to pile their arms outside of  
 the gate.

ART. II. That all the officers in garrison, as well continental as  
 militia, and the non-commissioned officers and privates of the militia,  
 shall be considered as prisoners of war at large on their parole, until  
 exchanged; and be allowed, in the mean time, to reside with their fa-  
 milies and friends, Charles town excepted, as it is at present under  
 siege.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

ART. III. That the continental and militia officers be permitted to wear their side arms.

ART. IV. That the slaves and other property of every individual in garrison be secured to their respective owners : That all such slaves in garrison, belonging to persons out of it, be secured to their respective owners in such manner as may be agreed upon between Captain Hudson and the commanding officer of the fort.

ART. V. All property, slaves, &c. to be secured to each individual of the garrison ; such as is lodged in the fort for security or otherwise, belonging to individuals, not of the garrison, to be delivered up.

ART. VI. That the sick have every necessary accommodation, and all the continental private soldiers be treated in a humane manner, and not rigorously confined ; every humanity to be shewn to both sick and well.

ART. VII. The fort, artillery, arms, ammunition, and stores, of all kinds, to be delivered up to such officers and guard as Captain Hudson shall think proper to send for that purpose.

ART. VIII. The garrison to march out of the fort, and pile their arms early in the morning, in front of the British forces, who will be drawn up before the entrance of the fort on the occasion.

CHARLES HUDSON.

WILLIAM SCOTT,

Lieut. Col. 1st reg. and commandant  
of fort Moultrie.

A COPY.

M. ARBUTHNOT.



Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's island, May 7, 1780.

*A return of the garrison of fort Moultrie, made prisoners of war by a brigade of seamen and marines, commanded by Captains Hudson, Gambier, and Knowles, of the royal navy.* Notes to the First Chapter.

CONTINENTAL commissioned officers. — Lieutenant colonel, 1; Captains, 3; Lieutenants, 4; Non-commissioned and privates, 110.

MILITIA. — Captains, 2; Lieutenants, 7; Non-commissioned and privates, 91.

(Signed) CHA. HUDSON.

*A return of ordnance and other stores taken on fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's island, by the naval brigade, May 7th, 1780.*

#### IRON ORDNANCE.

Twenty-four pounders, 9; eighteen pounders, 7; twelve pounders, 10; nine pounders, 9; six pounders, 2; four pounders, 4; mortar of ten inches, 1. Total of iron ordnance, 41.

#### ROUND SHOT.

Twenty-four pounders, 539; eighteen pounders, 613; twelve pounders, 690; nine pounders, 1334; six pounders, 264; four pounders, 369. Total, 3809.

#### BAR SHOT.

Twenty-four pounders, 50; eighteen pounders, 47; twelve pounders, 42; nine pounders, 9. Total of bar shot, 148.

#### GRAPE.

## GRAPE SHOT.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

Twenty-four pounders, 82; eighteen pounders, 50; twelve pounders, 42; nine pounders, 50. Total of grape shot, 224.

## CANNISTER SHOT.

Twelve pounders, 13; nine pounders, 56; six pounders, 30; four pounders, 34. Total of cannister shot, 133.

Ten-inch shells, 120; six-inch shells, 32; lint stocks, 54; barrels of powder, 46; worms, ladles, and sponges, 193; lanthorns, 10; handspikes, 256; flannel cartridges for field pieces, 93; musquet cartridges, 6032; beds spare, 35; coins spare, 39; stand of arms, 520; cartridges filled, 2706; blank cartridges, 1994; port fires, 250; spare fuses, 300; hand granadoes, 120; bits and prickors, 80; reams of paper, 2; tubes spare, 100; spare gun carriages, 9; barrels of turpentine, 40; 3 waggons; 1 fling cart for great guns; 1 gin; 1 ditto fall and flings; 1 water engine; 3 coils of rope, (four inches.)

(Signed)

CHA. HUDSON.

A COPY.

M. ARBUTHNOT.

---

(NOTE G.)

*Supplement to the London Gazette Extraordinary.*

*Copy of the summons sent to Major-general Lincoln, the 10th of April, 1780.*

Camp before Charles town, April 10, 1780.

SIR (a.) Henry Clinton, K. B. general and commander in chief of His Majesty's forces in the colonies lying on the Atlantic, from Nova Scotia,

Scotia, &c. &c. and Vice-admiral Arbuthnot, commander in chief of His Majesty's ships, &c. in North America, &c. &c. regretting the effusion of blood, and the distresses which must now commence, deem it consonant to humanity to warn the town and garrison of Charles town of the havock and desolation with which they are threatened from the formidable force surrounding them by land and sea. An alternative is offered at this hour to the inhabitants of saving their lives and property, (contained in the town) or of abiding by the fatal consequences of a cannonade and storm.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

SHOULD the place in a fallacious security, or its commander in a wanton indifference to the fate of its inhabitants, delay the surrender, or should public stores or shipping be destroyed, the resentment of an exasperated soldiery may intervene; but the same mild and compassionate offer can never be renewed.

THE respective commanders, who hereby summon the town, do not apprehend so rash a part as farther resistance will be taken; but rather that the gates will be opened, and themselves received with a degree of confidence which will forbode farther reconciliation.

(Signed) H. CLINTON.  
M. ARBUTHNOT.

*Copy of a letter from Major-general Lincoln to General Sir Henry Clinton and Vice-admiral Arbuthnot, dated Charles town, April 10, 1780.*

GENTLEMEN,

(b.) I HAVE received your summons of this date. Sixty days have passed since it has been known that your intentions against this

I

town

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

town were hostile, in which time has been afforded to abandon it; but duty and inclination point to the propriety of supporting it to the last extremity.

I have the honour to be, &c.

(Signed) B. LINCOLN,  
Commanding in the fourth  
department.

*Copy of a letter from Sir Henry Clinton to Major-general Lincoln, dated  
camp before Charles town, May 8, 1780.*

SIR,

CIRCUMSTANCED as I now am with respect to the place invested, humanity only can induce me to lay within your reach the terms I had determined should not again be proffered.

THE fall of fort Sullivan, the destruction on the 6th instant of what remained of your cavalry, the critical period to which our approaches against the town have brought us, mark this as the term of your hopes of succour, (could you ever have framed any) and as an hour beyond which resistance is temerity.

By this last summons, therefore, I throw to your charge whatever vindictive severity exasperated soldiers may inflict on the unhappy people whom you devote, by persevering in a fruitless defence.

I SHALL expect your answer until eight o'clock, when hostilities will commence again, unless the town be surrendered.

I have the honour to be, &c.

(Signed) H. CLINTON.

IN

(c.) IN consequence of this letter, articles of capitulation were proposed by Major-general Lincoln, and answered by their Excellencies General Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the Bath, and Vice-admiral Arbuthnot; which answers being deemed by General Lincoln to be inadmissible, he proposed that other articles, which he then sent, might be acceded to. Those articles were rejected by Sir Henry Clinton and Vice-admiral Arbuthnot; and on the 11th of May Major-general Lincoln wrote the following letter :

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

*Copy of a letter from Major-general Lincoln to General Sir Henry Clinton,  
dated Charles town, May 11, 1780.*

S I R,

THE same motives of humanity which inclined you to propose articles of capitulation to this garrison, induced me to offer those I had the honour of sending you on the 8th instant. They then appeared to me such as I might proffer, and you receive, with honour to both parties. Your exceptions to them, as they principally concerned the militia and citizens, I then conceived were such as could not be concurred with; but a (d.) recent application from those people, wherein they express a willingness to comply with them, and a wish on my part to lessen as much as may be the distresses of war to individuals, lead me now to offer you my acceptance of them.

I have the honour to be, &c.

(Signed) B. LINCOLN.

His Excellency Sir Henry Clinton.



Notes to the First Chapter. *Copy of a letter from Sir Henry Clinton to Major-general Lincoln, dated camp before Charles town, May 11, 1780.*

S I R,

WHEN you rejected the favourable terms which were dictated by an earnest desire to prevent the effusion of blood, and interposed articles that were wholly inadmissible, both the admiral and myself were of opinion that the surrender of the town at discretion was the only condition that should afterwards be attended to ; but as the motives which then induced them are still prevalent, I now inform you that the terms then offered will still be granted.

A copy of the articles shall be sent for your ratification as soon as they can be prepared ; and immediately after they are exchanged, a detachment of grenadiers will be sent to take<sup>d</sup> possession of the horn work opposite your main gate. Every arrangement which may conduce to good order in occupying the town, shall be settled before noon to-morrow, and at that time your garrison will march out.

I have the honour to be, &c.

(Signed) H. CLINTON.

Major-general Lincoln.

SOUTH

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

*Articles of capitulation between their Excellencies Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the Bath, general and commander in chief of His Majesty's forces in the several provinces and colonies on the Atlantic, from Nova Scotia to West Florida inclusive, Mariot Arbuthnot, Esq. Vice-admiral of the Blue, and commander in chief of all His Majesty's ships and vessels in North America, and Major-general Benjamin Lincoln, commanding in chief in the town and harbour of Charles town.*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

ART. I. THAT all acts of hostility and work shall cease between the besiegers and the besieged, until the articles of capitulation shall be agreed on, signed, and executed, or collectively rejected.

ANSWER. All acts of hostility and work shall cease, until the articles of capitulation are finally agreed to or rejected.

ART. II. The town and fortifications shall be surrendered to the commander in chief of the British forces, such as they now stand.

ANSWER. The town and fortifications, with the shipping at the wharfs, artillery, and all other public stores whatsoever, shall be surrendered in their present state to the commanders of the investing forces; proper officers shall attend from the respective departments to receive them.

ART. III. The (f.) continental troops and sailors, with their baggage, shall be conducted to a place to be agreed on, where they shall remain prisoners of war until exchanged. While prisoners, they shall be supplied with good and wholesome provisions in such quantity as is served out to the troops of His Britannic Majesty.

ANSWER. Granted:

ART.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

ART. IV. The militia now in garrison shall be permitted to return to their respective homes, and be secured in their persons and property.

ANSWER. The militia (g.) now in garrison shall be permitted to return to their respective homes as prisoners on parole; which parole, as long as they observe, shall secure them from being molested in their property by the British troops.

ART. V. The sick and wounded shall be continued under the care of their own surgeons, and be supplied with medicines and such necessities as are allowed to the British hospitals.

ANSWER. Granted.

ART. VI. The officers of the army and navy shall keep their horses, swords, pistols, and baggage, which shall not be searched, and retain their servants.

ANSWER. Granted, (i.) except with respect to the horses, which will not be allowed to go out of the town, but may be disposed of by a person left from each corps for that purpose.

ART. VII. The garrison shall, at an hour appointed, march out with shouldered arms, drums beating, and colours flying, to a place to be agreed on, where they will pile their arms.

ANSWER. The whole (e.) garrison shall, at an hour to be appointed, march out of the town to the ground between the works of the place and the canal, where they will deposit their arms. The drums are not to beat a British march, or colours to be uncased.

ART. VIII. That the French consul, his house, papers, and other moveable property, shall be protected and untouched, and a proper time granted to him for retiring to any place that may afterwards be agreed

agreed upon between him and the commander in chief of the British forces.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

ANSWER. Agreed, with this restriction, that he is to consider himself as a prisoner on parole.

ART. IX. That the citizens shall be protected in their persons and properties.

ANSWER. All civil officers, (h.) and the citizens who have borne arms during the siege, must be prisoners on parole; and with respect to their property in the city, shall have the same terms as are granted to the militia; and all other persons now in the town, not to be described in this or other article, are notwithstanding understood to be prisoners on parole.

ART. X. That a twelvemonth's time be allowed all such as do not chuse to continue under the British government to dispose of their effects, real and personal, in the state, without any molestation whatever; or to remove such part thereof as they chuse, as well as themselves and families; and that, during that time, they or any of them may have it at their option to reside occasionally in town or country.

ANSWER. The discussion of this article of course cannot possibly be entered into at present.

ART. XI. That the same protection to their persons and properties, and the same time for the removal of their effects, be given to the subjects of France and Spain, as are required for the citizens in the preceding article.

ANSWER. The subjects of France and Spain shall have the same terms as are granted to the French consul.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

ART. XII. That a vessel be permitted to go to Philadelphia with the general's dispatches, which are not to be opened.

ANSWER. Granted, (k.) and a proper vessel with a flag will be provided for that purpose.

ALL public papers and records must be carefully preserved, and faithfully delivered to such persons as shall be appointed to receive them.

Done in Charles town, May 12, 1780.

B. LINCOLN.

Done in camp before Charles town, May 12, 1780.

(Signed)

H. CLINTON.

M. ARBUTHNOT.

*Total of the rebel forces commanded by Major-general Lincoln at the surrender of Charles town, May 12, 1780, now prisoners of war.*

TWO major generals, 5 brigadier generals, 3 majors of brigade, 16 colonels, 9 lieutenant colonels, 41 cornets or ensigns, 1 paymaster, 7 adjutants, 6 quarter masters, 18 surgeons, 6 mates, 322 serjeants, 137 drummers, 4710 rank and file.

THE above is a copy of a return signed by the British commissary of prisoners.

JOHN ANDRÉ,

Deputy adjutant general.

*Return*



*Return of ordnance, (b.) arms, and ammunition in Charles town, when surrendered to His Excellency Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the Bath, commander in chief of His Majesty's forces, &c. May 14, 1780.*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

*Ordnance mounted on carriages and beds, with side arms, &c.*

#### BRASS GUNS.

One six pounder, 17 four ditto, 3 three ditto.

#### BRASS MORTARS.

One ten inch, 1 nine inch three quarters, 1 seven inch one quarter, 3 five inch and half, 3 four inch and half, 1 eight-inch brass howitzer.

#### IRON GUNS.

Twelve twenty-six pounders, 12 twenty-four ditto, 29 eighteen ditto, 79 twelve ditto, 70 nine ditto, 27 six ditto, 44 four ditto, 6 three-half-pound swivels, 2 carronades, 3 four pounders.

#### SHOT, ROUND LOOSE.

Forty twenty-six pounders, 626 twenty-four ditto, 1219 eighteen ditto, 3120 twelve ditto, 2089 nine ditto, 500 six ditto, 700 four ditto, 100 three ditto.

#### CASE FIXED WITH POWDER.

Three thousand two hundred and thirty-six four pounders, 108 three ditto, 420 two ditto.

K

SHELLS,

## SHELLS, EMPTY.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

Ninety ten inch, 96 nine ditto three quarters, 150 eight ditto, 30 seven ditto three quarters, 40 six ditto three quarters, 26 five ditto and half, 100 four ditto and half, 212 hand granadoes, fixed.

## SHOT, GRAPE AND CASE, UNFIXED.

Fifteen twenty-four pounders, 96 eighteen ditto, 256 twelve ditto, 897 nine ditto, 214 four ditto; musquet shot, 2 cwt.

## DOUBLE HEADED.

Eighty-six eighteen pounders, 209 twelve ditto, 40 four ditto; 55 sponges, with staves and rammer heads, of forts; 209 ladles, with staves, &c., of forts; 21 wadhooks, with staves.

## HANDSPIKES.

One hundred and twenty-nine common, 41 iron-crow leavers, 80 spikes, with staves.

## CARTRIDGES, FLANNEL, FILLED.

Two hundred and twenty nine-pounders, 8 four pounders.

## DITTO, PAPER, FILLED.

One hundred and sixty-three twenty-four pounders, 422 eighteen ditto, 455 twelve ditto, 671 nine ditto, 20 four ditto, 100 three ditto, 25,550 musquet cartridges filled with ball, 7796 carabine ditto, 2 carriages, spare four pounders, 71 cutlasses; 3 gun triangles, with blocks complete;

complete; 14 lanterns, common; match flow, 2 cwt.; 376 barrels of powder, corned; 37 powder horns.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

## PAPER CARTRIDGES, EMPTY.

Two hundred and twenty twenty-four pounders, 941 eighteen ditto, 800 twelve ditto, 990 nine ditto, 400 six ditto, 6 dozen port fires, 270 tin tubes filled, 6000 ditto empty.

## FRENCH MUSQUETS.

Eight hundred and forty-seven in store, 4569 delivered at the abbatis, 15 stands of regimental colours.

Large quantities of musquet cartridges, arms, and other small articles, not included in the above return: The scattered situation of the different stores not admitting of collecting them in so short a time. A more exact account will be given as soon as possible.

## ABSTRACT OF ORDNANCE.

Brass guns, 21; mortars, 9; howitzers, 1; iron guns, 280. Total, 311. Besides the ordnance taken in fort Moultrie, Lampries, mount Pleasant, and on board the vessels, amounting in the whole to eighty or ninety pieces; and one ten-inch mortar.

(Signed) PETER TRAILLE,  
Major, commanding in the royal  
artillery.

## (NOTE I.)

*London Gazette.*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

*Copy of a letter from General Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. to Lord George Germain, dated Head Quarters, Charles town, South Carolina, June 3, 1780.*

MY LORD,

I HAVE the honour to enclose, for your lordship's information, the copies of two proclamations I have found it necessary to issue as commander in chief, and the copy of a handbill which has been circulated amongst the inhabitants, and appears to have had a very good effect.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

*Handbill issued after the surrender of Charles town.*

WHEN the royal army arrived in South Carolina, the commander in chief avoided, as much as possible, every measure which might excite the loyal inhabitants to rise in favour of government, and thus bring danger and trouble upon themselves, at a time when the King's army, being employed in the reduction of Charles town, could not assist or second their struggles.

THE blood of the loyalists that had been unhappily shed, and the severities which had been inflicted on them by the rebels, in consequence of the former spirited but ill-timed insurrections of the King's numerous friends on the back of both Carolinas, had already occasioned

too much grief and regret to His Majesty, and the fellow subjects in Europe, for him wantonly to bring again into hazard the lives and happiness of men who deserve so well of their country.

BUT Charles town, with its harbour, and fort Moultrie, being now reduced, and their garrisons, to the amount of six thousand men, with all their arms, stores, artillery, and ships of war, being in possession of His Majesty's forces, the time is come when it is equally the interest and duty of every good man to be in readiness to join the King's troops, and assist them in establishing justice and liberty, and in restoring and securing their own property, whenever they shall march to support them against the small rebel parties that still linger at a distance in the province.

AFTER so much disorder, violence, and oppression, the helping hand of every man (a.) is wanted to re-establish peace and good government; and as the commander in chief wished not to draw the King's friends into danger, when any doubt could remain of their success; so now that that is certain, he trusts that one and all will heartily join, and, by a general concurrence, give effect to such necessary measures for that purpose, as, from time to time, may be pointed out to them. And they may rest assured that every means will be used to avoid giving them any trouble but what is necessary to secure to them peace, liberty, and prosperity.

IN order to attain these happy ends, it is the duty of all men, who wish well to themselves and their country, to be ready at a moment, with their arms, to regain their just rights, and support the free constitution of their forefathers, under which we all increased and prospered.

THOSE



Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

THOSE who have families will form a militia to remain at home, and occasionally to assemble in their own districts, when required, under officers of their own chusing, for the maintenance of peace and good order. Those who have no families, and can conveniently be spared for a time, it is hoped will chearfully assist His Majesty's troops in driving their rebel oppressors, and all the miseries of war, far from the province.

FOR this purpose it is necessary that the young men be ready to assemble when required, and serve with the King's troops for any six months of the ensuing twelve that may be found requisite, under proper regulations. They may chuse officers to each company to command them, and will be allowed, when on service, pay, ammunition, and provisions, in the same manner as the King's troops. When they join the army, each man will be furnished with a certificate, declaring that he is only engaged to serve as a militia man for the time specified; that he is not to be marched beyond North Carolina and Georgia; and that when the time is out, he is freed from all claims whatever of military service, except the common and usual militia duty where he lives.

HE will then have paid his debt to his country, and be entitled to enjoy, undisturbed, that peace, liberty, and property, at home, which he had contributed to secure.

SOUTH

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

*By His Excellency Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the most honourable order of the Bath, general and commander in chief of all His Majesty's forces within the colonies lying on the Atlantic ocean, from Nova Scotia to West Florida inclusive.*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

## P R O C L A M A T I O N.

WHEREAS, notwithstanding the gracious offers which have been made to receive to His Majesty's peace and protection, with pardon and oblivion for their past offences, all those his deluded and infatuated subjects, who should return to their duty, and a due obedience to the laws, yet there are some wicked and desperate men, who, regardless of the ruin and misery in which the country will be involved, are still endeavouring to support the flame of rebellion, and, under pretence of authority derived from the late usurped legislatures, are attempting, by enormous fines, grievous imprisonments, and sanguinary punishments, to compel His Majesty's faithful and unwilling subjects to take up arms against his authority and government; and it is therefore become necessary, as well for the protection of the loyal subjects, as to procure the establishment of peace and good government in the country, to prevent, by the terror of example, such enormous offences being committed in future: I have therefore thought fit to issue this my proclamation, to declare, (b.) that if any person shall hereafter appear in arms, in order to prevent the establishment of His Majesty's government in this country, or shall, under any pretence or authority whatsoever, attempt to compel any other person or persons to do so, or who shall hinder or intimidate, or attempt to hinder or intimidate, the King's faithful and loyal subjects

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

from joining his forces, or otherwise performing those duties their allegiance requires, such person or persons so offending shall be treated with that severity so criminal and hardened an obstinacy will deserve, and his or their estates will be immediately seized, in order to be confiscated. And for the encouragement of the King's faithful and peaceable subjects, I do again assure them, that they shall meet with effectual countenance, protection, and support; and whenever the situation of the country will permit of the restoration of civil government and peace, they will, by the commissioners appointed by His Majesty for that purpose, be restored to the full possession of that liberty in their persons and property which they had before experienced under the British government. And that so desirable an event may be the more speedily accomplished, I do hereby, in His Majesty's name, require and command all persons whatsoever to be aiding and assisting to his forces, whenever they shall be required, in order to extirpate the rebellion, and thereby restore peace and prosperity to this, at present, desolated and distracted country.

GIVEN under my hand, at head quarters in Charles town, the 22d day of May, 1780.

(Signed) H. CLINTON.

By his excellency's command,

(Signed) NATHANIEL PHILIPS,  
Assisting secretary.

(COPY.)

( COPY. )

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

*By His Excellency Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the most honourable order of the Bath, general and commander in chief of all His Majesty's forces within the colonies lying on the Atlantic ocean, from Nova Scotia to West Florida inclusive, &c. &c. &c.*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

## P R O C L A M A T I O N.

WHEREAS after the arrival of His Majesty's forces under my command in this province, in February last, numbers of persons were made prisoners by the army, or voluntarily surrendered themselves as such, and such persons were afterwards dismissed on their respective paroles; and whereas since the surrender of Charles town, and the defeats and dispersion of the rebel forces, it is become unnecessary that such paroles should be any longer observed; and proper that all persons should take an active part in settling and securing His Majesty's government, and delivering the country from that anarchy which for some time past hath prevailed; I do hereby issue this my proclamation, to declare, that all the inhabitants of this province, who are now prisoners upon parole, and were not in the military line, (those who were in fort Moultrie and Charles town at the times of their capitulation and surrender, or were then in actual confinement excepted) that from and after the twentieth day of June instant, they are freed and exempted from all such paroles, and may hold themselves as restored to all the rights and duties belonging to citizens and inhabitants.

AND all persons under the description before mentioned, who shall afterwards neglect to return to their allegiance, and to His Majesty's

L

government,

Notes to the government, will be considered as enemies and rebels to the same, and  
 First Chapter. treated accordingly.

GIVEN under my hand, at head quarters in Charles town, the 3d day of June, 1780, and in the twentieth year of His Majesty's reign.

(Signed) H. CLINTON.

By his excellency's command,

(Signed) PETER RUSSEL,  
 Assisting secretary.

#### SOUTH CAROLINA.

*By Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the Bath, general of His Majesty's forces, and Mariot Arbuthnot, Esquire, vice admiral of the blue, His Majesty's commissioners to restore peace and good government in the several colonies in rebellion in North America.*

#### PROCLAMATION.

HIS Majesty having been pleased by his letters patent, under the great seal of Great Britain, to appoint us to be his commissioners, to restore the blessings of peace and liberty to the several colonies in rebellion in America, we do hereby make public his most gracious intentions, and in obedience to his commands, do declare to such of his deluded subjects as have been perverted from their duty by the factious arts of self-interested and ambitious men, that they will be received with mercy and forgiveness, if they immediately return to their allegiance, and a due obedience to those laws and that government which they formerly boasted was their best birthright and noblest inheritance ;



tance ; and upon a due experience of the sincerity of their professions, Notes to the  
a full and free pardon will be granted for the treasonable offences First  
which they have heretofore committed, in such manner and form as Chapter.  
His Majesty's commission doth direct.

NEVERTHELESS it is only to those, who, convinced of their errors, are firmly resolved to return to and support that government under which they were formerly so happy and free, that these gracious offers are once more renewed ; and therefore those persons are excepted, who, notwithstanding their present hopeless situation, and regardless of the accumulating pressure of the miseries of the people, which their infatuated conduct must contribute to increase, are nevertheless still so hardened in their guilt, as to endeavour to keep alive the flame of rebellion in this province, which will otherwise soon be reinstated in its former prosperity, security, and peace.

NOR can we at present resolve to extend the royal clemency to those who are polluted with the blood of their fellow citizens, most wantonly and inhumanly shed under the mock forms of justice, because they refused submission to an usurpation which they abhorred, and would not oppose that government with which they deemed themselves inseparably connected : And in order to give quiet and content to the minds of His Majesty's faithful and well-affected subjects, we do again assure them, that they shall have effectual countenance, protection, and support, and, as soon as the situation of the province will admit, the inhabitants will be re-instated in the possession of all those rights and immunities which they heretofore enjoyed under a free British government, exempt from taxation, except by their own legislature : And we do hereby call upon all His Majesty's faithful subjects, to be aiding with their endeavours, in order that a

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter. measure so conducive to their own happiness, and the welfare and prosperity of the province, may be the more speedily and easily attained.

GIVEN under our hands and seals, at Charles town, the 1st day of June, in the twentieth year of His Majesty's reign, and in the year of our Lord 1780.

H. CLINTON,  
M. ARBUTHNOT.

By their excellencies command,  
JAMES SIMPSON, Sec.

---

(NOTE K.)

*Extract of a letter from Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis, dated  
Charles town, May 17, 1780.*

YOUR (a.) lordship has already with you (in the field) two thousand five hundred and forty-two rank and file; but if you have the least reason to suppose the enemy likely to be in great number, you shall be reinforced with the 42d, the light infantry, and any other corps you chuse. As your move is important, it must not be flinted. I will give you all you wish of every sort. Let me know what it is as soon as possible. In the mean time, I shall order the light infantry and 42d regiment to prepare; depending upon it, that as soon as you can spare them, you will return them to me; for all  
opera-

operations to the northward must be cramped without them. If you chuse to keep the 17th dragoons, you are heartily welcome to them during this move.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

*Extract of a letter from Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated  
Camp at Lenew's, east side of Santee, May 21, 1780.*

THE march of the light infantry and 42d to Monk's corner will be of use to those corps, and will help to spread alarm through the country; but from what I hear, I do not believe that there can be any necessity for detaining any part of the first embarkation a moment after the ships are ready for them.

---

(NOTE L.)

*Copy of a summons sent by Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to Colonel Buford,  
dated Wacsaus, May 29, 1780.*

SIR,

RESISTANCE being vain, to prevent the effusion of human blood, I make offers which can never be repeated:—You (a.) are now almost encompassed by a corps of seven hundred light troops on horseback; half of that number are infantry with cannon, the rest cavalry: Earl Cornwallis is likewise within a short march with nine British battalions.

I WARN you of the temerity of farther inimical proceedings, and I hold out the following conditions, which are nearly the same as were  
accepted.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

accepted by Charles town: But if any persons attempt to fly after this flag is received, rest assured, that their rank shall not protect them, if taken, from rigorous treatment.

1st ART. All officers to be prisoners of war, but admitted to parole, and allowed to return to their habitations till exchanged.

2d ART. All continental soldiers to go to Lamprie's point, or any neighbouring post, to remain there till exchanged, and to receive the same provisions as British soldiers.

3d ART. All militia soldiers to be prisoners upon parole at their respective habitations.

4th ART. All arms, artillery, ammunition, stores, provisions, wag-gons, horses, &c. to be faithfully delivered.

5th ART. All officers to be allowed their private baggage and horses, and to have their side arms returned.

I EXPECT an answer to these propositions as soon as possible; if they are accepted, you will order every person under your command to pile his arms in one hour after you receive the flag: If you are rash enough to reject them, the blood be upon your head.

I have the honour to be,

(Signed)

B A N. T A R L E T O N,  
Lieutenant colonel, commandant  
of the British legion.

Colonel Buford, &c. &c.

*Copy*

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

*Copy of Colonel Buford's answer to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's  
summons to surrender.*

Wacfaws, May 29, 1780.

S I R,

(b.) I REJECT your propofals, and fhall defend myself to the  
laft extremity.

I have the honour to be, &c.

(Signed) A B R. B U F O R D, Colonel.

Lieut. Col. Tarleton,  
Commanding British legion.

---

( N O T E M . )

*London Gazette Extraordinary.*

Whitehall, July 5, 1780.

*The following letters from Sir Henry Clinton, Knight of the Bath, commander in chief of His Majesty's forces in North America, to the Right Hon. Lord George Germain, one of His Majesty's principal secretaries of state, were this day received by Lieutenant-colonel Bruce, one of Sir Henry Clinton's aids-de-camp, who arrived in the South-Carolina packet.*

Head Quarters, Charles town, South Carolina,

June 4, 1780.

MY LORD,

I HAD the honour, in my difpatch, No. 88, by the Earl of Lincoln, to communicate to your lordship the furrender of Charles town. I am now able to give your lordship a return of the prifoners \* taken,

\* Placed after the public letter tranfmitted by the Earl of Lincoln.

amounting,



Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

amounting, as you will observe, exclusive of near a thousand sailors in arms, to five thousand six hundred and eighteen men.

I INFORMED (a.) your lordship, that Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis was to march up the north side of the Santee, while another corps moved up the hither shore of that river towards the district of Ninety Six. These corps are in motion, as well as the one up the Savannah river in Georgia.

THE troops immediately under his lordship's command have pressed so effectually upon a body of the rebels which remained in the province, that the earl, by detaching his corps of cavalry, and with them the legion infantry, (mounted) has completed the destruction of every thing in arms against us in this province.

Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton headed this detachment, whose celerity in performing a march of near a hundred miles in two days, was equal to the ardour with which they attacked the enemy. These refusing the terms which were offered them, were charged and defeated, with the loss of one hundred and seventy-two killed, and some taken, together with the remaining field artillery of the southern army, their colours, and baggage.

WITH the greatest pleasure (f.) I farther report to your lordship, that the inhabitants from every quarter repair to the detachments of the army, and to this garrison, to declare their allegiance to the King, and to offer their services, in arms, in support of his government. In many instances they have brought prisoners their former oppressors or leaders; and I may venture to assert, that there are few men in South Carolina who are not either our prisoners, or in arms with us.

I HAVE

I HAVE also the satisfaction to receive corresponding accounts, that the loyalists in the back parts of North Carolina are arming. I dare entertain hopes that Earl Cornwallis's presence on that frontier, and perhaps within the province, will call back its inhabitants from their state of error and disobedience. If a proper naval force can be collected, I purpose sending a small expedition into Cape-fear river, to favour the revolution I look for higher in the country.

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

I AM, with the troops I could take, quitting the harbour of Charles town, on my way to New York, hoping no foreign armament can yet have reached the coast, or have been able to attempt any thing, in our absence, against that place.

LIEUTENANT-colonel Bruce, my aid-de-camp, will have the honour of presenting these dispatches to your lordship. He has served with distinction during this whole war, and is well able to satisfy your lordship in any inquiries you may be pleased to make concerning the late operations in Carolina.

YOUR lordship will receive by Major-general Prevost, who fails in a few days, the account from Earl Cornwallis of what shall have occurred to that time.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

Romulus, off Charles-town bar,

June 5, 1780.

MY LORD,

I HAVE just received from Earl Cornwallis a letter, enclosing a more particular report than has yet been received from Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, of the affair at Wacshaw. I have the honour to en-

M

close

Notes to the close both, together with a return of the killed and wounded, and of  
 First Chapter. the artillery and other implements taken.

YOUR lordship will observe, that the enemy's killed and wounded, and taken, exceed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's numbers with which he attacked them.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

(C O P Y.)

Camden, June 2, 1780.

S I R,

I N my letter (e.) of the 30th of last month, I enclosed a note from Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, wrote in great haste from the field of action, and I explained my reasons for sending the detachment under his command in pursuit of the enemy.

I HAVE now the honour of transmitting to you his account of the march and engagement, with the loss on both sides.

I CAN only add the highest encomiums on the conduct of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton. It will give me the most sensible satisfaction to hear that your Excellency has been able to obtain for him some distinguished mark of His Majesty's favour.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

His Excellency Sir Henry Clinton,  
 K. B. &c.

(C O P Y.)

(C O P Y.)

Notes to the  
First  
Chapter.

MY LORD,

I HAVE (a.) the honour to inform you, that yesterday at three o'clock, P. M. after a march of one hundred and five miles in fifty-four hours, with the corps of cavalry, the infantry of the legion, mounted on horses, and a three pounder, at Wacław, near the line which divides North from South Carolina, the rebel force, commanded by Colonel Buford, consisting of the 11th Virginia and detachments of other regiments, from the same province, with artillery, and some cavalry, were brought to action.

AFTER the summons, in which terms similar to those accepted by Charles town were offered, and positively rejected, the action commenced in a wood; the attacks were pointed at both flanks, the front, and reserve, by two hundred and seventy cavalry and infantry blended, and at the same instant all were equally victorious, few of the enemy escaping, except the commanding officer by a precipitate flight on horseback.

IT is above my ability to say any thing in commendation of the bravery and exertion of officers and men. I leave their merit to your lordship's consideration.

I have the honour to be, &c.

BAN. TARLETON,  
Lieutenant colonel, commandant of  
the British legion.

Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, &c. &c.

M 2

*Return*

Notes to the First Chapter. *Return (c.) of rebels killed, wounded, and taken, in the affair at Wacshaw, the 29th of May, 1780.*

1 LIEUTENANT colonel, 3 captains, 8 subalterns, 1 adjutant, 1 quarter master, 99 serjeants and rank and file, killed.

3 CAPTAINS, 5 subalterns, 142 serjeants and rank and file, wounded, unable to travel, and left on parole.

2 CAPTAINS, 1 subaltern, 50 serjeants and rank and file, prisoners.

TAKEN, 3 stand (d.) of colours, 2 brass six pounders, 2 royals, 2 waggons with ammunition, 1 artillery forge cart, 55 barrels of powder, 26 waggons loaded with new cloathing, arms, musquet cartridges, new cartridge boxes, flints, and camp equipage.

(Signed) B. A. N. T A R L E T O N,  
Lieutenant colonel, commandant of  
the British legion.

(b.) *Return of British killed and wounded in the affair at Wacshaw, the 29th of May, 1780.*

CAVALRY. 2 privates, 11 horses, killed; 1 subaltern, 8 privates, 19 horses, wounded.

INFANTRY. 2 subalterns, 1 private, killed; 3 privates wounded.

N. B. LIEUTENANT Pateschall, 17th dragoons, wounded; Lieutenant Lauchlin M'Donald, of the legion infantry, killed; Ensign Campbell, of the legion infantry, serving with cavalry, killed.

(Signed) B. T A R L E T O N,  
Lieutenant colonel, commandant  
of the British legion.



## CHAPTER II.

*Earl Cornwallis takes the command of the King's troops in Georgia and South Carolina. — His disposition of the King's troops. — Earl Cornwallis goes to Charles town. — Eight hundred loyalists from North Carolina join the British. — Intelligence of a continental army. — The effect it produces in South Carolina. — Colonel Sumpter attacks Rocky mount, — and Hanging rock. — Baron de Kalbe approaches with the American army. — General Gates supersedes de Kalbe. — Lord Rawdon assembles the King's troops. — Earl Cornwallis arrives at Camden. — Battle near Camden. — Action near the Catawba fords.*

UPON Sir Henry Clinton's departure, the command of the King's CHAP. II. troops to the southward devolved to Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis. The submission of General Williamson (a.) in Ninety Six, who formerly commanded the militia of that district, and the dispersion of a party of Americans who had assembled at an iron-work, on the north-west border of the province, put a temporary period to all resistance in South Carolina. The heat of the summer, the want of stores and provisions, and the unsettled state of Charles town and the country, impeded (b.) the immediate invasion of North Carolina: Earl Cornwallis dispatched emissaries with instructions to the leading June 6. men in that province, to attend to the harvest, to prepare provisions,

Earl Cornwallis takes the command of the King's troops in Georgia and South Carolina.

(a.) In note A.

(b.) In note A.

and-

CHAP. II. and to remain quiet, till the King's troops were ready to advance, which operation could not take place before the latter end of August or the beginning of September : That interval of time was deemed indispensably requisite for the construction of magazines with properly-secured communications, for a clear establishment of the militia, and for a final adjustment of those civil and military regulations which in future were to govern Georgia and South Carolina.

In the beginning of June Colonel Lord Rawdon, with the volunteers of Ireland and a detachment of legion cavalry, made a short expedition into a settlement of Irish, situated in the Wacaws : The sentiments of the inhabitants did not correspond with his lordship's expectations : He there learned what experience confirmed, that the Irish were the most averse of all other settlers to the British government in America. During the stay of the volunteers of Ireland in the Wacaws, many of the inhabitants gave their paroles ; an obligation they readily violated, when called to arms by the American commanders. Lord Rawdon being returned to Camden, and the move into North Carolina being postponed, Earl Cornwallis made a disposition (1.) of the King's troops upon the frontiers, and within the provinces, well calculated to procure the regiments and corps every necessary and convenience, to protect the new levies who had begun to incorporate, and to secure the possession of the lately-acquired dominion.

His disposition of the King's troops.

THE 23d and 33d regiments of infantry, the volunteers of Ireland, the legion infantry, Brown's and Hamilton's corps, and a detachment of artillery, were placed in and about Camden, where huts, of proper

(1.) South Carolina contained about five thousand four hundred effectives, and Georgia about one thousand one hundred, British, Hessians, and Provincials.

materials

materials to resist the hot weather, were constructed. Major M'Arthur, with the 71st regiment, was stationed at the Cheraws, in the vicinity of the Pedee river, to cover the country between Camden and George town, and to hold correspondence with a friendly settlement at Cross creek, in North Carolina. A small detachment of provincials was deemed sufficient for the protection of George town ; the position of the 71st and the neighbourhood of Charles town leaving no apprehensions of an attack in that quarter. The chain, to the westward of Camden, was connected with Ninety Six by Rocky mount, a strong post on the Wateree, and occupied by Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull, with the New-York volunteers and some militia. Lieutenant-colonel Balfour, and afterwards Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, commanded at Ninety Six : The force there consisted of a battalion of De Lancey's, and Innes's and Allen's regiments of provincials, with the 16th and three other companies of light infantry. Major Ferguson's corps and a body of loyal militia traversed that part of the province situated between the Wateree and Saluda, and sometimes approached the borders of North Carolina. Lieutenant-colonel Brown held possession of Augusta, the frontier town of Georgia, with his own and detachments from other regiments in that province. Savannah, the capital, was sufficiently garrisoned by a corps of Hessians and provincials, under the orders of Colonel Alured Clark. Charles town contained the 7th, 63d, and 64th regiments of infantry, two battalions of Hessians, a large detachment of royal artillery, and some corps of provincials, under the command of Brigadier-general Patterson. The legion dragoons (the 17th being ordered to New York) were directed to keep the communications open between the principal posts of this extended cantonment : This service injured them infinitely more than all the preceding moves and actions of the campaign, and though hitherto successful against their enemies in the field, they were nearly destroyed in detail by the

patroles.

CHAP. II. patrols and detachments required of them during the intense heat of the season.

BESIDES the defence of the frontiers, another material and national advantage resulted from this disposition of the King's troops. The officers and men of the different regiments and corps were supplied by the flour and cattle, whilst the horses were foraged by the produce of the country. Any expenditure of the provisions brought across the Atlantic was unknown except in Charles town and Savannah. The militia, the cavalry, the secret service, the rum, and the pay of the troops, were almost the only necessary expences. The contingent charges for the civil and military establishments requisite for Charles town and Savannah could not be burdensome: And the assistance yielded to the quarter-master-general's and commissariat departments, by the country, by confiscation, and by captures from the enemy, afforded an eligible opportunity for retrenching the disbursements of those chargeable branches of the army: In short, so favourable a juncture, owing to many propitious circumstances, never before presented itself in America, for the exercise of public œconomy.

RUM, salt, and other stores, that were wanted by the regiments, by the artillery, by the quarter-master-general's, and by the commissariat departments, were ordered to be conveyed from Charles town to Camden. The magazine was formed at that place on account of the convenience of water carriage by the river from Nelson's ferry, and because it was the most eligible position to support the communication between the army and Charles town, when the King's troops moved forwards into North Carolina.

THE (a.) arrangement of the commercial and civil regulations, for CHAP. II.  
the prosperity of South Carolina, next demanded the attention of Earl  
Cornwallis; for this purpose he committed the care of the frontier to  
Lord Rawdon, and repaired to Charles town about the middle of Earl Corn-  
June, where he entered upon that difficult business with great atten- wallis goes to  
tion and assiduity. The inhabitants who had formerly borne arms Charles  
against the British troops in the province, and had returned to their town.  
plantations since the departure of Sir Henry Clinton, were disarmed,  
and admitted to their parole. The estates of the violent absentees  
were seized, and placed in the hands of commissioners, who were  
vested with power to sell the produce, which, with the stock of cattle  
and horses found upon them, was appropriated to the use of the army,  
upon the commissaries giving receipts to the trustees for the different  
articles they received. The friends to the British cause, who had been  
driven out of the country, on proper application, had their property,  
or what remained of it, restored. The havoc made by the Ameri-  
cans, during their banishment, often defeated this intention. En-  
couragement was given to trade, by allowing merchants to convey to  
Charles town a variety of manufactures which had been long wanted  
throughout all the southern provinces, and permitting them to receive  
payment in the produce of the country. Commissioners were ap-  
pointed to arrange the differences which subsisted in Carolina concern-  
ing the negroes. It is here necessary to observe, that all the negroes,  
men, women, and children, upon the approach of any detachment of  
the King's troops, thought themselves absolved from all respect to  
their American masters, and entirely released from servitude: Influ-  
enced by this idea, they quitted the plantations, and followed the  
army; which behaviour caused neglect of cultivation, proved detri-

(a.) In note B.

N

mental



CHAP. II. mental to the King's troops, and occasioned continual disputes about property of this description : In a short time the attention of the commissioners produced arrangements equally useful to the military and inhabitants. Lord Cornwallis attempted to conciliate the minds of the wavering and unsteady, by promises and employments : He endeavoured so to conduct himself, as to give offence to no party ; and the consequence was, that he was able entirely to please none. He carried his lenity so far, that violent enemies, who had given paroles for their peaceable behaviour, availed themselves of the proclamation of the 3d of June, and, without examination, took out certificates as good citizens ; which conduct opened a door to some designing and insidious Americans, who secretly undermined, and totally destroyed, the British interest in South Carolina. The army was governed with particular discipline, and notwithstanding the exultation of victory, care was taken to give as little offence as possible in Charles town and country to the jealousy of the vanquished. This moderation produced not the intended effect : It did not reconcile the enemies, but it discouraged the friends. Upon their return home, they compared their past with their enemies present situation, they reflected on their own losses and sufferings, and they enumerated the recent and general acts of rigour, exercised upon them and their associates by all the civil officers employed under Congress, for their attachment to Great Britain. The policy therefore adopted on this occasion, without gaining new, discontented the old adherents ; and the future scene will discover, that lenity and generosity did not experience in America the merited returns of gratitude and affection.

30th June.

AT the present period (d.) it was said, that the militia made a promising appearance, and that they equalled the wishes of their leaders,

(d.) In note B.

both

both as to numbers and professions of loyalty : Cunningham and Har- CHAP. II.  
 rison, (c.) men of fortune and influence in their respective districts,  
 obtained Lord Cornwallis's leave to convert their levies of friends and  
 adherents into regiments of provincials. But notwithstanding the  
 success which attended the enrolment of the loyal militia, the reports  
 which now began to circulate of the exertions of Congress, and of  
 the American army, united to the efforts of Virginia and North Ca-  
 rolina, gave a turn to the minds of the inhabitants of the southern  
 provinces : Discontents were disseminated ; secret conspiracies were  
 entered into upon the frontier ; hostilities were already begun in many  
 places, and every thing seemed to menace a revolution, as rapid as  
 that which succeeded the surrender of Charles town.

THE precautions employed to prevent the rising of the King's  
 friends in North Carolina had not had universal effect. Several of the  
 inhabitants of Tryon county, excited by a Colonel (d.) Moore, mani-  
 fested their attachment to the British cause, by taking up arms on the  
 18th of June, without the necessary caution requisite for such an un-  
 dertaking, and they were in a few days afterwards defeated by Gene-  
 ral Rutherford. This event encouraged a spirit of persecution, which  
 made Colonel Bryan, another loyalist, who had promised to wait for  
 orders, lose all patience, and forced him to move with eight hundred Eight hun-  
dred loyalists  
from North  
Carolina join  
the British.  
 men, (b.) assembled from the neighbourhood of the Yadkin, towards  
 the nearest British post : After many difficulties, he fortunately reached  
 the 71st regiment, stationed in the Cheraws. The news brought by  
 these loyalists created some astonishment in the military, and diffused  
 universal consternation amongst the inhabitants of South Carolina :  
 They reported, that Major-general de (c.) Kalbe, a French officer in

(c.) In note A.

(d.) In note A.

(b.) In note B.

(c.) In note B.

CHAP. II. the American service, was advancing from Salisbury, with a large body of continentals; that Colonel Porterfield was bringing state troops from Virginia; that General Caswall had raised a powerful force in North Carolina; and that Colonel Sumpter had already entered the Catawba, a settlement contiguous to the Wacsaaws. These accounts being propagated, and artfully exaggerated, by the enemies within the province, caused a wonderful fermentation in the minds of the Americans, which neither the lenity of the British government, the solemnity of their paroles, by which their persons and properties enjoyed protection, nor the memory of the undeserved pardon so lately extended to many of them, had sufficient strength to retain in a state of submission or neutrality.

Intelligence of a continental army.  
The effect it produced in South Carolina.

WHILEST the Americans were collecting their forces, Lord Rawdon made occasional alterations in the distribution of the King's troops upon the frontier, in order to confirm the adherence of the loyal inhabitants, and to obviate the designs of the enemy. Some log houses were constructed at Ninety Six, at Williams's, on the banks of the Pacolet, and at Rocky mount. The legion infantry, a detachment of Colonel Browne's regiment, and Colonel Bryan's militia, were advanced to Hanging rock: Lieutenant-colonel Webster was recalled from that post, and the 23d regiment fell back to Rugeley's mills. Major M'Arthur's position in the Cheraws was deemed too forward, and he was desired to retire some miles into the province.

THE state of the country, and the exaggerated reports of the Americans, occasioned frequent patrols of cavalry and mounted infantry from the advanced British posts; one of which experienced both disgrace and defeat. Lieutenant-colonel (a.) Turnbull, on some intelli-

(a.) In note C.

gence

gence from Fishing creek, sent Captain Huck of the legion to investigate the truth : The detachment committed to his care consisted of thirty-five dragoons of the legion, twenty mounted infantry of the New-York volunteers, and about sixty militia. On his arrival at the cross roads, near the source of Fishing creek, Captain Huck neglected his duty, in placing his party carelessly at a plantation, without advancing any pickets, or sending out patrols : Some Americans who were assembled in the neighbourhood heard of his negligent situation, and with an inferior force surprised and destroyed him, and a great part of his command.

CHAP. II.

AN instance of treachery which took place about this time, ruined all confidence between the regulars and the militia : The (a.) inhabitants in the districts of the rivers Ennoree and Tyger had been enrolled since the siege of Charles town, under the orders of Colonel Floyd ; Colonel Neale, the former commanding officer, having fled out of the province for his violent persecution of the loyalists. One Lisle, who had belonged to the same corps, and who had been banished to the islands, availing himself of the proclamation to exchange his parole for a certificate of his being a good citizen, was made second in command : And as soon as the battalion was completed with arms and ammunition, he carried it off to Colonel Neale, who had joined Colonel Sumpter's command in the Catawba.

THIS reinforcement, added to his former numbers, inspired Colonel Sumpter with a desire of signalizing himself, by attacking some of the British posts upon the frontier. Having gained the necessary information, he directed his efforts against the corps at Rocky mount. (b.)

(a.) In note E.

(b.) In note E.

CHAR. II. Near the end of July he passed Broad river, at Blair's ford, with about nine hundred men, and advanced upon Turnbull, whose force was composed of one hundred and fifty provincials, and as many militia. The defences of Rocky mount consisted of two log houses, a loop-holed building, and an abbatis; placed upon an eminence, which commanded a view of the neighbouring country. Colonel Sumpter having no cannon to destroy the abbatis or the buildings, selected some of his bravest followers, to remove the former, and to endeavour to set fire to the latter, whilst his people, under cover of the trees and rocks, on the declivity of the mountain, maintained a heavy fire upon the garrison. After three attacks, in the last of which some of the forlorn hope penetrated within the abbatis, the American commander retreated with loss and precipitation. In the gallant defence of this post, Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull had one officer killed, one wounded, and about ten men killed and wounded.

Col. Sumpter attacks Rocky mount,

COLONEL Sumpter crossed Broad river, and retired to his former camp in the Catawba settlement; where, reinforcing the numbers he had lost at Rocky mount, he was soon in a condition to project other operations. This active partizan was thoroughly sensible, that the minds of men are influenced by enterprize, and that to keep undisciplined people together, it is necessary to employ them. For this purpose, he again surveyed the state of the British posts upon the frontier, and on minute examination he deemed Hanging rock the most vulnerable: He hastened his preparations for the attack, because a detachment of cavalry and mounted infantry had been ordered from that place to reinforce Rocky mount. On the 6th of August, at seven o'clock in the morning, he approached the flank of the post, which was entrusted to the North-Carolina refugees, under the orders of Colonel Bryan. This loyalist, with his undisciplined people, though

and Hanging rock.



opposed by troops equally undisciplined, soon retreated from his ground, and Colonel Sumpter directed the weight of his attack against the legion infantry, which resisted his efforts with great coolness and bravery. The example of courage exhibited by one hundred and sixty men of the legion, who charged the Americans twice with fixed bayonets, to save their three pounder, made a detachment of Colonel Brown's regiment recover from the consternation into which they had been thrown by the flight of Colonel Bryan, and they now joined their endeavours to defend the British encampment. Colonel Sumpter still persevered in his attack, and very probably would have succeeded, if a stratagem employed by Captains Stewart and M'Donald, of the British legion, had not disconcerted his operations. These officers, with forty mounted infantry, were returning the same morning from Rocky mount, and on the route heard the cannon and musketry at Hanging rock; on a nearer approach to their post, they judiciously left the Rocky mount, and made a circuit to get into the main Camden road, to reinforce their companions: When they arrived in sight of the Americans, the bugle horn was directed to sound the charge, and the soldiers were ordered to extend their files, in order to look like a formidable detachment. This unexpected appearance deranged the American commander, and threw his corps into a state of confusion, which produced a general retreat. Captain M'Culloch, who commanded the legion infantry with so much distinction, was killed, with two other officers, and twenty men: Upwards of thirty of the same corps were wounded. The detachment of Colonel Browne's regiment had, likewise, some officers and men killed and wounded, and a few taken prisoners. Colonel Bryan's North-Carolina refugees were greatly dispersed, but did not suffer considerably by the fire of the enemy. About one hundred dead and wounded Americans were left on the field of battle. Colonel Sumpter

ter:



CHAP. II. ter rallied his men not far from Hanging rock, and again fell back to the Catawba settlement, to collect more men from the Wacsaaws, and to receive refugees, who flocked from all parts of South Carolina. The repulses he had sustained did not discourage him, or injure his cause: The loss of men was easily supplied, and his reputation for activity and courage was fully established by his late enterprising conduct.

As soon as the account of Colonel Sumpter's attack reached Camden, Lord Rawdon ordered the 23d regiment to advance from Rugely's mills to Hanging rock. This reinforcement under Major Mekan put the post in security, and enabled Colonel Bryan to collect his people, who were scattered over the face of the country. The wounded were afterwards conveyed to Camden, where the climate had sent a number of non-commissioned officers and soldiers into hospital.

IN this situation of affairs upon the frontier, Lord Rawdon received frequent intelligence that the American army, composed of the Maryland brigades, the Delawar regiment, some Virginia state troops, and Colonel Armand's legion, continued to advance: He had, likewise, authentic information, that the continentals had been reinforced on Deep river, by General Caswall, (b.) with the North-Carolina militia. As soon as General Washington obtained accounts of the critical situation of Major-general Lincoln to the southward, owing to the great addition of force carried to that quarter, under the immediate direction of the British commander in chief, he judiciously determined to send a considerable detachment of continentals from the American

(b.) In note C.

I

army

army in the Jerseys, to stop the progress of the royalists. This powerful reinforcement was committed to Major-general Baron de Kalbe, an officer of reputation, who pressed forwards the troops with indefatigable attention : By long and repeated marches they now approached the frontier of South Carolina. Their passage through Virginia had given vigour to that province, and large detachments of militia followed the route of the main army. North Carolina likewise made exertions to raise troops, and the governor and assembly voted three thousand men for the service. Notwithstanding these formidable preparations, the Baron de Kalbe met with great difficulties after he passed the Roanoke river : Provisions (2.) were so scarce in North Carolina, that the continental troops endured extreme hardships, and were frequently retarded on their march for want of necessary supplies. Whether the complaints and remonstrances forwarded by Baron de Kalbe to the governor and the assembly of the province, to Congress, and to General Washington, on this subject, produced an alteration of opinion respecting himself, is not certain, but another commander in chief was soon afterwards appointed, and sent to the southward.

Baron de Kalbe approaches with the American army.

ON the 24th of July, Major-general Gates arrived in the American camp. His name and former good fortune re-animated the exertions of the country : Provisions were more amply supplied by the inhabitants, and the continental troops soon reached the frontier of South Carolina. On the banks of the river Pedee, the American general issued a proclamation, (K.) inviting the *patriotic citizens* of Carolina to assemble under his auspices, *to vindicate the rights of America* ; holding out an amnesty to all who had subscribed paroles, imposed upon them

General Gates supercedes De Kalbe.

(2.) Remembrancer, part 2d, 1780, page 279.

(K.) Note K.

CHAP. II. by the *russian hand of conquest*; and excepting only those, who in the *hour of devastation* had exercised acts of *barbarity and depredation* upon the persons and *property of their fellow citizens*.

THE approach of General Gates with an army of six thousand men, induced Lord Rawdon gradually to contract the posts upon the frontier, in order to assemble his forces: Major M'Arthur was directed to draw nearer to Camden; the two battalions of the 71st regiment, under his orders, were at this period considerable sufferers by the unhealthy climate of Carolina. To disencumber himself for movement, he collected some boats on the river Pedee, and committed upwards of one hundred sick men to the care of Colonel (c.) Mills, to be escorted to George town by the militia under his command. After the sick were embarked, Major M'Arthur commenced his march. In less than two days the militia mutinied, and securing their own officers and the sick, conducted them prisoners to General Gates, in North Carolina. This instance of treachery in the east of the province followed the perfidious conduct of Lieutenant-colonel Lisle on the western border, and strongly proved the mistake committed by the British, in placing confidence in the inhabitants of the country when acting apart from the army. The only probable way to reap advantage from the levies made in Carolina, would have been to incorporate the young men as they were raised in the established provincial corps, where they could be properly trained, and formed under officers of experience: By such a line of conduct, all the British regulars would have been saved, the King's troops in general would have been augmented, and considerable service might have been derived from their additional numbers.

(c.) In note E.

WHEN

WHEN General Gates passed the boundary line of South Carolina, CHAP. II. the British detachment was recalled from Hanging rock. Lord Rawdon afterwards took post on the west branch of Lynche's creek, about fourteen miles from Camden, with the 23d, 33d, and 71st regiments of infantry, the volunteers of Ireland, Lieutenant-colonel Hamilton's corps, about forty dragoons of the legion, and four pieces of cannon. The infantry of the legion, and part of Colonel Browne's regiment, were placed at Rugeley's mills. The hospital, the baggage, the provisions, the ammunition, and the stores, remained under a weak guard at Camden. General Gates advanced to the creek opposite to the British camp, and skirmishes ensued between the advanced parties of the two armies. The American commander discovered that Lord Rawdon's position was strong, and he declined an attack; but he had not sufficient penetration to conceive, that by a forced march up the creek, he could have passed Lord Rawdon's flank, and reached Camden; which would have been an easy conquest, and a fatal blow to the British.

WHILE the two armies remained facing each other at Lynche's creek, Lord Rawdon sent an order to Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, to forward to Camden, without loss of time, the four companies of light infantry, under Captain Charles Campbell: He likewise directed the troops at Rugeley's mills to quit their position: Major Carden, with the detachment of Browne's, was ordered to Camden; and the legion infantry, under Captain Stewart, were desired to find the most direct road from their present situation to the camp at Lynche's creek. A guide conducted Captain Stewart to the outpost of General Gates's army; a warm salutation from the picket discovered the mistake: No farther inconvenience ensued, though Armand's cavalry, and Porterfield's light infantry, followed the legion till they reached the British

CHAP. II. encampment. Lord Rawdon withdrew the corps from Rugeley's mills, on account of its exposed situation; and suspecting yet that the enemy meant to detach against some of his outposts, he desired Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull to evacuate Rocky mount, and to join Major Ferguson at his position on Little river, where he had erected some field works, with his corps of provincials and loyal militia.

LORD Rawdon sent regular information of every material (a.) incident, or movement, made by the Americans, and by the King's troops, on the frontier, to Earl Cornwallis at Charles town; where the public business, (D.) relative to claims, commercial arrangements, and other civil regulations, required great time to reduce it to order. The appearance of a formidable army in the province prevented a methodical completion of the system of government, and called the attention of Earl Cornwallis to objects of more immediate importance. His lordship, therefore, prepared to leave Charles town, after some of the most necessary and essential (b.) points were adjusted.

IN the mean time, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, being recovered from a fever, was desired to collect all the dragoons he could find in Charles town, and join Lord Rawdon in the country: With the assistance of Major Hanger, who was lately appointed to the cavalry, thirty dragoons and forty mounted militia were assembled: With this force Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton crossed the Santee at Lenew's ferry on the 6th of August: He moved from thence to the Black (c.) river, which he passed, in order to punish the inhabitants in that quarter for their late breach of paroles and perfidious revolt. A necessary service was concealed under this disagreeable exertion of authority: The vic-

(a.) In note F.

(D.) Note D.

(b.) In note F.

(c.) In note F.



nity of the rivers Santee and Wateree, and of all the Charles-town CHAP. II. communications with the royal army, rendered it highly proper to strike terror into the inhabitants of that district. This point of duty being effected, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton crossed the Black river, giving out to the country that he intended to join the British army by the main road over the Santee hills; but really designing to re-cross the river, to gain intelligence of General Gates's operations: He accordingly passed at a private place in the night, and marched with great rapidity for twenty-four hours; when, ordering his party to assume the enemy's appearance and names, the Americans were liberal of their information and every other assistance. A member of assembly, of the name of Bradley, at that time on parole, was severe in his denunciations against the British officers and soldiers, and warm in commendation of the heroic spirit of his supposed friends and guests. The nearness of General Gates's camp at last obliged Tarleton to desire his new acquaintance to conduct him over a very intricate morass, that he might attack the rear of Lord Rawdon's posts: Bradley entered heartily into the plan, and collected some neighbouring American militia to join in the expedition: After passing Megert's swamp, the source of Black river, Tarleton undeceived his late host, and conducted him and his volunteers prisoners to Camden. On his arrival at that place, he had evident proof that the legion cavalry were nearly destroyed by the constant duties of detachment and patrol: He collected all the dragoons at that post, and in the neighbourhood, and joined Lord Rawdon at Lynche's creek on the 10th day of August.

A PATROLE, sent by General Gates to Rugeley's mills on the 12th, occasioned a report that the American commander was moving to his right: The situation of the British hospital and magazine, and the present distance of the army, pointed out to Lord Rawdon the propriety of Lord Rawdon assembling the King's forces.

CHAP. II. of falling back from Lynche's creek, and of concentrating his force near Camden. The move was accordingly made, without any molestation from the enemy, and an encampment was chosen at Log town, the most eligible to be found in the neighbourhood of Camden, which did not afford any naturally-advantageous position for defensive operations.

Earl Cornwallis arrives at Camden.

ON the 13th, (a.) General Gates moved the American army to Rugeley's mills: The Maryland brigades, the Delawar regiment, the cannon, the cavalry, the baggage, and the militia, were posted on the north side of Granney-quarter's creek; and Colonel Porterfield and Major Armstrong's corps of light infantry were advanced over the creek, on the road leading to Camden. On the same day the four companies of light infantry arrived from Ninety Six, and in the night (d.) Earl Cornwallis crossed the Wateree ferry, and joined the British army. The arrival of the noble earl and of the light infantry were fortunate events: A reinforcement (b.) of seven hundred Virginia militia, under the command of General Stevens, which reached Rugeley's on the morning of the 14th, prompted the American commander in chief to make an addition of one hundred continentals, three hundred militia, and two pieces of cannon, to the corps under Colonel Sumpter, who was immediately directed to interrupt the communications between Charles town, Ninety Six, and Camden. Colonel Sumpter appeared on the morning (a.) of the 15th on the western bank of the Wateree, and captured some waggons with rum and stores below Camden, several waggons loaded with sick and tired light-infantry soldiers on the road from Ninety Six, and the escorts of loyal militia and regulars attending each convoy.

(a.) In note M.

(d.) In note F.

(b.) In note M.

(a.) In note N.

LORD

LORD Cornwallis, upon his arrival with the army, adopted the most likely measures to obtain intelligence of the enemy's force and position; he likewise directed his attention to strengthen the British regiments and provincial corps, by mustering the ablest convalescents; and he was not unmindful of his cavalry. Upon application from Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, he ordered all the horses of the army, belonging both to regiments and departments, to be assembled: The best were selected for the service of the cavalry, and, upon the proprietors receiving payment, they were delivered up to the British legion. These active preparations diffused animation and vigour throughout the army. CHAP. II.

ON the 15th the principal part of the King's troops had orders to be in readiness to march: In the afternoon Earl Cornwallis desired Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to gain circumstantial intelligence, by intercepting a patrol, or carrying off some prisoners, from an American picket: About ten miles from Camden, on the road to Rugeley's mills, the advanced guard of the legion, in the evening, secured three American soldiers: The prisoners reported, that they came from Lynche's creek, where they had been left in a convalescent state, and that they were directed to join the American army, on the high road, that night, as General Gates had given orders for his troops to move from Rugeley's mills to attack the British camp next morning near Camden. The information received from these men induced Tarleton to countermarch before he was discovered by any patrol from the enemy's outpost: The three prisoners were mounted behind dragoons, and conveyed with speed to the British army: When examined by Earl Cornwallis, their story appeared credible, and confirmed all the other intelligence of the day. Orders were immediately circulated for the regiments and corps, designed for a forward move, to stand to their arms. The town, the magazine, the hospital, and the prisoners, were

CHAP. II. were committed to the care of Major M'Arthur with a small body of provincials and militia, and the weakest convalescents of the army: A part of (e.) the 63d regiment, who had been supplied with horses at Charles town, were expected to join this detachment in the night, by the Nelson's-ferry road, for the security of Camden.

At ten o'clock the King's troops moved from their ground, and formed their order of march on the main road to Rugeley's mills: Lieutenant-colonel Webster commanded the front division of the army: He composed his advanced guard of twenty legion cavalry, and as many mounted infantry, supported by four companies of light infantry, and followed by the 23d and 33d regiments of foot. The center of the line of march was formed of Lord Rawdon's division, which consisted of the volunteers of Ireland, the legion infantry, Hamilton's corps, and Colonel Bryan's refugees: The two battalions of the 71st regiment, which composed the reserve, followed the second division. Four pieces of cannon marched with the divisions; and two with the reserve: A few waggons preceded the dragoons of the legion, who composed the rear guard.

ABOUT twelve o'clock the line of march was somewhat broken, in passing Saunders' creek, five miles from Camden. A short halt remedied this inconvenience, and the royal army proceeded in a compact state with most profound silence. A little after two the advanced guard of the British charged the head of the American column: The weight of the enemy's (L.) fire made the detachment of the legion give way after their officer was wounded, and occasioned the light infantry, the 23d and 33d regiments, to form across the road. Mus-

(e.) In note F.

(L.) Note L.

ketry continued on both sides near a quarter of an hour, when the two armies, finding themselves opposed to each other, as if actuated by the same present feelings and future intentions, ceased firing. On examining the guides, and the people of the country, Earl Cornwallis discovered that the ground the British army now occupied was remarkably (f.) favourable to abide the event of a general action against the superior numbers of the enemy: The fortunate situation of two swamps, which narrowed the position, so that the English army could not be outflanked, instantly determined the British general to halt the troops upon this ground, and order them to lie down to wait the approach of day: These commands were executed as soon as a few small pickets were placed in the front: A by-way, beyond the morafs upon the left, which led to Camden, gave Earl Cornwallis for a short time some uneasiness, lest the enemy should pass his flank; but the vigilance of a small party in that quarter, and the recollection of the hazard incurred by such an attempt, soon dissipated his jealousy. Except a few occasional shots from the advanced sentries of each army, a silent expectation ushered in the morning.

At dawn the two commanders proceeded to make their respective arrangements for action. The light (g.) infantry, the 23d and 33d regiments, under Lieutenant-colonel Webster, formed the right division, in the front line, of the British army: The flank was covered by a swamp; the left extended to the road. The other division of the front line, consisting of the volunteers of Ireland, the legion infantry, Hamilton's corps, and Bryan's refugees, was commanded by Lord Rawdon: The flank was likewise protected by a morafs, and the right communicated with Webster's division. Two six-pounders, and two

Battle near  
Camden.

(f.) In note F.

(g.) In note F.



CHAP. II. three-pounders, were placed to the left of the road, under the orders of Lieutenant M'Leod. The 71st regiment, with two six-pounders, formed a second line; one battalion in the rear of Webster's, the other of Lord Rawdon's division. The legion cavalry remained in column, on account of the thickness of the woods, to the right of the main road, close to the first battalion of the 71st, with orders to act offensively against the enemy, or in defence of the British troops, as opportunity offered, or necessity required. The British, the provincials, and the militia of the royal army, officers and soldiers inclusive, amounted to something above two thousand men. (G.)

BEFORE daybreak General Gates had made the following disposition of the American army, consisting of two thousand continentals, and four thousand state troops and militia. Three regiments of (c.) the Maryland line, under Brigadier-general Gift, formed the right wing: The North-Carolina and Virginia militia, commanded by Generals Caswall and Stevens, composed the left wing and center. Colonel Porterfield's and Major Armstrong's light infantry were placed in the rear of the Virginia brigade of militia: Colonel Armand was ordered to support the left with his cavalry. The first Maryland brigade and the Delawar regiment, under Brigadier-general Smallwood, formed the second line and reserve. The principal part of the American artillery was posted to the left of their right wing of continentals: The remainder was placed in the road, under the protection of their reserve.

WHEN the day broke, General Gates, not approving of the situation of Caswall's and Stevens' brigades, was proceeding to alter their (h.) position: The circumstance being observed by the British, was re-

(G.) Note G.

(c.) In note M.

(h.) In note F.

ported

ported to Earl Cornwallis, who instantly, in person, commanded Webster's division to advance, and dispatched the same order, by an aid-de-camp, to Lord Rawdon on the left. The action became immediately general along the front, and was contested on the left and in the center with great firmness and bravery. General Gist preserved perfect order in his brigade, and, with his small arms and artillery, continued a heavy and well-directed fire upon the 33d regiment and the whole of the left division. The morning (i.) being hazy, the smoke hung over, and involved both armies in such a cloud, that it was difficult to see or estimate the destruction on either side. Notwithstanding the resistance, it was evident the British moved forwards: The light infantry and the 23d regiment being opposed only by militia, who were somewhat deranged by General Gates's intended alteration, first broke the enemy's front line, which advantage they judiciously followed, not by pursuing the fugitives, but by wheeling on the left flank of the continentals, who were abandoned by their militia. The contest was yet supported by the Maryland brigades and the Delawar regiment, when a part of the British cavalry, under Major Hanger, was ordered to charge their flank, whilst Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, with the remainder of his regiment, completed their confusion. Baron de Kalbe, on the right of the Americans, being still ignorant of the flight of their left wing and center, owing to the thickness of the air, made a vigorous charge with a regiment of continental infantry through the left division of the British, and when wounded and taken, would scarcely believe that General Gates was defeated.

AFTER this last effort of the continentals, rout and slaughter ensued in every quarter. Brigadier-general Gist moved off with about

(i.) In note F.

CHAP. II. one hundred continentals in a body, by wading through the swamp on the right of the American position, where the British cavalry could not follow; this was the only party that retreated in a compact state from the field of battle. The continentals, the state troops, and the militia, abandoned their arms, their colours, and their cannon, to seek protection in flight, or to obtain it from the clemency of the conquerors. As soon as the rout of the Americans became general, the legion dragoons advanced with great rapidity towards Rugeley's mills: On the road, General Rutherford, with many other officers and men, were made prisoners. The charge and pursuit having greatly dispersed the British, a halt was ordered on the south side of the creek, in order to collect a sufficient body to dislodge Colonel Armand and his corps, who, together with several (e.) officers, were employed in rallying the militia at that pass, and in sending off the American baggage. The quick junction of the scattered cavalry counteracted the designs of the enemy: Colonel Armand's dragoons and the militia displayed a good countenance, but were soon borne down by the rapid charge of the legion: The chase again commenced, and did not terminate till the Americans were dispersed, and fatigue overpowered the exertions of the British. In a pursuit of twenty-two miles, (k.) many prisoners of all ranks, twenty ammunition waggons, (3.) one hundred and fifty carriages, containing the baggage, stores, and camp equipage of the American army, fell into the hands of the victors.

In the action near Camden, the killed, wounded, and missing of the King's (H.) troops, amounted to three hundred and twenty-four, offi-

(e.) In note M.

(k.) In note F.

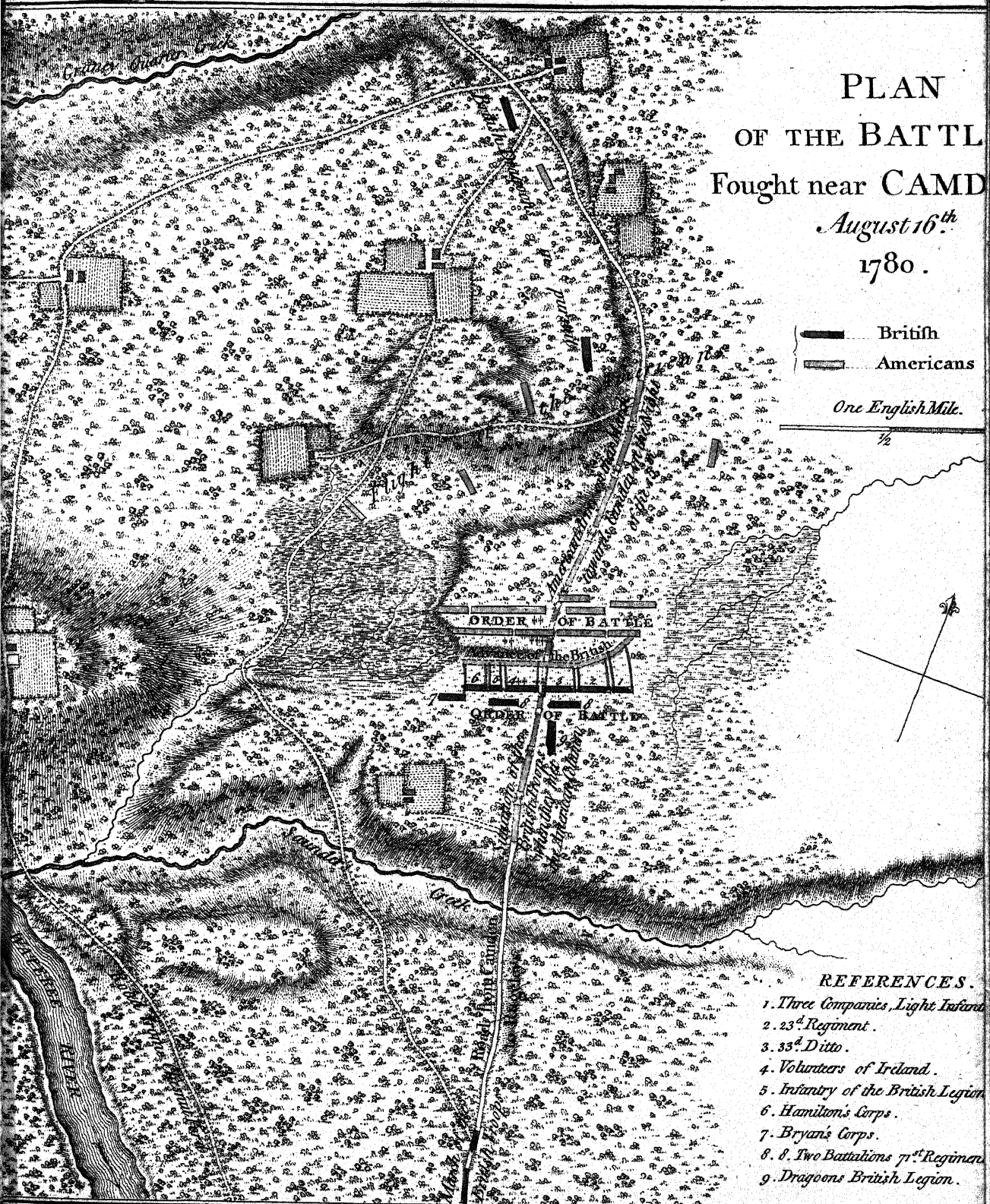
(3.) A brass two pounder was taken in one of the waggons; the carriage being damaged in the night, it was sent to the baggage.

(H.) Note H.

PLAN  
OF THE BATTLE  
Fought near CAMDEN  
*August 16<sup>th</sup>*  
1780.

— British  
— Americans

One English Mile.



REFERENCES.

1. Three Companies, Light Infantry
2. 23<sup>d</sup> Regiment.
3. 33<sup>d</sup> Ditto.
4. Volunteers of Ireland.
5. Infantry of the British Legion
6. Hamilton's Corps.
7. Bryan's Corps.
8. 8. Two Battalions 71<sup>st</sup> Regiment.
9. Dragoons British Legion.

London. Published March 1<sup>st</sup> 1787.





cers included. The destruction fell principally upon the center, owing to the well-directed fire of the continentals, and the execution done by the American artillery. The Americans lost seventy officers, two thousand men, (killed, wounded, and prisoners) eight pieces (a.) of cannon, several colours, and all their carriages and waggons, containing the stores, ammunition, and baggage, of the whole army. CHAP. II.

ON reviewing the striking circumstances preceding and during the battle, the conduct of Earl Cornwallis cannot be placed in a clearer light than by contrasting it with that of his opponent. The faults committed by the American commander, during his short campaign at the head of the southern army, were neither unimportant in themselves, nor inconsiderable in number. The first misconception imputable to General Gates, was the not breaking in upon the British communications as soon as he arrived near Lynche's creek. The move up the creek, and from thence to Camden, was practicable and easy before the King's troops were concentrated at that place; or he might, without the smallest difficulty, have occupied a strong position on Saunders' creek, five miles from Camden, before Earl Cornwallis joined the royal forces. His second error was moving an army, consisting of young corps and undisciplined militia, in the night: A manœuvre always to be avoided with troops of that description, in the neighbourhood of an enterprising enemy; and only to be hazarded, when regiments are perfectly officered, and well trained. His third mistake was in the disposition of his army before the action: If the militia had been formed into one line, in front of the continentals, they would have galled the British in the wood, when approaching to attack the main body: Or, if the militia had been kept totally sepa-

(a.) In note F.

CHAP. II. rate from the continentals, and too much confidence had not been placed in them, perhaps that confusion in part of the Maryland line, owing to the early flight of Caswall's brigade, had never happened. His last and greatest fault, was attempting to make an alteration in the disposition the instant the two armies were going to engage; which circumstance could not escape the notice of a vigilant enemy, who by a skilful and sudden attack threw the American left wing into a state of confusion, from which it never recovered. The favourable opportunities which presented themselves to Earl Cornwallis during the march and the action, were seized with judgement, and prosecuted with vigour; a glorious victory crowned the designs of the general, and the exertions of the troops.

IMMEDIATELY after the action every possible assistance was given to the wounded of both parties: The loyal militia were ordered to explore the adjacent woods, and to collect the disabled: Waggon's were afterwards assembled, in which they were placed with care, in order to follow the principal part of the British army, which fell back to its position at Camden. Lord Cornwallis, with the light and legion infantry, and the 23d regiment, moved forwards to Rugeley's mills, where he was joined in the afternoon by the legion cavalry, on their return from Hanging rock.

THOUGH the late victory was complete, and the principal army of the Americans was defeated, there yet remained in South Carolina some troops under Colonel Sumpter, well furnished with arms, and provided with cannon. The vicinity of their situation to the late scene of action, equally afforded them opportunity to give refuge to the fugitives, and to augment their own numbers. The river Wateree, which had separated General Gates and Colonel Sumpter, abounded with

with public ferrys and private boats, besides being fordable in many places. It was not to be supposed but that Sumpter had early information of the late misfortune, and that he would avail himself of his knowledge of the country to protect his dispersed friends, and to secure his own retreat. The necessity of beating or driving this corps out of the province was so evident, that Earl Cornwallis dispatched an order on the evening of the 16th to Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull, to move instantly with the New-York volunteers, Major Ferguson's detachment, and the loyal militia, in pursuit of Colonel Sumpter. The light infantry, (1.) and the British legion, who were exhausted by the fatigue of the preceding night's march, and by the action and pursuit of the day, also received orders to be in readiness to move early next morning. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton was desired to harass or strike at Colonel Sumpter, as he should find it most advisable when he approached him: For this purpose he directed his course next morning through the woods, with three hundred and fifty men and one piece of cannon, and marched up the east side of the Wateree, intending to pass it at or near Rocky mount: Upon the route he picked up about twenty scattered continentals, and in the afternoon he gained intelligence that Colonel Sumpter was retreating along the western bank of the river. Tarleton made no alteration in his plan, but continued his march to the ferry facing Rocky mount: On his arrival at dusk, he perceived the enemy's fires about a mile distant from the opposite shore: Immediate care was taken to secure the boats, and instant orders were given to the light troops to pass the night without fires. No alarm happened, and at daybreak it was apparent that the Americans had decamped: Some of the British vedettes and sentries reported at dawn that they could discover the rear guard of the enemy quitting Rocky mount.

(1.) In note F.

CHAP. II. Tarleton instantly detached Captain Campbell, of the light infantry, with a small party across the river, with instructions to hold out a white handkerchief on Rocky mount, if Colonel Sumpter continued his route up the Wateree: In the mean time, preparations were made for passing the river: Captain Campbell, on his arrival at Rocky mount, took a prisoner, and displayed the appointed signal: The boats, with the three-pounder and the infantry, immediately pushed off, and the cavalry crossed the part which was not fordable by swimming. After the passage was effected, a patrol of legion dragoons was directed to proceed a few miles to the westward, to inquire after Turnbull and Ferguson; but no intelligence was obtained.

IN the mean time, Colonel Sumpter, with his detachment, consisting of one hundred continentals, (d.) seven hundred militia, and two pieces of cannon, directed his march towards the fords near the Catawba settlement, where he intended to pass the river, in order to take a position eligible for his own numbers, and well adapted to receive the fugitives of the American army. This officer, since the period that he received reinforcement from General Gates, had been fortunate in his operations: He had taken above one hundred British soldiers, he had secured one hundred and fifty loyal American militia, and he had captured near fifty waggons loaded with arms, stores, and ammunition. Information was obtained at Rocky mount, that these trophies of success were in Sumpter's possession, and under the escort of his advanced guard: The impossibility of reaching that part of his corps, without the knowledge of the main body, determined Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to hang upon the rear, and watch an opportunity of attempting something in that quarter: He was sensible that no alarm had been

(d.) In note M.

given,

given, and that no jealousy could yet be entertained of his having CHAP. II.  
passed the Wateree. These incidents, which at first sight appeared so favourable, were nearly counterbalanced by the diligence of Sumpter's march, by the exhausted condition of the British light troops, by the intense heat of the day, and by the ground yet to be gained before an attack could take place. When Tarleton arrived at Fishing creek at twelve o'clock, he found the greatest part of his command overpowered by fatigue; the corps could no longer be moved forwards in a compact and serviceable state: He therefore determined to separate the cavalry and infantry most able to bear farther hardship, to follow the enemy, whilst the remainder, with the three pounder, took post on an advantageous piece of ground, in order to refresh themselves, and cover the retreat in case of accident.

THE number selected to continue the pursuit did not exceed one hundred legion dragoons and sixty foot soldiers: The light infantry furnished a great proportion of the latter. This detachment moved forwards with great circumspection: No intelligence, except the recent tracks upon the road, occurred for five miles. Two of the enemy's vedettes, who were concealed behind some bushes, fired upon the advanced guard as it entered a valley and killed a dragoon of the legion: A circumstance which irritated the foremost of his comrades to such a degree, that they dispatched the two Americans with their sabres before Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton could interpose, or any information be obtained respecting Colonel Sumpter. A serjeant and four men of the British legion soon afterwards approached the summit of the neighbouring eminence, where instantly halting, they crouched upon their horses, and made a signal to their commanding officer. Tarleton rode forwards to the advanced guard, and plainly discovered over the crest of the hill the front of the American camp, perfectly

Q

quiet,



CHAP. II. quiet, and not the least alarmed by the fire of the vedettes. The decision, and the preparation for the attack, were momentary. The cavalry and infantry were formed into one line, and, giving a general shout, advanced to the charge. The arms (a.) and artillery of the continentals were secured (a.) before the men could be assembled: Universal (m.) consternation immediately ensued throughout the camp; some opposition was, however, made from behind the waggon, in front of the militia. The numbers, and extensive encampment of the enemy, occasioned several conflicts before the action was decided. At length, the release of the regulars and the loyal militia, who were confined in the rear of the Americans, enabled Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to stop the slaughter, and place guards over the prisoners.

Action near  
the Catawba  
fords.

THE pursuit could not with propriety be pushed very far, the quantity of prisoners upon the spot demanding the immediate attention of great part of the light troops. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton lost no time in sending for the detachment left at Fishing creek, thinking this additional force necessary to repulse any attempt the enemy might make to rescue their friends. All the men he could assemble were likewise wanted to give assistance to the wounded, and to take charge of the prisoners; the troops who had gained this action having a just claim to some relaxation, in order to refresh themselves after their late vigorous exertions.

CAPTAIN Charles Campbell, (n.) who commanded the light infantry, was unfortunately killed near the end of the affair. His death cannot be mentioned without regret. He was a young officer, whose

(a.) In note P.

(a.) In note O.

(m.) In note F.

(n.) In note F.  
conduct

conduct and abilities afforded the most flattering prospect that he CHAP. II. would be an honour to his country. The loss, otherwise, on the side of the British was inconsiderable; fifteen non-commissioned officers and men, and twenty horses, were killed and wounded.

COLONEL Sumpter, who had taken off part of his clothes on account of the heat of the weather, in that situation, amidst the general confusion, made his escape: One hundred and fifty (o.) of his officers and foldiers were killed and wounded; ten continental officers and one hundred men, many militia officers, and upwards of two hundred privates, were made prisoners; two three pounders, two ammunition waggons, one thousand stand of arms, forty-four carriages, loaded with baggage, rum, and other stores, fell into the possession of the British.

THE position occupied by the Americans was eligible and advantageous; but the supposed distance of the King's troops occasioned a negligence in their look out, and lulled them into fatal security. Some explanation, however, received after the action, greatly diminished the mistakes which Colonel Sumpter seemed to have committed: It appeared upon inquiry that he had sent patrols to examine the road towards Rocky mount; but, fortunately for the British, they had not proceeded far enough to discover their approach: It was evident likewise that he had demanded the cause of the two shots, and that an officer just returned from the advanced sentries had reported, that the militia were firing at cattle: A common practice in the American camp. In one word, the indefatigable perseverance of the British light troops obtained them a most brilliant advantage when their hopes

(o.) In note F:

Q 2

and

CHAP. II. and strength were nearly exhausted. The wounded being dressed, and the arms and prisoners being collected, the legion and light infantry commenced their march towards Camden. The three following days finished their toilsome duty, when their services were rewarded by the approbation of Earl Cornwallis, and the acclamations of their fellow soldiers.

NOTES

## N O T E S

TO THE

## S E C O N D C H A P T E R.

---

  
( N O T E A. )

*Extract of a letter from Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated Charles town, South Carolina, June 30, 1780.*

THE submission of General Williamson (a.) at Ninety Six, whose capitulation I enclose with Captain Paris's letter, and the dispersion of a party of rebels, who had assembled at an iron work on the north-west border of the province, by a detachment of dragoons and militia from Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull, put an end to all resistance in South Carolina.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

I HAVE agreed to a proposal made by Mr. Harrison, (c.) to raise a provincial corps of five hundred men, with the rank of major, to be composed of the natives of the country between the Pedee and Wateree, and in which it is at present extremely probable that he will succeed.

I HAVE

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

I HAVE established the most satisfactory correspondence, and have seen several people of credit and undoubted fidelity from North Carolina. They all agree in the assurances of the good disposition of a considerable body of the inhabitants, and of the impossibility of sustaining a body of troops in that country till the harvest is over. This reason, the heat of the summer, and the unsettled state of South Carolina, all concurred to convince me of the necessity of postponing (b.) offensive operations on that side until the latter end of August, or beginning of September; and, in consequence, I sent emissaries to the leading persons amongst our friends, recommending, in the strongest terms, that they should attend to their harvest, prepare provisions, and remain quiet till the King's troops were ready to enter the province.

NOTWITHSTANDING these precautions, I am sorry to say, that a considerable number of loyal inhabitants of Tryon county, encouraged and headed by a Colonel (d.) Moore, rose on the 18th instant, without order or caution, and were in a few days defeated by General Rutherford with some loss.

---

(NOTE B.)

*Extract of a letter from Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated Charles town, July 14, 1780.*

SINCE my arrival at this place, I have been employed in the internal (a.) regulations of the province, and settling the militia of the lower districts, both of which are in great forwardness; and I have kept up a continual correspondence with the frontiers, and the internal



nal parts of North Carolina, where the aspect of affairs is not so peace-  
 able as when I wrote last. Major-general de Kalbe (c.) is certainly at  
 Hillsborough, with two thousand continental troops, including some  
 cavalry, and said to be preparing to advance to Salisbury: Porterfield  
 is in the neighbourhood of Salisbury, with three hundred Virginians;  
 and Rutherford, with some militia, with him: Caswall, with one  
 thousand five hundred militia, is marched from Cross creek to Deep  
 river, between Hillsborough and Salisbury; and Sumpter, with about  
 the same number of militia, is advanced as far as the Catawba settle-  
 ment. Lord Rawdon reports to me, that many of the disaffected  
 South Carolinians, from the Wacshaw, and other settlements on the  
 frontier, whom he has put on parole, have availed themselves of the  
 general release of the 20th of June, and have joined General Sumpter.

Notes to the  
 Second  
 Chapter.

ACCOUNTS from Virginia, through different channels, say, that  
 two thousand five hundred of their militia had followed De Kalbe;  
 that the assembly had voted five thousand men to be immediately  
 drafted to serve as a corps of observation, and had vested their governor  
 with absolute power during their recess. The government of North  
 Carolina is likewise making great exertions to raise troops, and perse-  
 cuting our friends in the most cruel manner; in consequence of which,  
 Colonel Bryan, although he had promised to wait for my orders, lost  
 all patience, and rose with about eight hundred (b.) men on the Yad-  
 kin; and, by a difficult and dangerous march, joined Major M'Arthur  
 on the borders of Anson county: About two thirds only of his people  
 were armed, and those I believe but indifferently.

THE effects of the exertions which the enemy are making in those  
 two provinces, will, I make no doubt, be exaggerated to us. To  
 enable me to begin first, I am using every possible dispatch in trans-

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

porting to Camden, rum, falt, regimental stores, arms, and ammunition, which, on account of the distance and excessive heat of the season, is a work of infinite labour, and requires considerable time. In the mean while, the measures I have directed Lord Rawdon to take, will, I trust, put it out of the power of the enemy to strike a blow at any of our detachments, or to make any considerable inroads into this province. I have (d.) the satisfaction to assure your excellency, that the numbers and dispositions of our militia equal my most sanguine expectations.

I HAVE agreed to the proposal of Mr. Cunninghame, in Ninety-six district, to raise a corps on the footing of Major Harrison's.

---

(NOTE C.)

*Extract of a letter from Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated Charles town, July 15, 1780.*

I HAVE just received intelligence from Lord Rawdon, that De Kalbe has certainly joined Caswall (b.) at Coxes' plantation on Deep river; his lordship in consequence has withdrawn Major M'Arthur's detachment over the Black creek, when he means to join him with two battalions, and post Lieutenant-colonel Webster on Hanging-rock creek. This will make his situation pretty compact; but I fear the enemy will make incursions into the country. I propose going down in a few days. Although you will easily imagine, that arrangements here are much wanted, and that I can be but ill spared, the other business is, however, the most pressing.

I

LORD

LORD Rawdon likewise inclosed to me a letter from Lieutenant-Notes to the  
 colonel Turnbull, (a.) at Rocky mount, on the west bank of the Second  
 Wateree, thirty miles from Camden, who reports, that having heard Chapter.  
 that some of the violent rebels, about thirty miles in his front, had  
 returned to their plantations, and were encouraging the people to join  
 them, he sent Captain Huck of the legion, with a detachment of  
 about thirty or forty of that corps, twenty mounted men of the New-  
 York volunteers, and sixty militia, to seize or drive them away.  
 Captain Huck, encouraged by meeting with no opposition, encamped  
 in an unguarded manner, was totally surprised and routed. The  
 captain was killed, and only twelve of the legion, and as many of the  
 militia, escaped.

---

(NOTE D.)

SOUTH CAROLINA.

*By the Right Honourable Charles Earl Cornwallis, Lieutenant-general of  
 His Majesty's forces, &c. &c. &c.*

PROCLAMATION.

WHEREAS it hath been represented unto me, that some li-  
 centious and evil-disposed persons have lately drove away, from the  
 plantations of several of the inhabitants in this province, the cattle  
 which were upon the same, falsely asserting, that they were properly  
 authorized so to do, to the great loss and injury of the proprietors of  
 the said cattle; in order that a stop may be put to so iniquitous and  
 unjust a practice, I do, by this my proclamation, most strictly prohibit  
 and forbid the same; and I do hereby give notice, that if any person

R

or

*It seems that he intended to put this for an explanation  
 112. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000.*

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

or persons shall hereafter offend therein, he or they shall not only be compelled to make recompence and satisfaction to the owners of cattle drove away, but shall be farther punished in a manner that an offence of so great enormity and evil example doth deserve. And the more effectually to prevent complaints and irregularities in future, I do hereby give notice, that whenever a future exigency may render it necessary to impress, for the use of His Majesty's troops, any cattle, the field officers of the militia of the district will receive the proper orders, and be authorized to cause the same to be done; and no persons whatever, except those acting under their authority, are, upon any pretence, to interfere therein; and all persons whatever are hereby most strictly required to pay a due obedience to this proclamation, as they will answer the contrary at their peril.

GIVEN under my hand, at Charles town, the eighteenth day of July, Anno Domini one thousand seven hundred and eighty, and in the twentieth year of His Majesty's reign.

(Signed) C O R N W A L L I S.

By his lordship's command,

(Signed) A. Ross, Aid-de-camp.

*From the South-Carolina Gazette, dated Charles town, July 27, 1780.*

*By the Right Honourable Charles Earl Cornwallis, Lieutenant-general of His Majesty's forces, &c.*

#### A P R O C L A M A T I O N.

WHEREAS a memorial hath been presented unto me by sundry persons, who have been heretofore concerned in carrying on the trade  
and

and merchandize of this province, setting forth, " That, in consequence of their former dealings, they are indebted unto several merchants and manufacturers in Great Britain, in large sums of money, which they are anxious to discharge as fast as possible, and that there are now in this province, over and above what will be wanted for the consumption of the army and inhabitants, several thousand barrels of rice, and also other usual articles of produce, to a very considerable amount, which, if they are permitted to be shipped to Great Britain, would be applied to that purpose, but if detained in the country, will, from their perishable nature, greatly diminish in value." And they have therefore prayed, that I would grant them my permission to export the same to Great Britain, under such regulations and restrictions as may be thought fit to be established. And whereas, upon due consideration it hath appeared to me, that it will be fit and expedient to grant the prayer of the said memorial, I do, by this my proclamation, notify and declare, that permission will from henceforth be granted to His Majesty's faithful and loyal subjects, to export to Great Britain or Ireland, for the purpose above mentioned, so much of the rice now remaining in the country, and also such other articles of produce as may be lawfully exported, and will not be wanted for the use of the army, navy, or inhabitants; subject nevertheless unto, and under such rules, regulations, and restrictions, as it hath been found necessary to substitute and superadd to those specified and directed by the proclamation issued by His Excellency Sir Henry Clinton, on the twenty-seventh day of May last. And all masters of vessels, and other persons, are hereby cautioned against receiving on board any merchandize or effects which may belong to prisoners, either upon parole or under confinement, or to any others whatsoever, except His Majesty's loyal subjects, as their vessels will thereby be rendered liable to confiscation, and themselves

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

Notes to the to other forfeitures and punishments, which will be levied and inflicted  
 Second Chapter. with the rigour so criminal a conduct doth deserve.

GIVEN under my hand, at Charles town, the twenty-second day of July, Anno Domini one thousand seven hundred and eighty, and in the twentieth year of His Majesty's reign.

(Signed) C O R N W A L L I S.

By his lordship's command,

(Signed) A. Ross, Aid-de-camp.

#### S O U T H C A R O L I N A.

*By the Right Honourable Charles Earl Cornwallis, Lieutenant-general of His Majesty's forces, &c.*

#### P R O C L A M A T I O N.

WHEREAS it hath been represented unto me, that some of the inhabitants of this province have endeavoured to dispose of great part of their property, and intended to remove with their effects out of the limits of His Majesty's government, whereby the merchants in Great Britain, and other lawful creditors, may be greatly injured and defrauded of the just debts which are due to them; and for many other reasons, the same ought not at present to be permitted: I do therefore, by this my proclamation, strictly forbid all persons whatever, from selling or disposing of, or from offering to sale or disposal, any lands, houses, or negroes, without having first obtained a license so to do from the commandant of Charles town, who in fit and reasonable cases will grant the same; and all houses, lands, or negroes, which



which shall hereafter be sold, or otherwise disposed of, without such license, will be seized and sequestered. And whereas the privileges and advantages incident to the trade and commerce which is carried on in this province, are by law limited to, and ought to be exclusively enjoyed by, His Majesty's liege and faithful subjects; yet, nevertheless, persons who are prisoners have presumed to interfere therein, and have opened shops for the purpose of carrying on trade and commerce in Charles town: All such persons are hereby cautioned against continuing such practices; and if, in future, they do not desist therefrom, their goods and merchandize will be seized and forfeited; and all auctioneers and vendue masters, or other persons, are hereby strictly enjoined from carrying on any trade, or selling, or disposing of any goods, wares, or merchandize, on account of, or for the benefit of such persons, upon pain of having their license taken from them, or being otherwise dealt with according to the nature of the case. Provided, nevertheless, that nothing is hereby to be construed to extend to prevent bakers, butchers, or any handicraft tradesman, manufacturer, or labourer, from exercising or carrying on their usual and accustomed occupations and employments. And as sundry persons may clandestinely withdraw themselves from this province, to the prejudice of His Majesty's service, and injury of their lawful creditors, I do hereby, in the most strict manner, prohibit and forbid all masters of transports, or other vessels employed in His Majesty's service, from receiving on board, or carrying away any persons whatever, either white or black, except the crew they brought with them, unless they shall receive a written passport or permission from the commandant of Charles town for that purpose. And the more effectually to prevent the same being done in the vessels employed in the trade and commerce of the country, the masters of all such vessels are hereby ordered to comply with the directions specified in two acts of the general.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

ral assembly of this province; the one entitled, "An act for the entry  
" of vessels;" and the other, "An additional act to an act for the  
" entry of vessels," upon pain of being prosecuted for the penalties  
inflicted by the said acts, in case of their neglect or refusal.

GIVEN under my hand, at Charles town, the twenty-fifth day of  
July, Anno Domini one thousand seven hundred and eighty, and in  
the twentieth year of His Majesty's reign.

(Signed) C O R N W A L L I S.

By his lordship's command,

(Signed) A. Ross, Aid-de-camp.

---

( N O T E E . )

*Extract of a letter from Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry  
Clinton, dated Charles town, August 6th, 1780.*

THE general state of things, in the two provinces of North and  
South Carolina, is not very materially altered since my letters of the  
14th and 15th of last month were written. Frequent skirmishes,  
with various success, have happened in the country between the Ca-  
tawba river and Broad river. The militia (a.) of the district about  
Tiger and Ennoree rivers was formed by us under Colonel Floyd; Co-  
lonel Neale, the rebel colonel, had fled; but Lieutenant-colonel Lisle,  
who had been paroled to the islands, exchanged, on his arrival in  
Charles town, his parole for a certificate of his being a good subject,  
returned to the country, and carried off the whole battalion to join

General Sumpter at Catawba. We have not, however, on the whole, Notes to the  
lost ground in that part of the country. Turnbull was attacked at (b.) Second  
Rocky mount by Sumpter, with about one thousand two hundred Chapter.  
men, militia and refugees, from this province, whom he repulsed  
with great loss: We had, on our part, an officer killed, and one  
wounded. Colonel Turnbull's conduct was very meritorious. The  
affair of Captain Huck turned out of less consequence than it appeared  
at first: The captain and three men of the legion were killed, and se-  
ven men of the New-York volunteers taken. On the eastern part of  
the province, Major M'Arthur, seeing the great importance of the  
post at Chiraw hills, and finding himself perfectly secure from any at-  
tack of the enemy, desired to continue there longer than it was in-  
tended he should when I had the honour of writing to you on the 15th.  
At last, however, the 71st regiment grew so exceedingly sickly, that  
he found it absolutely necessary to move, and marched on the 24th to  
the east branch of Lincoln's creek. Gates, who had taken the com-  
mand of De Kalbe's corps, was still on Deep river; and Rutherford no  
farther advanced than Rocky river, Pedee. Knowing of no enemy  
within many miles, he ventured to send about one hundred sick in  
boats down the Pedee to George town. Colonel (c.) Mills, who com-  
manded the militia of the Cheraw district, though a very good man,  
had not complied with my instructions in forming his corps; but had  
placed more faith in oaths and professions, and attended less to the for-  
mer conduct of those he admitted. The instant the militia found that  
M'Arthur had left his post, and were assured that Gates would come  
there the next day, they seized their own officers, and the hundred  
sick, and carried them all prisoners into North Carolina. Colonel  
Mills with difficulty made his escape to George town. The wheat har-  
vest in North Carolina is now over, but the weather is still excessively  
hot; and, notwithstanding our utmost exertions, a great part of the

rum,

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

rum, salt, cloathing, and necessaries for the foldiers, and the arms for the provincials, and ammunition for the troops, are not very far advanced on their way to Camden. However, if no material interruption happens, this business will be nearly accomplished in a fortnight or three weeks.

OUR assurances of attachment from our distressed friends in North Carolina are as strong as ever. And the patience and fortitude with which those unhappy people bear the most oppressive and cruel tyranny that ever was exercised over any country, deserve our greatest admiration.

---

(NOTE F.)

*The London Gazette Extraordinary.*

Whitehall, Oct. 9, 1780.

*This morning Captain Ross, aid-de-camp to Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, arrived in town from South Carolina, with a letter from his lordship to Lord George Germain, one of His Majesty's principal secretaries of state, of which the following is a copy.*

Camden, Aug. 21, 1780.

MY LORD,

IT is with great pleasure that I communicate to your lordship an account of a complete victory obtained on the 16th instant, by His Majesty's troops under my command, over the rebel southern army, commanded by General Gates.

IN

*Don of the Miller of Abbot Dunsin*

IN my dispatch, No. 1, I had the honour to inform your lordship, <sup>Notes to the Second Chapter.</sup> that while at Charles town, I was regularly acquainted, by Lord Rawdon, with every material (a.) incident or movement made by the enemy, or by the troops under his lordship's command.

ON the 9th instant two expresses arrived with an account that General Gates was advancing towards Lynche's creek with his whole army, supposed to amount to six thousand men, exclusive of a detachment of one thousand men under General Sumpter, who, after having in vain attempted to force the posts at Rocky mount and Hanging rock, was believed to be at that time trying to get round the left of our position, to cut off our communication with the Congarees and Charles town; that the disaffected country between the Pedee and Black (c.) river had actually revolted; and that Lord Rawdon was contracting his posts, and preparing to assemble his force at Camden.

IN consequence of this information, after finishing some important (b.) points of business at Charles town, I set out on the evening of the 10th, and arrived at Camden on the night between the 13th (d.) and 14th, and there found Lord Rawdon with all our force, except Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull's small detachment, which fell back from Rocky mount to Major Ferguson's posts of the militia of Ninety Six, on Little river.

I HAD now my option to make, either to retire or attempt the enemy; for the position at Camden was a bad one to be attacked in, and by General Sumpter's advancing down the Wateree, my supplies must have failed me in a few days.

S

I SAW

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

I SAW no difficulty in making good my retreat to Charles town with the troops that were able to march ; but in taking that resolution, I must have not only left near eight hundred sick and a great quantity of stores at this place, but I clearly saw the loss of the whole province, except Charles town, and all of Georgia, except Savannah, as immediate consequences, besides forfeiting all pretensions to future confidence from our friends in this part of America.

ON the other hand, there was no doubt of the rebel army being well appointed, and of its number being upwards of five thousand men, exclusive of General Sumpter's detachment, and a corps of Virginia militia, of twelve or fifteen hundred men, either actually joined, or expected to join the main body every hour ; and my own corps, which never was numerous, was now reduced, by sickness and other casualties, to about fourteen hundred fighting men, of regulars and provincials, with four or five hundred militia and North-Carolina refugees.

HOWEVER, the greatest part of the troops that I had being perfectly good, and having left Charles town sufficiently garrisoned and provided for a siege, and seeing little to lose by a defeat, and much to gain by a victory, I resolved to take the first good opportunity to attack the rebel army.

ACCORDINGLY, I took great pains to procure good information of their movements and position ; and I learned that they had encamped, after marching from Hanging rock, at Colonel Rugeley's, about twelve miles from hence, on the afternoon of the 14th.



AFTER consulting some intelligent people, well acquainted with the ground, I determined to march at ten o'clock on the night of the 15th, and to attack at daybreak, pointing my principal force against their continentals, who, from good intelligence, I knew to be badly posted, close to Colonel Rugeley's house. Late in the evening I received information, that the Virginians had joined that day; however, that having been expected, I did not alter my plan, but marched at the hour appointed, leaving the defence of Camden to some provincials, militia, and convalescents, and a detachment of the (e.) 63d regiment, which by being mounted on horses which they had pressed on the road, it was hoped would arrive in the course of the night.

I HAD proceeded nine miles, when about half an hour past two in the morning my advanced guard fell in with the enemy. By the weight of the fire I was convinced they were in considerable force; and was soon assured by some deserters and prisoners, that it was the whole rebel army on its march to attack us at Camden. I immediately halted and formed, and the enemy doing the same, the firing soon ceased. Confiding in the disciplined courage of His Majesty's troops, and well apprised by several intelligent inhabitants, that the ground (f.) on which both armies stood, being narrowed by swamps on the right and left, was extremely favourable for my numbers, I did not chuse to hazard the great stake for which I was going to fight, to the uncertainty and confusion to which an action in the dark is so particularly liable; but having taken measures that the enemy should not have in their power to avoid an engagement on that ground, I resolved to defer the attack till day: At the dawn I made my last disposition, and formed the troops in the following order: The division on the right, consisting of a small corps of light infantry, the 23d and 33d regiments, under the command of Lieutenant-colonel Web-

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

ster; the division of the left, consisting of the volunteers of Ireland, infantry of the legion, and part of Lieutenant-colonel Hamilton's North-Carolina regiment, under the command of Lord Rawdon, with two six and two three-pounders, which were commanded by Lieutenant M'Leod. The 71st regiment, with two six-pounders, was formed as a reserve, one battalion in the rear of the division of the right, the other of that of the left, and the cavalry of the legion in the rear, and the country being woody, close to the 71st regiment, with orders to seize any opportunity that might offer to break the enemy's line, and to be ready to protect our own, in case any corps should meet with a check.

THIS disposition was just made when I perceived that the enemy, having likewise persisted in their resolution to fight, were formed in two lines opposite and near to us; and observing a movement (h.) in their left, which I supposed to be with an intention to make some alteration in their order, I directed Lieutenant-colonel Webster to begin the attack, which was done with great vigour, and in a few minutes the action was general along the whole front. It was at this time a dead calm, with a little haziness in the air, which preventing the smoke from rising, occasioned so thick a darkness, that it was difficult to see the effect of a very heavy and well-supported fire on both sides. Our line continued to advance in good order, and with the cool intrepidity of experienced British soldiers, keeping up a constant fire, or making use of bayonets, as opportunities offered, and, after an obstinate resistance during three quarters of an hour, threw the enemy into total confusion, and forced them to give way in all quarters. At this instant I ordered the cavalry to complete the rout, which was performed with their usual promptitude and gallantry; and after doing great execution on the field of battle, they continued the pursuit to  
Hanging

Hanging rock, twenty-two miles from the place where the action happened, during which, many of the enemy were slain, and a number of prisoners, near one hundred and fifty waggons, (in one of which was a brass cannon, the carriage of which had been damaged in the skirmish of the night) a considerable quantity of military stores, and all the baggage and camp equipage of the rebel army, fell into our hands.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

THE loss of the enemy was very considerable ; a number of colours, and seven pieces of brass cannon, (being all their artillery that were in the action) with all their ammunition waggons, were taken ; between eight and nine hundred were killed, among that number Brigadier-general Gregory, and about one thousand prisoners, many of whom wounded, of which number were Major-general Baron de Kalbe, since dead, and Brigadier-general Rutherford.

I HAVE the honour to inclose a return of the killed and wounded on our side. The loss of so many brave men is much to be lamented ; but the number is moderate in proportion to so great an advantage.

THE behaviour of His Majesty's troops in general was beyond all praise ; it did honour to themselves and to their country. I was particularly indebted to Colonel Lord Rawdon, and to Lieutenant-colonel Webster, for the distinguished courage and ability with which they conducted their respective divisions ; and the capacity and vigour of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, at the head of the cavalry, deserve my highest commendations. Lieutenant M'Leod exerted himself greatly in the conduct of our artillery. My aid-de-camp, Captain Ross, and Lieutenant Haldane, of the engineers, who acted in that capacity, rendered me most essential service ; and the public officers, major of brigade England, who acted as deputy adjutant general, and the majors

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

of brigade Manley and Doyle, shewed the most active and zealous attention to their duty. Governor Martin became again a military man, and behaved with the spirit of a young volunteer.

THE fatigue of the troops rendered them incapable of farther exertion on the day of action; but as I saw the importance of destroying or dispersing, if possible, the corps under General Sumpter, as it might prove a foundation for assembling the routed army, on the morning of the 17th I detached Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton with the legion cavalry and infantry, and the corps of light infantry, making in all about three hundred and fifty men, with orders to attack him wherever he could find him; and at the same time I sent orders to Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull and Major Ferguson, at that time on Little river, to put their corps in motion immediately, and on their side pursue and endeavour to attack General Sumpter. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton executed this service with his usual activity and military address. He procured good information of Sumpter's movements, and, by forced and concealed marches, came up with and surprised (m.) him in the middle of the day on the 18th, near the Catawba fords. He totally destroyed or dispersed his detachment, consisting then of seven hundred men, killing one (o.) hundred and fifty on the spot, and taking two pieces of brass cannon and three hundred prisoners, and forty-four waggons. He likewise retook one hundred of our men, who had fallen into their hands partly at the action at Hanging rock, and partly in escorting some waggons from Congarees to Camden; and he released one hundred and fifty of our militiamen, or friendly country people, who had been seized by the rebels. Captain Campbell, (n.) who commanded the light infantry, a very promising officer, was unfortunately killed in the affair. Our loss otherwise was trifling. This action was too brilliant to need any comment of mine, and will,

I have

I have no doubt, highly recommend Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to His Majesty's favour. The rebel forces being at present dispersed, the internal commotions and insurrections in the province will now subside. But I shall give directions to inflict exemplary punishment on some of the most guilty, in hopes to deter others in future from sporting with allegiance and oaths, and with the lenity and generosity of the British government.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

ON the morning of the 17th I dispatched proper people into North Carolina, with directions to our friends there to take arms and assemble immediately, and to seize the most violent people, and all military stores and magazines belonging to the rebels, and to intercept all stragglers from the routed army; and I have promised to march without loss of time to their support. Some necessary supplies for the army are now on their way from Charles town, and I hope that their arrival will enable me to move in a few days.

My aid-de-camp, Captain Ross, will have the honour of delivering this dispatch to your lordship, and will be able to give you the fullest account of the state of the army and the country. He is a very deserving officer, and I take the liberty of recommending him to your lordship's favour and patronage.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

NOTE

## (NOTE G.)

*Field return of the troops under the command of Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, on the night of the 15th of August, 1780.*

ROYAL artillery. 2 lieutenants, 2 serjeants, 15 rank and file.

Light companies. 2 captains, 3 lieutenants, 1 ensign, 1 adjutant, 11 serjeants, 1 drummer, 129 rank and file.

23d regiment. 3 captains, 6 lieutenants, 1 adjutant, 13 serjeants, 8 drummers, 261 rank and file.

33d regiment. 1 lieutenant colonel, 5 captains, 4 lieutenants, 2 ensigns, 1 adjutant, 1 surgeon, 1 mate, 13 serjeants, 1 drummer, 209 rank and file.

1st battalion, 71st regiment. 2 captains, 4 lieutenants, 1 ensign, 1 adjutant, 1 quarter master, 1 mate, 14 serjeants, 6 drummers, 114 rank and file.

2d battalion, ditto. 1 captain, 3 lieutenants, 3 ensigns, 9 serjeants, 94 rank and file.

Volunteers of Ireland. 1 colonel, 4 captains, 4 lieutenants, 6 ensigns, 1 mate, 23 serjeants, 11 drummers, 253 rank and file.

British legion cavalry. 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 2 captains, 3 lieutenants, 2 cornets, 1 adjutant, 1 surgeon, 12 serjeants, 2 trumpeters, 157 rank and file.

British legion infantry. 4 captains, 4 lieutenants, 9 serjeants, 3 drummers, 106 rank and file.

Royal North-Carolina regiment. 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 5 captains, 6 lieutenants, 4 ensigns, 1 adjutant, 1 quarter master, 1 surgeon, 16 serjeants, 8 drummers, 223 rank and file.

Pioneers. 2 lieutenants, 3 serjeants, 23 rank and file.

Volunteers



Volunteer militia. 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 3 captains, 5 lieutenants, 4 ensigns, 8 serjeants, 300 rank and file.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

Total. 1 colonel, 4 lieutenant colonels, 3 majors, 31 captains, 46 lieutenants, 23 ensigns, 6 adjutants, 2 quarter masters, 3 surgeons, 3 mates, 133 serjeants, 40 drummers, 1944 rank and file.

(Signed) R. ENGLAND,  
Acting deputy adjutant general.

(NOTE H.)

*Return of the killed, wounded, and missing, of the troops under the command of Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, in the battle fought near Camden, South Carolina, on the 16th of August, 1780.*

ROYAL artillery. 1 lieutenant, 2 rank and file, wounded.

Light infantry. 1 serjeant, 6 rank and file, killed; 1 ensign, 5 rank and file, wounded.

23d regiment. 6 rank and file killed; 1 captain, 17 rank and file, wounded.

33d regiment. 1 captain, 17 rank and file, killed; 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 captain, 2 lieutenants, 1 ensign, 4 serjeants, 72 rank and file, wounded; 1 rank and file missing.

1st battalion, 71st. 1 lieutenant, 4 rank and file, killed; 1 captain, 1 lieutenant, 1 serjeant, 22 rank and file, wounded.

2d battalion, ditto. 1 serjeant, 4 rank and file, killed; 1 serjeant, 8 rank and file, wounded.

T

Volun-

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

Volunteers of Ireland. 17 rank and file killed; 1 lieutenant, 2 ensigns, 2 serjeants, 1 drummer, 64 rank and file, wounded.

Legion cavalry. 4 rank and file killed; 1 serjeant, 3 rank and file wounded; 2 rank and file missing.

Legion infantry. 1 rank and file killed; 1 lieutenant, 1 serjeant, 10 rank and file, wounded; 2 serjeants, 3 rank and file, missing.

Royal North-Carolina regiment. 3 rank and file killed; 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 lieutenant, 1 ensign, 3 serjeants, 8 rank and file, wounded.

Pioneers. 2 rank and file killed; 1 lieutenant wounded.

Volunteer militia. 2 rank and file wounded; 3 rank and file missing.

Total. 1 captain, 1 lieutenant, 2 serjeants, 64 rank and file, killed; 2 lieutenant colonels, 3 captains, 8 lieutenants, 5 ensigns, 13 serjeants, 1 drummer, 213 rank and file, wounded; 2 serjeants, 9 rank and file, missing.

#### OFFICERS KILLED AND WOUNDED.

Royal artillery. Lieutenant Marquois wounded.

Light companies. Ensign Bowen wounded.

23d regiment. Captain James Drury wounded.

33d regiment. Captain Allen Malcolm killed; Lieutenant-colonel Webster, Captain Richard Cotton, Lieutenants George Wynyard, James L. Harvy, Ensign John-Wheeler Collington, wounded.

1st battalion, 71st. Lieutenant Archibald Campbell killed; Captain Hugh Campbell, Lieutenant John Grant, wounded.

Volunteers of Ireland. Lieutenant Gillispie, Ensigns Whatley and Thompson, wounded.

Legion infantry. Lieutenant Donovan wounded.

North-

North-Carolina regiment. Lieutenant-colonel Hamilton, Lieute-  
nant M'Alpine, Ensign Shaw, wounded.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

Pioneers. Lieutenant Macdonald wounded.

(Signed)

CORNWALLIS

Lieutenant General.

(NOTE I.)

*Return of ordnance and military stores taken by the army under the command of Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, at the battle fought near Camden, the 16th of August, 1780.*

BRASS FIELD PIECES.

Six pounders, 4; three pounders, 2; two pounders, 2. Total, 8.

*(Abandoned by the enemy, and brought from their camp, Lynche's creek.*

IRON FIELD PIÉCES.

Three pounder, 1; two pounder, 1; fwivels, 3. Total, 5.)

Ammunition waggons, covered, 22; travelling forges, 2; fixed ammunition for six pounders, 160; ditto for three pounders, 520; stands of arms, 2000; musquet cartridges, 80,000.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

*Taken by Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton at the defeat of General Sumpter,  
August 18, 1780.*

### FIELD PIECES.

Three pounders, 2.

(Signed)

J. MACLEOD,  
Lieutenant, commanding officer  
of artillery.

*Return of killed and wounded of the troops under the command of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, in the action near Catawba fords, on the 18th of August, 1780.*

LIGHT infantry. 1 captain, 5 rank and file, killed.

Legion cavalry. 1 serjeant, 2 rank and file, killed; 6 rank and file wounded.

(Signed)

R. ENGLAND,  
Acting deputy adjutant general.

---

### (NOTE . K. )

*Copy of a proclamation issued by General Gates at Pedee, the  
4th of August 1780.*

*By Horatio Gates, Esq. major general and commander in chief of the army  
of the United States in the southern department of America, &c. &c. &c..*

### A PROCLAMATION.

THE patriotic exertions of the virtuous citizens of the United States having enabled me, under the protection of Divine Providence,  
to

to vindicate the rights of America in this state, and by the approach of a numerous, well-appointed, and formidable army, to compel our late triumphant and insulting foes to retreat from their most advantageous posts with precipitation and dismay, I have judged it most expedient, at this period of my progress, to give assurances of forgiveness and perfect security to such of the unfortunate citizens of this state as have been induced, by the horror of sanguinary punishments, the menace of confiscation, and all the arbitrary measures of military domination, apparently to acquiesce under the British government, and to make a forced declaration of allegiance and support to a tyranny, which the indignant souls of citizens, resolved on freedom, inwardly revolted at, with horror and detestation.

AND in order to afford an opportunity to real friends of America, to testify the affection and attachment to the cause of liberty, an invitation is held out to them to assert that rank among the free and independent citizens of America, in which their former exertions and zeal had deservedly placed them, and to join heartily, when called upon, in rescuing themselves and their country from an opposition of a government imposed on them by the ruffian hand of conquest. Nevertheless, I cannot at present resolve to extend these offers of pardon and security to such as in the hour of devastation have exercised acts of barbarity and depredation on the persons and property of their fellow citizens; nor to such, as being apprized of the security afforded to them by the army under my command, shall be so lost to a sense of honour, and the duty they owe to their country, as hereafter to give countenance and support to that enemy, who, but for the disaffection of many of the apostate sons of America, had long ere this been driven from the continent.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

THE inhabitants of this state may rely on the assurance that an army composed of their brethren and fellow citizens cannot be brought among them with the hostile vices of plunder and depredation. Such triumphs, under the colour of protection and support, are left to grace the British arms alone; but they may rest satisfied, that the genuine motive which has given energy to the present exertions, is the hope of rescuing them from the iron rod of oppression, and restoring to them those blessings of freedom and independence which it is the duty and interest of the citizens of these United States, jointly and reciprocally, to support and confirm.

GIVEN at our head quarters, on the river Pedee, this fourth day of August, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty, and in the fifth year of our independence.

HORATIO GATES.

By the general's command,

CHRIST. RICHMOND, Sec.

---

(NOTE L.)

*Copy of General Gates's orders.*

AFTER ORDERS.

Camp, at Rugeley's, 15th of August, 1780.

THE sick, the extra artillery stores, the heavy baggage, and such quarter-master's stores as are not immediately wanted, to march this evening under a guard to Wacfaws: To this order the general requests



quests the brigadier generals to see that those under their command pay the most exact and scrupulous obedience.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Edmonds, with the remaining guns of the park, will take post, and march with the Virginia brigade, under General Stevens; he will direct, as any deficiency happens in the artillery affixed to the other brigades, to supply it immediately; his military staffs, and proportion of his officers, with forty of his men, are to attend him, and wait his orders.

THE troops will be ready to march precisely at ten o'clock, in the following order, viz. Colonel Armand's advance, cavalry commanded by Colonel Armand: Colonel Porterfield's light infantry on the right flank of Colonel Armand, in Indian file, two hundred yards from the road; Major Armstrong's light infantry in the same order as Colonel Porterfield's, on the left flank of the legion; advanced guard of foot, composed of the advanced pickets, first brigade of Maryland, second brigade of Maryland, division of North Carolina, Virginia division; rear-guard volunteers, cavalry on the right and left of the baggage equally divided. In this order the troops will proceed this night. In case of an attack by the enemy's cavalry in front, the light infantry on each flank will instantly march up, and give, and continue the most galling fire upon the enemy's horse; this will enable Colonel Armand not only to support the enemy's charge, but finally rout them: The colonel will therefore consider the orders to stand the attack of the enemy's cavalry, be their numbers what they may, as positive: General Stevens will immediately order one captain, two lieutenants, one ensign, three serjeants, one drum, and sixty rank and file, to join Colonel Porterfield's infantry. These men are to be taken from

Notes to the from the most experienced woodsmen, and men every way fittest for  
Second the service.  
Chapter.

THE general will likewise complete Armstrong's light infantry to their original number; those must be immediately marched to the advanced post of the army. The troops will preserve the profoundest silence on the march; and any soldier who offers to fire, without the command of his officer, must be instantly put to death.

WHEN the ground will admit of it, and the near approach of the enemy renders it necessary, the army will, when ordered, march in columns; the artillery at the head of their respective brigades, and the baggage in the rear. The guard of the heavy baggage will be composed of the remaining officers and soldiers of the artillery. One captain, two subalterns, four serjeants, four drums, and sixty rank and file, and no person whatever is to presume to send any other soldier upon that service.

ALL batmen, waiters, &c. who are soldiers taken from the line, are forthwith to join their respective regiments, and act with their masters, while they are upon that duty.

The tents of the whole army to be struck at Tattoo.

(NOTE

## (NOTE M.)

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

*Extract of a letter from General Gates to the President of Congress, dated  
Hillsborough, Aug. 20, 1780.*

S I R,

IN the deepest distress and anxiety of mind, I am obliged to acquaint your excellency with the defeat of the troops under my command. I arrived with the Maryland line, the artillery, and the North-Carolina militia, on the (a.) 13th instant at Rugeley's, thirteen miles from Camden; took post there, and was the next (b.) day joined by General Stevens, with seven hundred militia from Virginia. Colonel Sumpter, who was at the Wacflaws with four hundred South-Carolina militia, had the Sunday before killed and taken near three hundred of the enemy, who were posted at Hanging rock. This, and other strokes upon the enemy's advanced posts, occasioned their calling in all the outposts to Camden. The 15th, at daylight, I reinforced Colonel Sumpter with three hundred (d.) North-Carolina militia, one hundred of the Maryland line, and two three-pounders from the artillery, having previously ordered him down to the Wacflaws, and directed, as soon as the reinforcements joined him, that he should proceed down the Wateree, opposite Camden, intercept any stores coming to the enemy, and particularly the troops from Ninety Six, who were likewise withdrawn from that post. This was well executed by Colonel Sumpter, as his letter inclosed will shew.

HAVING communicated my plan to the general officers in the afternoon of the 15th, it was resolved to march at ten at night, to take post in a very advantageous situation, with a deep creek in front,

U

seven

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

seven miles from Camden; the heavy baggage, &c. being ordered to march immediately by the Wacław road. At ten the army began to march in the following order: Colonel Armand's legion in front, supported on both flanks by Colonel Porterfield's regiment, and the light infantry of the militia; the advanced guard of infantry, the Maryland line, with their artillery, in front of the brigades, the North-Carolina militia, the Virginia militia, the artillery, &c. and the rear guard. Having marched about five miles, the legion was charged by the enemy's cavalry, and well supported on the flanks, as they were ordered, by Colonel Porterfield, who beat back the enemy's horse, and was himself unfortunately wounded; but the enemy's infantry advancing with a heavy fire, the troops in front gave way to the first Maryland brigade, and a confusion ensued, which took some time to regulate. At length the army was ranged in line of battle, in the following order: General Gift's brigade (c.) upon the right, with his right close to a swamp, the North-Carolina militia in the center, and the Virginia militia, with the light infantry and Porterfield's corps, on the left; the artillery divided to the brigades; and the first Maryland brigade as a corps de reserve, and to cover the cannon in the road, at a proper distance in the rear. Colonel Armand's corps were ordered to the left, to support the left flank, and oppose the enemy's cavalry. At daylight the enemy attacked and drove in our light party in front, when I ordered the left to advance and attack the enemy; but to my astonishment, the left wing and North-Carolina militia gave way. General Caswall and myself, assisted by a number of officers, did all in our power to rally the broken troops, but to no purpose, for the enemy coming round the left flank of the Maryland division, completed the rout of the whole militia, who left the continentals to oppose the enemy's whole force. I endeavoured, with General Caswall, to rally the militia at some distance, on an advantageous

piece of ground, but the enemy's cavalry continuing to harass their rear, they ran like a torrent, and bore all before them. Hoping yet, that a few miles in the rear they might recover from their panic, and again be brought into order, I continued my endeavour, but this likewise proved in vain.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

THE militia having taken the woods in all directions, I concluded, with General Caswall, to retire towards Charlotte. I got here late in the night ; but reflecting there was no prospect of collecting a force at that place adequate to the defence of the country, I proceeded with all possible dispatch hither, to endeavour to fall upon some plan of defence, in conjunction with the legislative body of the state. I shall immediately dispatch a flag to Lord Cornwallis, to know the situation of our wounded, and the number and condition of the prisoners in his hands.

---

( N O T E N . )

*Copy of a letter from Colonel Sumpter to General Gates, dated Wateree ferry,  
August 15th, 1780.*

DEAR GENERAL, \*

I HAVE just time to inform you, that early this morning I took possession of all the passways over the Wateree river, from Elkins' ford to Mr. Whitear's ferry, five miles below Camden. The enemy had guards at many different places upon the river, all of which were evacuated last night or this morning, and the guards ordered into Camden, except those at Wateree ferry, which was continued on both sides of the river, of which the guard upon the west side was

U 2

surprised

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

surprised by a party of my men, who killed seven, and took about thirty prisoners, among which was Colonel Cary, the commander, together with thirty-eight waggons, loaded with corn, rum, &c. also a number of horses: The boats are all upon the opposite side of the river; the ground upon this side is very bad; the enemy keep up a constant fire, but I have received no damage yet. I intend to keep possession if I can, until I am honoured with your excellency's farther command. I should not have been so precipitate in my movements, but foresaw the excessive disadvantage that would result from their having the communication open, whereby they were constantly receiving both men and provisions.

THE number of troops, regulars I mean, do not exceed two thousand, and not as many as one thousand of the militia, who are generally sickly, and much dispirited. There is a reinforcement said to be on the road from town, which will arrive in two days, the number about five hundred..

As soon as possible, will give you an account of what is passing.

I am, dear general,

With the greatest respect,

Your excellency's most obedient,

Humble servant,

THOMAS SUMPTER.

His Excellency General Gates.

P. S. I HAVE the pleasure to inform your excellency, that I have this instant made about seventy prisoners, all British, six waggons, baggage, &c. just from Ninety Six; many of the prisoners are sick.

(NOTE



## (NOTE O.)

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

*Extract of a letter from Governor Nash to the Delegates of North Carolina,  
dated Hillsborough, Aug. 23, 1782.*

SINCE our late defeat near Camden, I delayed writing till I could give you some certain account of that unhappy affair. The militia, except one North-Carolina regiment, commanded on the occasion by Colonel Dixon, of the regulars, gave way on the first fire, and fled with the utmost precipitation. The regulars and the regiment just mentioned, bravely stood, and pushed bayonets to the last. By the desertion of the militia, the enemy were able to turn the left of the standing troops, and to bend their whole force against them. The conflict was obstinate and bloody, and lasted for fifteen minutes. After our brave troops had retreated from the ground, they were fiercely charged by a party of British horse, whom they repulsed, and, to their immortal honour, made good their retreat. General Caswall has sent in a flag, and a surgeon to attend the wounded. As yet we have no particular account of the fate of the missing, except a few principal officers; among these is the Baron de Kalbe, said to be mortally wounded. Generals Gift, Smallwood, Stevens, Rutherford, Butler, and Gregory, are safe; so is Colonel Gunby, who was said to be killed. To add to our misfortunes, Colonel Sumpter, who the day before the action had captured a party of the British, with forty waggons, was the day after the action overtaken and surprised near Hanging rock, by a party of the British horse. They came on him so unprepared, as to oblige him and his men (a.) to fly to the woods, leaving their prisoners, waggons, and even their arms behind them.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

General Stevens writes to General Gates, that he has collected between seven and eight hundred of Virginia militia and state troops. General Caswall made a stand at Charlotte, near the boundary line, and called in upwards of one thousand fresh men. These he added to Colonel Sumpter's party of about seven hundred, and gave him the command of the whole, whilst he came here. I have ordered out three regiments from this district, and mean to put them under the command of General Sumner, and the officers of the three regular regiments of this state, so that I hope in a few days we shall be able to assume a tolerable good countenance.

---

(NOTE P.)

*Extract of a letter from General Gates to the President of Congress, dated Hillsborough, Aug. 30, 1780.*

S I R,

I HAVE the honour to enclose to your excellency, for the perusal of Congress, my letter of this date to General Washington.

*Extract from the enclosed letter to General Washington, dated Hillsborough, Aug. 30, 1780.*

SINCE my public letter to Congress, I have been able to collect authentic returns of the killed, wounded, and missing of the officers of the American line, Delaware regiment, artillerists, and those of the  
legion

legion under Colonel Armand. They are enclosed. The militia broke so early in the day, and scattered in so many directions upon their retreat, that very few have fallen into the hands of the enemy. By the firmness and bravery of the continental troops, the victory is far from being bloodless on the part of the foe; they have upwards of five hundred men, with officers in proportion, killed and wounded. Lord Cornwallis remained with his army at Camden, when I received the last accounts from thence. Two days after the action of the 16th, fortune seemed determined to continue to distress us; for Colonel Sumpter, having marched near forty miles up the river Wateree, halted with the waggons and prisoners on the 15th. By some indiscretion, the men were surprised, cut off from their arms, (a.) the whole routed, and the waggons and prisoners retaken. Colonel Sumpter, since his surprise and defeat up the west side of the Wateree, has reinstated and increased his corps to upwards of one thousand men. I have directed him to continue to harass the enemy upon that side: Lord Cornwallis will, therefore, be cautious how he makes any considerable movement to the eastward, while this corps remains in force upon his left flank, and the main army is in a manner cantoned in his front. Anxious for the public good, I shall continued my unwearied endeavours to stop the progress of the enemy, to reinstate our affairs, to recommence an offensive war, and recover our losses in these southern states.

*List of the continental officers killed, captivated, wounded, and missing, in the actions of the 16th and 18th of August, 1780.*

KILLED. The honourable Major-general the Baron de Kalbe; Captain Williams, 6th Maryland regiment; Captain Duvall, 2d ditto; Lieutenant

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter. Lieutenant Donovan, 6th ditto; Lieutenant and Adjutant Coleman, artillery.

WOUNDED. Captain Somerwell, 6th Maryland regiment; Gibson, 5th ditto; Roun, Virginia-state artillery; Lieutenant Duvall, 3d Maryland regiment; Sears, ditto; Ensign Fickle, 7th.

PRISONERS. Lieutenant-colonel Woolford, 5th Maryland regiment, wounded; Lieutenant-colonel Vaughan, Delaware; Lieutenant-colonel Porterfield, Virginia state, wounded; Lieutenant-colonel Du Bufon, A. D. C. Gerald Kalbe, ditto. Majors, Winder, 1st Maryland regiment; Penton, Delaware regiment; Pinkney, A. D. C. General Gates, wounded. Captains, Brice, 3d Maryland regiment; Hoops, 5th ditto; Lynch, 5th; Hamilton, 5th; Hardman, 2d, wounded; Smith, 3d, ditto; Dorset, artillery, ditto. Lieutenant Brune, legion, ditto; Rhoads, Delaware regiment; Lamout, ditto; Captain-lieutenant Waters, artillery; Lieutenant Shoemaker, 4th Maryland regiment, wounded; Hanson, 4th ditto, ditto; Norris, 6th ditto, ditto; Wallace, artillery, foot legion; Moreley, artillery; Doll, Delaware regiment; Skillington, ditto; Lieutenant and Adjutant Penvie, ditto. Ensigns, Burgis, 4th Maryland regiment; Roach, Delaware regiment. Volunteers, Nelson, 6th Maryland regiment, wounded; Rutledge, 4th ditto.

MISSING. Captains, Morris, 7th Maryland regiment, wounded; Gaffay, 2d ditto. Lieutenant Gaffaway, 2d ditto; Captain Meredith, artillery; Captain-lieutenant Blair, ditto.

SIR,

THE above is the most accurate return at present. Those who have received slight contusions, which do not hinder their doing their duty, are not included. Notes to the  
Second  
Chapter.

Your most obedient, humble servant,

O. H. WILLIAMS,

Deputy adjutant general.

Hillsborough, August 29, 1780.

N. B. SEVEN hundred non-commissioned officers and soldiers of the Maryland division have rejoined the army. An exact return thereof shall be sent by the next conveyance.

HORATIO GATES.

Published by order of Congress.

CHARLES THOMPSON, Sec.

X

CHAPTER





## CHAPTER III.

*State of the royal army. — State of South Carolina. — The King's troops move forwards; — and halt at Charlotte town. — Lieutenant-colonel Browne attacked by Colonel Clarke, — and relieved by Lieutenant-colonel Cruger. — Ferguson defeated. — The British army falls back. — Passes the Broad river, — and takes post at Wynnesborough. — Marion overruns the lower districts. — Ineffectual attempt upon Sumpter. — Sumpter moves towards Ninety Six. — Action at Blackstock's. — State of the American army. — Major-general Greene takes the command. — Preparations for a second invasion of North Carolina. — Major-general Leslie arrives at Charles town with a reinforcement.*

THE immediate advance of the King's troops into North Carolina CHAP. III. would undoubtedly, at this critical period, have been productive of various and important advantages. The appearance of the royal forces, after such brilliant success, would have animated their friends, discouraged their enemies, and continued the confusion and dispersion of the American army. But however useful and beneficial such an expedition might have proved, many material requisites and necessary arrangements were not in convenient state or sufficient forwardness to warrant the undertaking. The number of sick in the hospital, the late addition of the wounded, the want of troops, and the deficiency of stores upon the frontier, operated with the present heat of the climate, and

State of the  
royal army.

CHAP. III. the scarcity of provisions in North Carolina. The convoys with supplies were again pressed forward, and a reinforcement of men was ordered from Charles town. In the mean time, directions (A.) were dispatched to the well affected, to lose no time in assembling for the purposes of stopping the fugitives, and securing the continental stores, to the southward of the Roanoke. Assurances of an early movement of the royal army accompanied these instructions: And, in order to keep alive the British interest in North Carolina, Major Ferguson's corps of rangers, and about one thousand loyal militia, were advanced to the western borders, to hold communication with the inhabitants of Tryon county till the King's troops under Earl Cornwallis were in condition to advance.

State of South  
Carolina.

NOTWITHSTANDING the commotions had been violent, and almost general, in South Carolina, it was imagined and hoped that these internal troubles would subside, when the inhabitants gained information of the late distinguished superiority which had attended His Majesty's arms: But accident now discovered how much the enemies exceeded the King's friends in artifice. Perfidy and revolt had not been confined to the lower order of society. Some papers taken in the baggage of the American general officers, and other collateral intelligence, displayed the late opinions and conduct of many of the principal inhabitants of Charles town: Upwards of thirty (B.) of this description, since they had received pardon and protection from the British commanders, had held treacherous correspondence with the armed enemies of England, or had been indefatigably engaged in secretly advancing the interest of Congress throughout South Carolina. An order was immediately given to secure the persons of those individuals who had

((A.) Note A.

((B.) Note B.

violated

violated their engagements. The accused were committed to the prison ships, and from thence conveyed to confinement at Augustine. A different fate awaited those delinquents who had fought against the British troops with paroles in their possession. A number of these offenders were led forth from the provost, and, upon a full conviction of their guilt, were publicly executed. CHAP. III.

A SUBSEQUENT event manifested in strong colours the duplicity of the inhabitants of the province, and the necessity of occasionally exercising exemplary punishment on the most guilty. In the districts through which the prisoners were to pass, on their journey to Charles town, the inhabitants had almost universally given their paroles, or taken out certificates as good citizens. This reflection, and the heat of the weather, caused the King's officers to send small guards only of infantry from Camden to escort detachments of continentals and militia, taken in the late actions : The first and the second convoy passed in security ; but the third was waylaid by the inhabitants of the country, under the direction of one Horry ; the British were made prisoners, and the Americans released from captivity.

EARL Cornwallis had leisure, before the army was ready to move, to adjust some civil arrangements, which were wanted in Charles town, and to digest judicious regulations for the future government of the (C.) commissioners vested with powers to seize the estates of the violent enemies of Great Britain. Confiscation was a proper punishment for the avowed partizans of Congress, and for revoltors ; but material benefit could not be derived from it, except order and œconomy directed the application. About this time Brigadier-general Patterson

(C.) Note C.

I

was

CHAP. III. was advised by the physicians to leave Carolina on account of his bad health ; and, upon his departure, Lieutenant-colonel Balfour was appointed commandant of Charles town.

The King's  
troops move  
forwards.

BEFORE the middle of September, part of the stores being arrived, with a reinforcement from Charles town, consisting of the 7th regiment, and some recruits for the provincials, the intended movement into North Carolina was immediately undertaken. No great alteration was made upon the frontiers ; Lieutenant-colonel Brown being left at Augusta, Lieutenant-colonel Cruger at Ninety Six, and Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull at Camden ; except, that some directions were given for the construction of redoubts, to defend the magazine, and to protect the communications with Charles town. Earl Cornwallis, with the principal column of the army, composed of the 7th, 23d, 33d, and 71st regiments of infantry, the volunteers of Ireland, Hamilton's corps, Bryan's refugees, four pieces of cannon, about fifty waggons, and a detachment of cavalry, marched by Hanging rock, towards the Catawba settlement ; whilst the body of the British dragoons, and the light and legion infantry, with a three pounder, crossed the Wateree, and moved up the east side of the river, under Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton. The scarcity of forage in the district of the Wacfaws was the principal reason for this temporary separation. Flour, cattle, and forage were collected with difficulty by the main army, to supply the men and horses upon the march, the depredations of both parties having made a desert of the country.

ON the 22d, Earl Cornwallis directed the British legion and light infantry to cross the Catawba at Blair's ford, in order to form the advanced guard, for the immediate (D.) possession of Charlotte town.

(D.) Note D.

The

The junction of the light troops had been prevented for a few days, CHAP. III. by a violent fever which had attacked Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, and which yet disabled him from (a.) holding his situation when his regiment moved forwards. Several convalescent men of the army having relapsed, the 71st, (a.) under M<sup>r</sup>Arthur, was left near Blair's mill, to afford protection to the sick, to cover the mills in the neighbourhood, and to hold communication with Camden, till the arrival of the additional supplies. Earl Cornwallis moved forwards as soon as the legion under Major Hanger joined him. A party of militia fired at the advanced dragoons and light infantry as they entered the town, and a more considerable body appeared drawn up near the court house. The conduct of the Americans created suspicion in the British: An ambuscade was apprehended by the light troops, who moved forwards for some time with great circumspection: A charge of cavalry, under Major Hanger, dissipated this ill-grounded jealousy, and totally dispersed the militia. The pursuit lasted some time, and about thirty of the enemy were killed and taken. The King's troops did not come out of this skirmish unhurt: Major Hanger and Captains Campbell and M<sup>r</sup>Donald were wounded, and twelve non-commissioned officers and men were killed and wounded.

CHARLOTTE town afforded some conveniencies, blended with great disadvantages. The mills in its neighbourhood were supposed of sufficient consequence to render it for the present an eligible position, And halt at Charlotte town. and, in future, a necessary post, when the army advanced: But the aptness of its intermediate situation between Camden and Salisbury, and the quantity of its mills, did not counterbalance its defects. The town and environs abounded with inveterate enemies; the planta-

(a.) In note E.

(a.) In note D.

CHAP. III. tions in the neighbourhood were small and uncultivated; the roads narrow, and crossed in every direction; and the whole face of the country covered with close and thick woods. In addition to these disadvantages, no estimation could be made of the sentiments of half the inhabitants of North Carolina, whilst the royal army remained at Charlotte town. It was evident, and it had been frequently mentioned to the King's officers, that the counties of Mecklenburg and Rohan were more hostile to England than any others in America. The vigilance and animosity of these surrounding districts checked the exertions of the well affected, and totally destroyed all communication between the King's troops and the loyalists in the other parts of the province. No British commander could obtain any information in that position, which would facilitate his designs, or guide his future conduct. Every report concerning the measures of the governor and assembly would undoubtedly be ambiguous; accounts of the preparations of the militia could only be vague and uncertain; and all intelligence of the real force and movements of the continentals must be totally unattainable.

THE foraging parties were every day harassed by the inhabitants, who did not remain at home, to receive payment for the produce of their plantations, but generally fired from covert places, to annoy the British detachments. Ineffectual attempts were made upon convoys coming from Camden, and the intermediate post at Blair's mill; but individuals with expresses were frequently murdered. An attack was directed against the picket at Polk's mill, two miles from the town: The Americans were gallantly received by Lieutenant Guyon, of the 23d regiment; and the fire of his party from a loop-holed building adjoining the mill, repulsed the assailants. Notwithstanding the different checks and losses sustained by the militia of the district, they  
continued



continued their hostilities with unwearied perseverance; and the British troops were so effectually blockaded in their present position, that very few, out of a great number of messengers, could reach Charlotte town in the beginning of October, to give intelligence of Ferguson's situation.

It is here necessary to take a retrospective view of the western frontier of Georgia and South Carolina. (1.) A Colonel Clarke had assembled a corps of back woodsmen about the beginning of September, with which he marched to attack the British post at Augusta: Upon the approach of the Americans, Lieutenant-colonel Brown thought it necessary to call some friendly Indians, about three miles distant, to his assistance. As soon as he had joined two hundred Cherokees to his corps of provincials, which consisted of one hundred and fifty, he was informed of the near advance of the enemy. The town of Augusta did not afford an eligible position; the British commander, therefore, directed his course towards Garden hill, a plantation on the Savannah road. When the provincials and Indians arrived in sight of Mackay's house, it was discovered that the Americans were already in possession of Garden hill. Lieutenant-colonel Brown ordered his cannon to fire upon the enemy, and gave direction to his troops to charge and dislodge them. Notwithstanding the loss of a three pounder, the attack was attended with success, and the buildings on the hill, after a conflict of twenty minutes, were possessed by the assailants. Great part of the Indians behaved with order and bravery.

Lieutenant-colonel Brown attacked by Colonel Clarke.

IMMEDIATE instructions were given to the British, to loophole the buildings, and to remain upon the defensive. Colonel Clarke rallied

(1.) Vide page 28 Remembrancer, part 1st, year 1781.

CHAP. III. his men, and received a reinforcement before evening, when he detached a party of riflemen to fire upon the provincials and Indians. Nothing of consequence happening before daybreak, Lieutenant-colonel Brown directed his people to throw up some intrenchments round the buildings. They had not proceeded far with this work, when another detachment of fifty Cherokees came into the post, and reported, that the Americans were approaching. Soon after, Colonel Clarke fired upon the buildings with cannon: The attack with artillery and small arms was continued with little intermission. After two days close siege, the American sent a summons to the British commanding officer, to surrender Garden hill: Lieutenant-colonel Brown answered, that he would defend the place to the last extremity. Not satisfied with this correspondence, Clarke insolently required a compliance with his demand, accompanied with menaces of cruelty in case of refusal: He received for reply, that the British would commence hostilities on the return of the flag. The besiegers began a very heavy fire from their artillery and small arms, in which the loss of the garrison was inconsiderable: They renewed it at intervals during the night. At daybreak it was repeated and returned; when a fog clearing away, the British discovered that the Americans were retreating.

THE motive for the pressing summons and subsequent retreat was soon apparent. Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, who commanded at Ninety Six, had made exertions to relieve Lieutenant-colonel Brown from his embarrassed situation. Upon the first news of the advance of Clarke against Augusta, he collected a number of friendly militia, and after adding them to the force which he could with propriety draw from his garrison, he marched towards the Savannah river. In consequence of his approach, the Americans began to retreat. On the 19th, he sent a message over the river to Brown, requesting his advice concerning

And relieved  
by Lieute-  
nant-colonel  
Cruger.

concerning co-operation. The plan being speedily adjusted, a fire CHAP. III. was commenced from Garden hill, to cover the passage of the reinforcement across the river, and through a hollow way: Before the advanced guard reached the garrison, Clarke's corps had abandoned their camp with evident marks of confusion. The British pursued the rear (b.) of the Americans, made some prisoners, and retook the cannon they had lost in the first action.

IN this resolute defence, Lieutenant-colonel Brown had other difficulties to struggle with, besides the superiority of the enemy. The distance of the wells from the buildings rendered the position extremely inconvenient and disadvantageous, as it was impossible to procure supplies of water for the garrison towards the end of the siege. On the part of the British, Lieutenant-colonel Brown was wounded; Captain Johnson, a very promising officer of the same corps, was killed: The loss, otherwise, was not considerable, and fell principally upon the Indians. The American force which formed the attack consisted of seven hundred men, and their killed and wounded amounted to near a sixth of their number.

ALTHOUGH this expedition was baffled, the cloud which hung over was not dispersed. Many parties from the back settlements had taken the field, to reinforce Clarke, and overwhelm some post or detachment on the frontier. The distance of the country from whence the mountaineers marched, together with the rapidity of their movements on horseback, equally prevented intelligence of their approach, or preparation for their reception. The failure of Colonel Clarke before Augusta inspired Lieutenant-colonel Cruger with an idea of cutting

(b.) In note E.

Y 2

off

CHAP. III. off his retreat to the mountains: He gave notice of his design to Major Ferguson, then employed upon the frontier, who willingly concurred in the project. Cruger, after gaining some advantage, found the pursuit would carry him too far from Ninety Six, to which place he judiciously returned. Ferguson unfortunately adhered to the plan of striking at Clarke, and thought the direction which he had taken towards Gilbert town perfectly consonant to his purpose. The object Clarke aimed at, was to form a communication with many detachments of his friends who were approaching; or, if the superiority, or advanced situation of Ferguson prevented that intention, to join Colonel Sumpter on the borders of South Carolina. Near the end of September, Major Ferguson had intelligence of Clarke's having joined Sumpter, and that a swarm of backwoodsmen, by an unexpected and rapid approach to Gilbert town, now threatened his destruction. He dispatched information to Earl Cornwallis of the superior numbers to which he opposed, and directly commenced his march to the Catawba. (c.) Notwithstanding the prudent plan of verging towards the royal army, and advertising the British general of his situation, owing to some interruption of communication, or the distance of his friends, a detachment did not march in time from Charlotte town to yield him assistance.

Ferguson defeated.

COLONELS Campbell, (F.) Cleveland, Selby, Seveer, Williams, Brandon, and Lacy, being informed at Gilbert town, of the retreat of Ferguson by the Cherokee road, towards King's mountain, selected sixteen hundred chosen men on horseback, for a vigorous pursuit. The rapid march of this corps soon rendered an action inevitable. Major Ferguson heard of the enemy's approach at King's mountain: He occupied the

(c.) In note E.

(F.) Note F.

I

most

most favourable position he could find, and waited the attack. The CHAP. III. action commenced at four o'clock in the afternoon, on the 7th of October, and was disputed with great bravery near an hour, when the death of the gallant Ferguson threw his whole corps into total confusion. No effort was made after this event to resist the enemy's barbarity, or revenge the fall of their leader. By American accounts, one hundred and fifty officers and men of the provincials and loyal militia were killed, one hundred and fifty were wounded, and eight hundred were made prisoners. The mountaineers, it is reported, used every insult and indignity, after the action, towards the dead body of Major Ferguson, and exercised horrid cruelties on the prisoners that fell into their possession.

IN the beginning of October it was intended to send a corps from Charlotte town, under the orders of Lieutenant-colonel Webster, to attack a party of Americans, commanded by General Sumner, at Alexander's mill, on a branch of Rocky river; but the design was laid aside, on account of the news from the Westward. On the 10th, Earl Cornwallis gave orders to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, to march with the light infantry, the British legion, and a three pounder, to assist Major Ferguson, no certain intelligence having arrived of his defeat: It was rumoured with great confidence by the Americans in the neighbourhood of Charlotte town, and the probability of the circumstance gave weight to the report. Tarleton's instructions directed him to reinforce Ferguson wherever he could find him, and to draw his corps to the Catawba, if after the junction, advantage could not be obtained over the mountaineers; or, upon the certainty of his defeat, at all events to oppose the entrance of the victorious Americans into South Carolina: Accordingly, Tarleton marched to Smith's ford, below the forks of the Catawba, where he received certain information of  
the

CHAP. III. the melancholy fate of Major Ferguson. This mortifying intelligence was forwarded to Charles town, and the light troops crossed the river, to give protection to the fugitives, and to attend the operations of the enemy.

THE destruction of Ferguson and his corps marked the period and the extent of the first expedition into North Carolina. Added to the depression and fear it communicated to the loyalists upon the borders, and to the southward, the effect of such an important event was sensibly felt by Earl Cornwallis at Charlotte town. The weakness of his army, the extent and poverty of North Carolina, the want of knowledge of his enemy's designs, and the total ruin of his militia, presented a gloomy prospect at the commencement of the campaign. A farther progress by the route which he had undertaken could not possibly remove, but would undoubtedly encrease his difficulties; he therefore formed a sudden determination to quit Charlotte town, and pass the Catawba river. The army was ordered to move, and expresses were dispatched to recal Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.

IN the mean time the light troops, after crossing the Catawba, directed their course to the westward; on the route, they picked up a small number of fugitives, and gained intelligence that the host of mountaineers which had destroyed Ferguson was returned to the northward, without following the victory; that Colonel Sumpter with his corps remained upon the frontier; and that General Gates was expected to advance, upon the news of the late success, with the continentals and militia to the Yadkin. The situation of Colonel Sumpter's detachment on Bullock's creek attracted Tarleton's attention, and he was adopting measures to dislodge the Americans when the expresses from  
royal



the royal army prevented his design, by requiring his instant return to the Catawba. CHAP. III.

THE King's troops left Charlotte town on the evening of the 14th, to march to the Catawba ford: Owing to the badness of the road, the ignorance of the guides, the darkness of the night, or some other unknown cause, the British rear guard destroyed, or left behind, near twenty waggons, loaded with supplies for the army, a printing press, and other stores belonging to public departments, and the knapsacks of the light infantry and legion. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton had directed his troops to leave their baggage with the army, when sent upon the late expedition. The order for the move being unexpected at Charlotte town, the property of the absent was committed to the worst waggons, and was unfortunately lost. As soon as the British legion, and the light infantry, arrived at the Catawba ford, they were ordered to cross the river, which they accomplished with some difficulty, on account of a great fall of rain. The royal forces remained two days in an anxious and miserable situation in the Catawba settlement, owing to a dangerous fever, which suddenly attacked Earl Cornwallis, and to the want of forage and provisions: When the physicians declared his lordship's health would endure the motion of a waggon, Colonel Lord Rawdon, the second in command, directed the King's troops to cross Sugar creek, where some supplies might be obtained from the country: On this move, the Mecklenburg militia, supposing the cavalry still absent, attempted to harass the head of the column; when their want of intelligence proved fatal to the most enterprising of the party. A few days afterwards the army passed the Catawba river, near Twelve-mile creek, without difficulty or opposition.

The British  
army falls  
back.

Passes the Ca-  
tawba river.

CHAP. III. It was now evident, beyond contradiction, that the British general had not adopted the most eligible plan for the invasion of North Carolina. The route by Charlotte town, through the most hostile quarter of the province, on many accounts, was not advisable. Its distance likewise from Ferguson allowed the enemy to direct their attention and force against that officer, which ultimately proved his destruction. A movement on the west of the Catawba, towards Tryon county, would have been better calculated either to cover the frontier of South Carolina, or to protect detachments from the army. Another operation might also have been attempted, which, in all probability, would have had a beneficial effect. Considering the force of the King's troops at this period, a march to Cross creek would have been the most rational manoeuvre that could have been adopted; where the inhabitants were acknowledged to be almost universally loyal: Upon this move Ferguson would have been undoubtedly ordered to retire, and to remain upon the defensive to the westward; and Earl Cornwallis would have had a favourable and convenient opportunity to try the fidelity of the King's friends, and to discover whether the water communication between that place and Wilmington could be opened; a point which should necessarily have been ascertained before the royal army proceeded to the interior parts of North Carolina.

THE plan for the winter's campaign being abandoned, the next object was to look out for a proper position (G.) to cover South Carolina: Immediate attention was given to procure intelligence of the state of the country between the Catawba and Broad rivers, and of the situations that would allow safe and direct communication with Ninety Six and Camden. Several movements were made before a regular camp

(G.) Note G.

was

was established : It was impossible to rely upon the information of inhabitants ; for, in all descriptions of country, they are influenced by secret considerations, which direct them to consult their own interest and convenience. Besides, it is not to be expected that individuals, unacquainted with war, can point out the most eligible post to be occupied by an army acting upon the defensive. The King's troops moved through a plentiful country in the neighbourhood of Fishing creek, whilst measures were employed to find out the most convenient position on the frontier. Before the end of October, Earl Cornwallis fortunately recovered from his indisposition, and about the same period a proper encampment was discovered. After minute inquiry and examination, Wynnesborough presented the most numerous advantages : Its spacious plantations yielded a tolerable post ; its central situation between the Broad river and the Wateree afforded protection to Ninety Six and Camden ; and its vicinity to the Dutch forks, and a rich country in the rear, promised abundant supplies of flour, forage, and cattle. As soon as the army arrived on this ground, the sick were conveyed to the hospital at Camden ; rum and other stores were required from that place, and communication was opened with Ninety Six.

And takes  
post at  
Wynnesbo-  
rough.

DURING the move into North Carolina, the officers who commanded upon the frontier, and within the province of South Carolina, had been attentive to the security of their respective commands. Lieutenant-colonel Turnbull, with the assistance of the inhabitants, and by the labour of the provincials and the negroes, had commenced, and almost completed, some redoubts at Camden, which would greatly remedy the badness of the position. Works were likewise constructed at Thompson's house, and at Nelson's ferry, to secure the communications with Charles town. Lieutenant-colonel Cruger had made use of the same precautions at Ninety Six ; the defences at that place were in

Z

great

CHAP. III. great forwardness, and the post was in a tenable state. The troops at George town, since a late attempt of the Americans, had been employed in the same manner, and they were assisted by an armed naval force. Great alterations were made in the fortifications of Charles town; the old works were nearly thrown down, and Major Moncrieffe demonstrated his knowledge and judgement in the projected improvements.

As soon as the news of the victory near Camden arrived at New York, the commander in chief immediately embarked a respectable corps, which he dispatched under the orders of Major-general (H.) Leslie into the Chesapeake, to make a diversion in the lower part of Virginia, and, by passing the Roanoke, to form a junction with the southern army. These instructions were accompanied with an order from Sir Henry Clinton for General Leslie to obey the mandates of Earl Cornwallis, in case such a junction could not be made, or that such operations in Virginia did not tend to the public welfare. Letters were likewise sent to Earl Cornwallis, declaring the object of the expedition up James' river; but leaving the prosecution of that design, and the future management of the troops under Leslie, to his lordship's judgement and absolute direction. The distance between Nansemond in Virginia, and Wynneshorough in South Carolina, the positions of General Leslie and Earl Cornwallis in the beginning of November, did not promise a very early junction, or co-operation by land; the latter, therefore, about this period, made use of the authority allowed him by the commander in chief, in desiring the Virginia army again to embark, and to proceed first to Wilmington, and afterwards to Charles town.

(H.) Note H.

THE

THE success of the Americans at King's mountain, and the distance of Earl Cornwallis' army, prompted many of the disaffected inhabitants of South Carolina again to violate their paroles, and to unite under a leader in the eastern part of the province. Mr. Marion, by his zeal and abilities, shewed himself capable of the trust committed to his charge. He collected his adherents at the shortest notice, in the neighbourhood of Black river, and, after making incursions into the friendly districts, or threatening the communications, to avoid pursuit, he disbanded his followers. The alarms occasioned by these insurrections frequently retarded supplies on their way to the army; and a late report of Marion's strength delayed the junction of the recruits, who had arrived from New York for the corps in the country. The 64th regiment of infantry was ordered to Nelson's ferry from Charles town, and directions were given to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to pass the Wateree to awe the insurgents. Earl Cornwallis was impressed with an idea that the Americans had a design upon Camden: The report of the advance of General Morgan towards the head of Lynche's creek, with Colonel Washington's cavalry, and a body of continental infantry, together with the exaggerated accounts of Marion's force, gave plausibility to the supposition. The situation and importance of the magazine caused early jealousy and immediate attention. The light troops, however, on their arrival at Camden, found no reason to expect an attack from General Morgan, and Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton thought the opportunity favourable to commence an expedition against Marion.

Marion over-  
runs the lower  
districts.

4th Novem-  
ber.

EARL Cornwallis approving (a.) the design, the light troops (I.) marched down the east bank of the Wateree. According to the re-

(a.) In note G.

(I.) Note I.

CHAP. III. ports of the country, General Marion's numbers were hourly increasing, which induced Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to move his corps, for a short time, in a very compact body, lest the Americans should gain any advantage over patrols or detachments: But as soon as he found the account of numbers exaggerated, and that the enemy declined an engagement, he divided his corps into several small parties, publishing intelligence that each was a patrol, and that the main body of the King's troops had countermarched to Camden. Notwithstanding the divisions scattered throughout the country, to impose upon the enemy, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton took care that no detachment should be out of the reach of assistance; and that the whole formed, after dusk every evening, a solid and vigilant corps during the night. This stratagem had not been employed more than three days before General Marion was on the point of falling a sacrifice to it. He advanced on the 10th, before day, with five hundred militia, to attack Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, (who had notice of his approach) and arrived within two miles of his post; when a person of the name of Richardson discovered to him his misconception of the British force. Tarleton, unable to account for the slow advance of the Americans, dispatched an officer with a few men to find out the cause, who soon obtained information how the project was betrayed, which had already caused Marion to retreat with confusion and rapidity. A pursuit was immediately commenced, and continued for seven hours through swamps and defiles: Some prisoners fell into the possession of the legion dragoons, who gained ground very fast, and must soon have brought the enemy to action, when an express from Earl Cornwallis, who had followed the tracks of the march, recalled Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.



THE circumstance (K.) which occasioned this unexpected order for CHAP. III. the light troops to return to the westward, was the failure of an enterprise in that quarter, which made an opening for the advance of a formidable corps of Americans into the district of Ninety Six. Whilst the British legion and the light infantry were employed in watching the security of Camden, and afterwards engaged in the expedition against General Sumpter: (b.) In a few days the information became particular, in respect to the number of the Americans, and their position: These necessary points being ascertained, the noble Earl communicated his design of striking at General Sumpter to Major Wemyss, of the 63d foot, whose corps had joined since the army had been encamped at Wynnesborough, and brought horses enow, with the addition of a small supply from the departments, to mount a considerable part of the regiment: This body of mounted infantry, with an officer and forty men, who were left at head quarters from the legion cavalry, composed strength sufficient for the expedition, and the execution of it was committed to Major Wemyss.

ON the 8th, being furnished with guides, he left the army in the evening, and moved towards Fish dam, the camp of General Sumpter: The rapidity of the march, or the shortness of the distance, brought him to the American post sooner than he expected: A delay till day-break, which was the time intended for the attack, he thought would discover his design, and afford the enemy an opportunity to decamp. Actuated by these considerations, he determined to attempt General Sumpter's detachment without loss of time, and before any discovery Ineffectual attempt upon Sumpter. had been made by the patrols. At one o'clock in the morning Major

(K.) Note K.

(b.) In note G.

CHAP. III. Wemyss, at the head of his corps, charged the picket, when, out of five shots which were fired, two took place in the arm and knee of the British commanding officer: This event rendered the surprise useless; and General Sumpter owed, perhaps, his own and the safety of his people to the personal misfortune of Major Wemyss. The second in command not being fully acquainted with the plan previous to the accident of his superior officer, was at a loss how to proceed; which state of uncertainty gave Sumpter time to recover his people from confusion, and to make a handsome retreat. The British had near twenty officers and men killed and wounded. The American commander published exaggerated accounts of the affair, passed the Broad river to join Colonels Clarke and Brannen, and, thus reinforced, threatened the district of Ninety Six.

Sumpter  
moves to-  
wards Ninety  
Six.

ALTHOUGH the light troops had made a laborious march of twenty-four miles, through a very difficult country, they returned ten miles the same evening the express arrived from Earl Cornwallis. When they reached Singleton's mills, on the 12th, they found that their late expedition, though not completed to their wishes, had taken very desirable effect. The militia flocked to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, and assured him of their friendly dispositions, which they durst not manifest before Marion's retreat: They likewise informed him, that the appearance of the British troops had checked a revolt, which would in a few days have become general, between the Pedee and Santee rivers, and inevitably have destroyed the navigation which supplied the magazine. Tarleton encouraged the dispirited loyalists, and, after adopting some measures by which the commanding officer at Camden would have early intelligence of any danger which threatened the communications, he pursued his march towards Wynnesborough. On passing the Wateree, he received orders to lead the light troops to

Brierley's

Brierley's (2.) ferry, on Broad river, where he would find the first CHAP. III. battalion of the 71st, and a detachment of the 63d (a.) regiment. Before he reached the ferry, he received instructions from Earl Cornwallis to pass the river, with the legion, the light infantry, and the 63d, and to endeavour to defeat or disperse General Sumpter's command, which was approaching Ninety Six. Care was taken to conceal the green uniform of the cavalry from the view of an enemy's detachment, which occupied the opposite bank. This precaution was necessary, in order to throw the Americans off their guard, and continue their belief of the absence of the British legion, which Sumpter supposed still employed on an expedition against Marion. The appearance of the 63d and 71st in red clothing, tended to corroborate the enemy's information, and lull them into security; which circumstance had a reasonable chance of producing future advantages to the light troops, who had marched with so much celerity from the eastern part of the province, that no intelligence of their return had reached General Sumpter. Two pieces of cannon were fired from Major M'Arthur's quarters on the edge of the river, to disperse the American riflemen on the opposite bank, while a detachment of British infantry took possession of both shores. At dark, the cavalry passed at a ford some distance below the ferry, and at ten o'clock the same night, the whole corps assembled three miles beyond Brierley's.

ON the evening of the 18th, Tarleton obtained information, that General Sumpter, with upwards of one thousand men, was moving towards (a.) Williams' house, a post occupied by friendly militia, fifteen miles from Ninety Six. At daybreak next morning the light troops directed their course for Indian creek, marched all day with

(2.) Shirar's ferry is commonly called Brierley's.

(a.) In note K.

(a.) In note M.

CHAP. III. great diligence, and encamped at night, with secrecy and precaution, near the Ennoree. Another day's movement was intended up the banks of that river, which, if completed without discovery, would, perhaps, give an opportunity of destroying General Sumpter's corps by surprise; or certainly would prevent his accomplishing a retreat without the risk of an action. This encouraging hope was frustrated in the evening by the desertion (b.) of a foldier of the 63d, and the American commander at twelve o'clock at night obtained intelligence of his danger. Tarleton pursued his march at dawn, and before ten o'clock in the morning had information of the retreat of General Sumpter: He continued his route to a ford upon the Ennoree, where he expected to gain farther intelligence, or perhaps meet the Americans. On his arrival near that place, he found that the advanced guard and main body of the enemy had passed the river near two hours, and, that a detachment to cover the rear was waiting the return of a patrol: The advanced guard of the British dragoons charged this body, and defeated them with considerable slaughter. From prisoners it was learned, that the sudden movement of the Americans was owing to the treachery of the deserter, by whose information General Sumpter had fortunately escaped an unexpected attack, and had now the option to fight or retire.

THOUGH greatly superior in number, he did not wait the approach of the British, but by a rapid march endeavoured to cross the rivers in his rear; beyond which, if pressed to extremity, he could disband his followers in the woods, and without great detriment assemble them again at an appointed quarter to the northward of the Pacolet. The march already made by the British infantry, he imagined must

(b.) In note M.

soon render them unable to keep up with the cavalry; which circumstance, he flattered himself, would impede the advance of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, or, at the worst, produce only a partial engagement. Influenced by such reflections, he continued an indefatigable march, which was followed without intermission by the British. Tarleton, unwilling to divide his corps, and risk an action against a great superiority with his dragoons and the 63d, pressed forward his light and legion infantry, and three pounder, in a compact body, till four o'clock in the afternoon; at which time it became evident, that the enemy would have an opportunity of passing unmolested the Tyger river before dark, if he did not alter his disposition: He therefore left his legion and light infantry, who had made meritorious exertions during the whole day, to march on at their own pace, whilst he made a rapid pursuit with one hundred and seventy cavalry of the legion, and eighty mounted men of the 63d. Before five o'clock the advanced guard charged a detachment of the Americans, who gave ground after some loss, and retreated to the main body. Sumpter now discovered, that he could not with safety immediately attempt to pass the Tyger, and that the ground which he possessed on its banks gave him a favourable opportunity to resist the efforts of the cavalry. Regular information of his being pressed at this period by the mounted part of Tarleton's corps had been communicated to him; which, without such report, he might have calculated by the distance and duration of the movement: A woman (c.) on horseback had viewed the line of march from a wood, and, by a nearer road, had given intelligence that the British were approaching without infantry or cannon.

20th November.

DECIDED by these considerations, the American commander prepared for action, and made a judicious disposition of his force: He

(c.) In note M.

A a

posted

CHAP. III. posted the center of his troops in some houses and out-houses, composed of logs, and situated on the middle of an eminence; he extended his right along some rails, which were flanked by an inaccessible mountain; and he distributed his left on a rugged piece of ground that was covered by a bend of the river; a small branch of water ran in front of the whole rising ground, which was called Blackstock's hill: The great road to the ford across the river passed through the center of the Americans, and close to the doors of houses where the main body were stationed. The whole position was visible, owing to the elevation of the ground, and this formidable appearance made Tarleton halt upon the opposite height, where he intended to remain quiet till his infantry and three pounder arrived: To encourage the enemy to do the same, he dismounted the 63d to take post, and part of the cavalry to ease their horses. Sumpter observing this operation, ordered a body of four hundred Americans to advance, and attack the 63d in front, whilst another party approached the dragoons in flank. A heavy fire and sharp conflict ensued: The 63d charged with fixed bayonets, and drove the enemy back; and a troop of cavalry, under Lieutenant Skinner, bravely repulsed the detachment which threatened the flank. The ardour of the 63d carried them too far, and exposed them to a considerable fire from the buildings and the mountain. Though the undertaking appeared hazardous, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton determined to charge the enemy's center with a column of dragoons, in order to cover the 63d, whose situation was now become dangerous. The attack was conducted with great celerity, and was attended with immediate success. The cavalry soon reached the houses, and broke the Americans, who from that instant began to disperse: The 63d immediately rallied, and darkness put an end to the engagement. A pursuit across a river, with a few troops of cavalry, and a small body of infantry, was not advisable in the night;

Action at  
Blackstock's.



a position was therefore taken adjoining to the field of battle, to wait CHAP. III. the arrival of the light and legion infantry.

AN express was sent to acquaint Earl Cornwallis with the success of his troops, and patrols were dispatched over the river at dawn, to discover if any part of the enemy remained in a body: Intelligence was soon brought across the Tyger, that the corps was entirely dispersed, except a party of one hundred, who remained in a compact state, in order to escort General Sumpter, who was wounded in the action. This news, and some rumours of approaching reinforcements, impelled Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to follow the late advantage, by pursuing the fugitives; which would prevent their rallying to assist their friends, if the report was true concerning their advance. Accordingly, leaving a guard to protect the wounded, he again commenced his march: The men who had remained with their general since his misfortune, upon hearing of the approach of the British, placed him in a litter between two horses, and dispersed through the woods. After a toilsome pursuit of three days, in which a few stragglers were secured, intelligence was obtained that General Sumpter had been conducted across the country by five faithful adherents, till he was removed out of danger. Tarleton upon receiving this news, and having no farther information of an advancing enemy, retired slowly to Blackstock's.

THREE of the enemy's (d.) colonels fell in the action, and General Sumpter received a severe wound in the shoulder. Upwards of one hundred Americans were killed and wounded, and fifty were made prisoners. On the side of the British, Lieutenants Gibson and Cope, of the 63d, were killed; and Lieutenant Money, aid-de-camp to

(d.) In note M.

A. a. 2.

Earl

CHAP. III. Earl Cornwallis, who had commanded the detachment of mounted infantry, with great gallantry, was mortally wounded: Another officer of the 63d, and two subalterns of the British legion, were likewise wounded. The former corps had also thirty, and the latter fifteen, non-commissioned officers and men, with thirty horses, killed and wounded.

GENERAL Sumpter made proper use of the good fortune which had manifested itself in his favour previous to the action; and if he had waited in his strong position at Blackstock's till dark, without advancing a corps to attack the 63d, and the cavalry, he might have withdrawn, in all probability, without his adversaries' knowledge; but, he would have been completely protected in the operation, even if they had notice of his intention; owing to the superiority of his numbers, and the advantages he derived from the situation of the ground, and the river; which could not be approached, after dark, by the British, till the light and legion infantry arrived; previous to which event, the rear guard of the Americans might certainly have passed the Tyger. The light troops made very great exertions, to bring General Sumpter to action, and the hazard incurred by the cavalry, and 63d, was compensated by the complete dispersion of the enemy.

A LETTER, (L.) which had arrived at Blackstock's, from Earl Cornwallis, directed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, on his return from the pursuit, to remain some time in that quarter of South Carolina; in order to give protection to Ninety Six, to oppose a corps of mountaineers which was expected, and to afford security to the loyalists, whilst they attempted to assemble and form a respectable body. Mr. Cunningham,

(L.) Note L.

a man

a man of spirit and conduct, who was appointed brigadier-general of militia, adopted judicious measures to encourage the well-affected inhabitants. At the end of the month, it was evident, that the report concerning the mountaineers was erroneous, and that there was no immediate danger to be apprehended on that border of the province. These favourable circumstances induced Tarleton, after refreshing his horses with the forage, which this district abundantly supplied, to return by slow marches, with his dragoons and infantry, who wanted many necessaries and appointments, towards the neighbourhood of Broad river, whence he could have a more direct communication with the magazine on the frontier, and with Charles town. CHAP. III.

ABOUT this time, the American force in North Carolina assumed a tolerable appearance. General Gates had advanced from Hillsborough in the middle of November, to reinforce the detachments on the Yadkin; and on the 25th, he again moved forwards with the continentals and militia, to Six-mile run, where he was soon joined by Colonels White, Washington, and Armand, with two hundred cavalry, and two pieces of cannon. This position was not far distant from the frontier of South Carolina, and was adopted in order to give spirit and vigour to the militia. The American commander published reports, that he would advance to the Tuckaseege ford, to protect the detachments which invaded Ninety Six; and that General Smallwood would remain with a powerful corps at Six-mile run, which, in case of any movement of Lord Cornwallis across Broad river, would incline towards the head of Black creek, to give strength and influence to Marion, who, in consequence of such assistance, might be able to destroy the communications between Camden and Charles town. State of the  
American  
army.

CHAP. III. IN the beginning of December, General Morgan and Colonel Washington, with some continental light infantry and cavalry, advanced through the Wacsaus to Hanging rock; from which place they detached a threatening summons to Colonel Rugeley, who commanded the militia of the Camden district, and was posted with one hundred men at his own house, where some defences had been erected. Rugeley being intimidated by the summons, and the appearance of the Americans, who placed the resemblance of a cannon opposite his house, surrendered to the light dragoons, without firing a shot. The continental infantry had not advanced within three miles of the post, when this (N.) irresolute commander laid down his arms. General Morgan retreated with his prisoners to the main army, which about this time changed its leader; General Gates being recalled, upon the appointment of Major general Greene to succeed him in the southern department.

Major-general  
Greene  
takes the  
command.

Preparations  
for a second  
invasion of  
North Carolina.

MAJOR-GENERAL Leslie, being desired in the beginning of November to leave Virginia, and proceed to the southward, was hourly expected at Charles town. Previous to his arrival, Earl Cornwallis made some arrangements, which were indispensably requisite, before the King's troops again invaded North Carolina: He directed the recruits and convalescents to join their regiments: He ordered all deficiencies of arms, appointments, and necessaries, to be replaced: He prepared proper supplies, to attend the march; and he adopted judicious precautions for the security of the frontier. In a short time, numbers strengthened each corps and regiment of the army: Above one hundred and fifty (a.) joined the light troops: Deficiencies of arms and necessaries were completed: Many horses were collected, and purchased for the cavalry: And the magazine at Camden was considerably increased.

(N.) Note N.

(a.) In Note O.

Colonel

Colonel Lord Rawdon was requested to take the present command of that place, and the future direction of the frontier, when the army advanced. The fortifications at Camden began to be respectable: Utenfils, ammunition, and cannon, were conveyed thither, and engineers directed the labour of the garrison. The central situation of this post, and the importance of its water communication, strongly manifested the advantage of holding it, if the army did not advance, and it became doubly necessary to render it formidable, in case such an operation should take place; that it might then be deemed, by friends and enemies, the bulwark of the province. An officer of engineers was sent to Ninety Six, to superintend the works, and every requisite was furnished to give security to that post. Redoubts, to strengthen the communications, were completed, and the defences of George town received additional improvement.

IN the mean time, the Americans were not idle, in attempting to disturb the frontier, and the interior parts of the province. Colonels Few and Clarke advanced to Long Canes, in the district of Ninety Six, with an intention to frighten and disperse the militia: Brigadier-general Cunningham gave notice of their approach to Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, who secretly sent Lieutenant-colonel Allen, with a detachment from his garrison, to give assistance to the loyalists. The Americans, ignorant of this reinforcement, advanced upon Cunningham, who received them with firmness, and defeated their project. Some recent effects of Marion, within the province, drew the attention equally of Charles town and Camden. Lieutenant-colonel Balfour directed the 64th regiment to pass the river Santee, and take post on the east of the communications; and Lord Rawdon detached the mounted infantry of the New-York volunteers, under Major Coffin, to assist Major M'Leroth, who commanded the 64th. Many skirmishes took

CHAP. III. took place without material loss, and the supplies for the royal army were always protected, though occasionally delayed.

SINCE the period of their establishment, neither the encampment at Wynneborough, nor its communication with the magazine at Camden, had ever been disturbed or interrupted. Meal, flour, cattle, and forage, were peaceably supplied by the inhabitants; and the convalescent and sick men were daily recovering on the neighbouring plantations. The 1st battalion of the 71st regiment continued to occupy Brierley's ferry, on Broad river, in order to cover the country between Wynneborough and that place: The vicinity of the British legion and light infantry to that post, afforded support to Major M'Arthur, protection to the mills in the Dutch fork, and security to all the districts in the rear. Many confiscated estates (b.) yielded great supplies to the royal army, which, in its present position, could enjoy the greatest plenty, with the strictest œconomy of public money.

Major-general Leslie arrives at Charles town with a reinforcement.

BEFORE the middle of December, Commodore Gayton convoyed a considerable body of the King's troops to Charles town: Major-general Leslie, on his landing, found an order to march to the frontier, with the brigade of guards, the regiment of Bose, one hundred and twenty yagers, and a detachment of light dragoons: The remainder of his corps being destined to strengthen Camden, and augment the garrison of Charles town. The arrival of a reinforcement of upwards of two thousand three hundred men, seemed, at this crisis, to promise the secure possession of the two southern provinces, and the reduction of North Carolina; whilst the offensive operations carried on in Virginia by Brigadier-general Arnold, appeared well adapted to attract the attention of that powerful quarter of America.

(b.) In note O.

NOTES



## N O T E S

TO THE

## T H I R D C H A P T E R.

---

(NOTE A.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lord George Germain, dated Camden,  
August 21, 1780.*

ON the morning of the 17th I dispatched proper people into North Carolina, with directions to our friends there to take arms and assemble immediately, and to seize the most violent people and all military stores and magazines belonging to the rebels, and to intercept all stragglers from the routed army; and I have promised to march without loss of time to their support. Some necessary supplies for the army are now on their way from Charles town, and I hope that their arrival will enable me to move in a few days.

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

---

(NOTE B.)

Christopher Gadsden, lieutenant  
governor.

Thomas Ferguson.

Anthony Toomer.

Thomas Farr, late speaker.

Alexander Moultrie.

B b

Jacob

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

Jacob Read.  
Richard Hutson.  
Edward Blake.  
Edward Rutledge.  
Isaac Homes.  
Richard Lushington.  
Peter Timothy.  
John Edwards.  
Hugh Rutledge.  
John Floyd.  
William Price.  
Thomas Savage.  
Thomas Heyward.  
William-Hazel Gibbs.

Edward M'Crary.  
David Ramfay.  
John Todd.  
George Flagg.  
Peter Fayffoux.  
Josiah Smith.  
John Parker.  
John Sanfam.  
John-Ernest Poyas.  
John Budd.  
John Loveday.  
Thomas Singleton.  
Edward North.  
Joseph Atkinson.

---

(NOTE C.)

SOUTH CAROLINA.

*By the Right Honourable Charles Earl Cornwallis, Lieutenant-general of  
His Majesty's forces, &c.*

A PROCLAMATION.

WHEREAS, notwithstanding the moderation of the British government, and His Majesty's unparalleled clemency to those of his deluded subjects, who, from a sense of their errors, have returned to their duty and allegiance, there are several persons of property in this province, who obstinately persist in their guilty and treasonable practices, and are either in the service, or acting under the authority of the

rebel

rebel Congress; or by abandoning their plantations, to join the enemies of Great Britain; or by an open avowal of rebellious principles, and other notorious acts, do manifest a wicked and desperate perseverance, in opposing to the utmost of their power the re-establishment of His Majesty's just and lawful authority: And whereas it is a duty incumbent upon me, to take all due precaution to secure the tranquillity of His Majesty's government, and the peace and liberties of his faithful and loyal subjects in this province, and to prevent the wicked designs of such ill-disposed persons as are above described from taking effect: And whereas it might be of dangerous consequence to suffer such persons to possess and make use of their estates in this province, thereby furnishing them with the means of carrying on their malicious and traitorous designs more effectually into execution; and as it likewise appears to me both just and expedient, that the property which they have voluntarily staked in support of rebellion, should now be applied, on our part, to defray a portion of the expences occasioned by the obstinate delinquency of their faction: I have, therefore, thought proper to issue this proclamation, to notify to all persons concerned, that I have ordered the estates, both real and personal, in this province, belonging to the wicked and dangerous traitors above described, to be sequestered; and I have constituted and appointed John Cruden, Esq. to be commissioner to execute the purposes of this proclamation, with full power and authority, on receipt of an order or warrant under my hand, or the hand of the officer commanding the British forces in this province, or of the commandant of Charles town, and not otherwise, to take into his charge, custody, and possession, the estates, both real and personal, of those who have abandoned their plantations to join the enemies of Great Britain; and of the estates, both real and personal, (not included in the capitulation of Charles town) of those in the service, or acting under the authority

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

of the rebel Congress; and of the estates, both personal and real, of those persons, who by an open avowal of rebellious principles, or by other notorious acts, do manifest a wicked and desperate perseverance in opposing, to the utmost of their power, the re-establishment of His Majesty's just and lawful authority. And the said commissioner shall, within the term of twenty-one days after execution of every such order or warrant above mentioned, by seizure of the estates or property therein described, cause notice thereof to be published in three successive newspapers, that no person concerned may plead ignorance of the same; and the like term is allowed for the removal of possessors from the premises so seized. And to the end that this trust, of so great importance, be duly and faithfully administered for the public benefit, I do hereby strictly require and enjoin, that the said commissioner doth, in every case of the seizure of property, whether real or personal, forthwith take upon the spot, (if in the country) in the presence of two persons acting either as field officers, or captains of militia under His Majesty, and (if in town) in presence of two creditable freeholders, an exact inventory of the property so seized, which they are hereby required to sign; and it is to be kept and produced by the commissioner, as a voucher on the exhibition of his accounts. And whereas it is dictated by humanity and compassion, that due and reasonable consideration be had for the families of traitorous offenders, whose property is necessarily become the object of this proclamation, I have authorized and directed the said commissioner to pay, for the support and maintenance of families, consisting of a wife and children, one fourth part of the neat annual product of the seized estates respectively, and one sixth part where there is a wife and no children, as the case may be, provided they are resident, and continue to be resident, within this province; and the receipts and acquittances of the parties shall be, and are hereby directed to be, con-

sidered



considered sufficient vouchers to the said commissioner at the settlement of his accounts. And it being highly expedient, that accounts of all personal property, and of the issues and produce of all estates, consisting of land, negroes, cattle, and of every species of property, seized by virtue of this proclamation, be kept in the most clear and distinct manner possible; I do hereby direct, that the said commissioner do keep particular and separate accounts of all property, real and personal, under the names of the persons who were supposed and acknowledged to be the proprietors at the time of seizure: And I do hereby farther direct and require the said commissioner to make up a general account of the expence of management, and of the amount of the sale and disposal of all property whatsoever that shall come into his hands, which is to be laid before the commandant and board of police of Charles town, every six months, or oftener if it shall appear necessary and practicable; and he shall be thereunto required, during such time as the said estates shall remain under sequestration: And the commandant and board of police are hereby directed and required to inspect the said accounts with all convenient dispatch, and if they appear to them to be just and right, to grant a certificate thereof to the said commissioner; and the said commissioner is hereby farther required, upon such certificate being granted, to pay the balance arising from the above-described estates into the hands of the paymaster general of His Majesty's forces or his deputy, to be applied to the purpose before mentioned, or in any manner that may be directed by His Majesty's commissioners for restoring peace to America, or the commander in chief. And I do hereby declare, that any person or persons obstructing or impeding the said commissioner in the execution of his duty, by concealment or removal of any property he may be authorized to seize, or otherwise, shall, on conviction, be punished as aiding and abetting rebellion; and if any person or persons shall make discovery

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

discovery where any effects are concealed, or attempted to be carried away, or shall give any necessary information to the said John Cruden, Esq. so that effects belonging to a person whose estate is sequestered may be secured, the person or persons giving such information shall be most liberally rewarded: And all officers, civil or military, and all other persons whatsoever, are strictly enjoined and required to aid and assist the said John Cruden and his deputies in the execution of the trust reposed in him. And whereas certain limited orders and powers have been given by me to colonels and commanding officers of militia, in some few of the districts of this province, to seize the horses, cattle, negroes, and provisions of persons concerned in the last revolt, more particularly described in the said orders, and to apply the same, under certain regulations and restrictions, to the indemnification of the King's loyal and faithful subjects in the respective districts, who had suffered by the depredations of the rebels: And whereas the colonels and commanding officers of militia were by the said orders directed to report to me, at the head quarters of the army, the property they should seize by virtue of the same, specifying clearly its nature and value, and the application thereof towards the relief and indemnity of His Majesty's faithful subjects who have suffered as aforesaid; I do now hereby require and command them, instead of reporting to me their proceedings, as above directed, to transmit to the commandant of Charles town, within the term of fourteen days after the distribution of the property seized, particular accounts of all such property seized, and of its application and distribution, in writing, which are to be signed by the colonel or commanding officer of the militia, and by the twelve men of the neighbourhood who condemned the property, and ordered distribution of the same; and that they do transmit exact duplicates of the said accounts, signed in the manner above directed, at the same time to John Cruden, Esq. the commissioner  
named



named in this proclamation, to be lodged in his office at Charles town ; Notes to the  
to the end that it may appear and be ascertained how the property Third  
feized, under the above-recited orders, hath been applied and distri- Chapter.  
buted.

GIVEN under my hand and seal, at head quarters, in the district of  
Wacshaw, in the said province, the sixth day of September, Anno Do-  
mini one thousand seven hundred and eighty, and in the twentieth  
year of His Majesty's reign.

## CORNWALLIS.

By his lordship's command,

J. MONEY, A. D. C.

## (NOTE D.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated camp at  
Wacshaw, Sept. 22, 1780.*

IF nothing material happens to obstruct my plan of operations, I  
mean, as soon as Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton can be removed, to pro-  
ceed with the 23d, 33d, volunteers of Ireland, and legion, to Char-  
lotte town, and leave the 71st here (a.) until the sick can be brought on  
to us. I then mean to make some redoubts, and establish a fixed post  
at that place, and give the command of it to Major Wemyss, whose  
regiment is so totally demolished by sickness, that it will not be fit for  
actual service for some months.

## (NOTE

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

## (NOTE E.)

*Extract of a letter from Earl Cornwallis to Major Ferguson, found in the Major's baggage, and published by the Americans after his death, dated Wacsaaws, Sept. 23, 1780. (1.)*

S I R,

I HAVE just received yours of the 19th, and last night had the satisfaction to hear from Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, that he had arrived in time to save Browne, and (b.) retaken the guns, and totally routed the enemy, who had retired with great precipitation; that the Indians had pursued and scalped many of them. I have no objections to your making any allowance to the militia you think they deserve; but had rather have it called gratuity than pay, even if it amounts to the same sum. Tarleton (a.) is better, and was moved to-day in a litter; his illness \* —. I shall † —

I HEARD a report that a Major Davie, who commands a corps of about eighty horse militia, had marched against you. You will know whether this is true before this can possibly reach you.

I am, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

Major Ferguson.

P. S. As soon as I have consumed the provisions in this settlement, I shall march with as much expedition as possible to Cross creek. I am told the climate will be healthy there by the middle of next month.

(1.) Vide Remembrancer, page 280, part 1st, 1781.

\* The rest of the sentence in cypher.

† This also.

*Extract*

*Extract of a letter (b.) from Major Ferguson to Lord Cornwallis, published by the Americans.*

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

MY LORD,

A DOUBT does not remain with regard to the intelligence I sent your lordship: They are since joined by Clark and Sumpter, of course are become an object of some consequence. Happily their leaders are obliged to feed their followers with such hopes, and so to flatter them with accounts of our weakness and fear, that, if necessary, I should hope for success against them myself; but, numbers compared, that must be doubtful. I am on my march towards you by a road leading from Cherokee ford, north of King's mountain. Three or four hundred good foldiers, part dragoons, would finish the business. Something must be done soon. This is their last push in this quarter, &c.

PATRICK FERGUSON.

---

(NOTE F.)

*The following letters were published by order of Congress:*

*Extract of a letter from his Excellency Governor Jefferson, of Virginia, to the President of Congress, dated Richmand, October 15, 1780, six o'clock, P. M.*

SIR,

I DO myself the pleasure of congratulating your excellency on the small dawn of good fortune which at length appears in the south, as you will find by the dispatches I have the honour of enclosing to you, and which I this moment received from General Gates.

C c

SIR,

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

Burk county, Oct. 2, 1780.

SIR,

I AM at present about seventy miles from Salisbury, in the fork of the Catawba, with about four hundred and fifty horsemen, in pursuit of Colonel Ferguson. On my crossing the Catawba river, I dispatched to different quarters for intelligence, and this evening I was favoured with this news, which you may depend on: That Colonel Clark, of the state of Georgia, with one hundred riflemen, forced his way through South Carolina to Georgia. On his route thither, being joined by seven hundred men, he proceeded to the town of Augusta, and has taken it with a large quantity of goods; but not finding it prudent to continue there, he has retreated to the upper parts of South Carolina, in Ninety-six district, and made a stand with eight hundred brave men.

THIS moment another of my expresses is arrived from Colonels M'Dowell and Shelby: They were on their march, near Burk court-house, with one thousand five hundred brave mountain men, and Colonel Cleveland was within ten miles of them with eight hundred men, and was to form a junction with them this day. I expect to join them to-morrow, in pursuit of Colonel Ferguson, and, under the direction of Heaven, I hope to be able to render your honour a good account of him in a few days.

I am, &c.

JAMES WILLIAMS.

Major-general Gates.

Hillborough, Oct. 12, 1780.

SIR,

THIS instant I received the great and glorious news contained in the enclosed letter from Brigadier-general Davison to General Sumner,

who

who directly dispatched it to me by express. We are now more than even with the enemy. The moment the supplies for the troops arrive from Taylor's ferry, I shall proceed with the whole to the Yadkin. General Smallwood and Colonel Morgan are on their way to that post; the latter, with the light infantry, was yesterday advanced eighteen miles beyond Guildford court house; the former, with the cavalry, lay last night thirteen miles on this side that place. I desire your excellency will forthwith dispatch copies of all the letters I now send you to the President of Congress.

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

I am, &c.

HORATIO GATES.

Governor Jefferson.

Camp, Rocky river, Oct. 10, 1780.

S I R,

I HAVE the pleasure of sending you very agreeable intelligence from the west. Ferguson, the great partizan, has miscarried. This we are assured of by Mr. Tate, who was major in General Sumpter's late command; the particulars from that gentleman's mouth stand thus: That Colonels Campbell, Cleveland, Shelby, Seveer, Williams, Brandon, Lacey, &c., formed a conjunct body near Gilbert town, consisting of three thousand men. From this body were selected one thousand six hundred good horse, who immediately went in pursuit of Colonel Ferguson, who was making his way to Charlotte. Our people overtook him well posted on King's mountain, and on the evening of the 7th instant, at four o'clock, began the attack, which continued forty-seven minutes. Colonel Ferguson fell in the action, besides one hundred and fifty of his men; eight hundred and ten were made prisoners, including the British; one hundred and fifty of the prisoners are wounded: One thousand five hundred stand of arms fell into our hands.

C c 2

Notes to the Third Chapter. hands. Colonel Ferguson had about one thousand four hundred men. Our people surrounded them, and the enemy surrendered.

WE lost about twenty men; among whom is Major Chronicle, of Lincoln county; Colonel Williams is mortally wounded. The number of our wounded cannot be ascertained. This blow will certainly affect the British very considerably. The brigade major who gives this was in the action. The above is true. The blow is great. I give you joy on the occasion.

I am, &c.

WILLIAM DAVISON.

Honourable General Sumner.

Camp, Yadkin ford, Oct. 10, 1780,  
eight o'clock evening.

SIR,

WITH great satisfaction I inform you of the defeat of Major Ferguson on King's mountain, four o'clock Saturday afternoon. The particulars I enclose you as I received them a few minutes ago: Also a letter from General Davison, of his securing twenty-nine barrels of powder, which were secreted some time since near Charlotte.

I am, SIR,

With great respect,

Your very humble servant,

JETHRO SUMNER.

General Gates.

Published by order of Congress,

CHARLES THOMPSON, Sec.

(NOTE



## (NOTE G.)

*Copy of a letter from Colonel Lord Rawdon to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton,*  
*dated Smith's plantation, Oct. 23, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

I AM very much obliged to you, my dear Sir, for the pains which you have taken in looking out for a position for us. All the maps of the country which I have are so very inaccurate, that I must depend totally on your judgement: Whilst I remain in this quarter, my principal point is to communicate readily with Camden and Ninety Six; at the same time that I shall be in a neighbourhood where the camp may be well supplied. The nearer to the great road I should imagine the better: However, I am not enough acquainted with that part of the country to decide. Swan's report appears to be in some degree influenced by his desire of getting in safety to his own home. Twenty miles westward from the cross roads I should think would remove us too far from that direct communication which we wish. But I must repeat, that I speak from maps, in which I suspect the relative positions to be ill laid down.

THE supplies of rum and other stores which we must receive from Camden, would make it eligible not to strike off too wide from that post. I shall proceed to the cross roads to-morrow, where I shall hope to hear from you: But we beg that you will in the mean time encourage the inhabitants to bring us in as much flour and meal as possible; assuring them that they shall be punctually paid for every thing with which they furnish the camp.

I have the honour to be,

Dear Sir, with great regard,

Your very faithful servant,

Lieut. Col. Tarleton.

RAWDON.

Copy.

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, Dec. 4th, 1780.*

✂ DEAR TARLETON,

A LETTER from Despard informs us, that you have the rank of lieutenant colonel, which gives me the greatest satisfaction, and which you so truly deserve; I am glad it was done before they knew of the affair of the 18th, as it puts them still in your debt. I know nothing more than when I wrote last. Our supplies of all sorts very scanty. Rebel plundering parties come within fourteen miles; their force on this side only (b.) Sumpter, &c. Poor Captain Hovenden is laid up with fever and ague.

I am, with the greatest regard,

Most sincerely yours,

CORN WALLIS.

Lieut. Col. Tarleton.

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, Nov. 5, 1781.*

✂ I RECEIVED yours yesterday, and most sincerely hope you will get at Mr. Marion. (a.) I am always sanguine when you are concerned. I cannot think the march of the detachment of cavalry on this side very material.

(NOTE

## (NOTE H.)

*Instructions to the Hon. Major-general Leslie, dated head quarters, New York, Oct. 10, 1780.*

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

SIR,

YOU will be pleased to proceed with the troops embarked under your command to Chesapeak bay; and, upon your arrival at that place, you will pursue such measures as you shall judge most likely to answer the purpose of this expedition; the principal object of which is to make a diversion in favour of Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, who, by the time you arrive there, will probably be acting in the back parts of North Carolina. The information you shall procure on the spot, after your arrival at your destined post, will point out to you the properest method of accomplishing this. But from what I have received here, I should judge it best to proceed up James river as high as possible, in order to seize or destroy any magazines the enemy may have at Petersburg, Richmond, or any of the places adjacent; and finally to establish a post on Elizabeth river. But this, as well as the direction of every other operation, is submitted to Earl Cornwallis, with whom you are as soon as possible to communicate, and afterwards to follow all such orders and directions as you shall from time to time receive from his lordship.

(NOTE

## (NOTE I.)

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

*Extract of a letter from Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated  
Camp at Wynnesborough, December 3, 1780.*

COLONEL Marion had so wrought on the minds of the people, partly by the terror of his threats and cruelty of his punishments, and partly by the promise of plunder, that there was scarcely an inhabitant between the Santee and Pedee, that was not in arms against us. Some parties had even crossed the Santee, and carried terror to the gates of Charles town. My first object was to reinstate matters in that quarter, without which Camden could receive no supplies. I therefore sent Tarleton, who pursued Marion for several days, obliged his corps to take to the swamps, and by convincing the inhabitants that there was a power superior to Marion, who could likewise reward and punish, so far checked the insurrection, that the greatest part of them have not dared to appear in arms against us since his expedition.

---

 (NOTE K.)

*Copy of a letter from Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated  
Wynnesborough, November 9, 1780.*

✱ DEAR TARLETON,

MAJOR Wemyss attacked Sumpter at Fish Dam at one o'clock this morning, contrary to his plan, which was to wait until day light; the consequence is, that Wemyss is wounded and left, and about twenty men: Lieutenant Hovenden is wounded, but I believe  
the

the legion has not lost much—Must beg of you to return immediately, leaving some horses for mounting men at Camden. I am under the greatest anxiety for Ninety Six, and trust you will lose no time in returning to me.

I am,

Yours sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.

*Extract.—From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, November 10, 1780.*

✂ YOU will have received my letter of yesterday, since which we have intelligence that Sumpter has passed the Broad River, and joined Clarke, Brannen, &c. They talk of expecting some of the mountaineers; as they have excellent horses we cannot hurt them; and unless they receive some check they will be very troublesome. The 63d are well mounted for infantry, and may occasionally ride in your train, they behaved vastly well, out of five shots which were fired from the picket, one broke Wemyss' arm, and another his knee, the command then devolved to a young lieutenant, who knew nothing of the plan, or the ground, or the force of the enemy, and all was confusion. After what I have said, I am sure I may depend on your acting for the best, on the general plan of the welfare of the army.

*Extract.—From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, November 11, 1780.*

✂ I SEND duplicates of my two last letters, as I ordered one of the expresses to return immediately, and he is not yet come; I am apprehensive some accident may have happened to him. The enemy

D d

declare

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

declare their intentions of going to Ninety Six; I have sent M<sup>c</sup>Arthur with the 1st battalion (a.) of the 71st, and the 63d under Money to Shirar's ferry: I wish you would get three legions, and divide yourself into three parts: We can do no good without you, I trust to your coming immediately, unless you see something more materially pressing.

---

(NOTE L.)

*Copy of a letter from Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, November 22, 1780.*

✂ MY DEAR TARLETON,

I MOST heartily wish you joy of your success: But wish it had not cost you so much; I have ordered M<sup>c</sup>Arthur to proceed to Calley's ford on Ennoree, and to wait for your orders with his battalion, sending on the baggage with a captain and fifty men: If you should want him it will make but little delay; if not, it will save him a long march. I have sent Stewart to assist your wounded; I am happy to hear that Money is in no danger; I most sincerely rejoice in your escape, as well on my own account, as on that of your country: That success and every happiness may ever attend you, is the sincere wish

Of your most faithful

And affectionate friend,

CORNWALLIS.

✂ If you hear of Campbell, or any force advancing, you need not hurry yourself. In short, I leave all to your discretion; you know

the



the importance of putting the district of Ninety Six into a state of security, and will act accordingly: You will make any requisitions you please to Cruger, either from co-operation from him, or assistance of militia, which is now under the direction of Cunningham, brigadier general of the militia of the district, and which, I hope, will do better than it has lately done.

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

I have a letter from L——, who, on the first application, complies with our wishes: I will not tire you with a repetition of my obligations to you; I trust you will find that I shall never forget *them*. Pray express my thanks in the strongest terms to the officers and men under your command.

*Extract.—From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, November 23, eight o'clock P. M.*

✱ I HAVE no doubt but your victory will be attended with as good consequences to our affairs as it is with honour and credit to yourself; I shall be very glad to hear that Sumpter is in a condition to give us no farther trouble; he certainly has been our greatest plague in this country.

---

(NOTE M.)

*Extract.—From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated Camp, at Wynnesborough, December 3, 1780.*

SUMPTER having passed the Broad river, and joined Brannen, Clarke, &c., I detached Major M'Arthur with the 1st battalion of the

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

71st, and the 63d regiment, after having sent my aid-de-camp, Lieutenant Money, to take the command of it, to Brierley's ferry, on Broad River, in order to cover our mills, and to give some check to the enemy's march to Ninety Six. At the same time I recalled Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton from the low country. Tarleton was so fortunate as to pass not only the Wateree, but the Broad river, without General Sumpter's being apprized of it, who having increased his corps to one thousand, had passed the Ennoree, and was on the point of attacking our hundred militia at Williams' (a.) house, fifteen miles from Ninety Six, and where, I believe, he would not have met with much resistance. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton would have surprized him on the south of Ennoree, had not a deserter of (b.) the 63d given notice of his march: He, however, cut to pieces his rear guard in passing that river; and pursued his main body with such rapidity, that he could not pass the Tyger, and was obliged to halt on a very strong position, at a place called Blackstock's, close to it; Tarleton had with him only his cavalry, and the 63d mounted, his infantry and a three pounder being several miles behind. The enemy not being able to retreat with safety, and being informed of Tarleton's approach and want of infantry, by a woman (c.) who passed him on the march, and contrived by a nearer road to get to them, were encouraged by their great superiority of numbers, and began to fire on the 63d, who were dismounted. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, to save them from considerable loss, was obliged to attack, although at some hazard, and drove the enemy with loss over the river: Sumpter was dangerously wounded, three of (d.) their colonels killed, and about one and twenty men killed, wounded, or taken. On our side about fifty were killed and wounded, Lieutenants Gibson and Cope, of the 63d, were amongst the former, and my aid-de-camp, Lieutenant Money, who was a most promising officer, died of his wounds a few days after. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, as

soon

soon as he had taken care of his wounded, pursued and dispersed the remaining part of Sumpter's corps; and then, having assembled some militia under Mr. Cunningham, whom I appointed brigadier general of the militia of that district, and who has by far the greatest influence in that country, he returned to Broad river, where he at present remains; as well as Major M'Arthur, in the neighbourhood of Brierley's ferry.

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

It is not easy for Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to add to the reputation he has acquired in this province; but the defeating one thousand men, posted on very strong ground, and occupying log houses, with one hundred and ninety cavalry and eighty infantry, is a proof of that spirit and those talents which must render the most essential services to his country. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton commends much the good behaviour of the officers and men under his command; and he particularly mentions Lieutenant Skinner, of the 16th regiment of infantry, who does duty with the legion, as having distinguished himself.

---

(NOTE N.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated  
Wynnesborough, Dec. 4th, 1780.*

✂ RUGELEY will not be made a brigadier. He surrendered without firing a shot, himself and one hundred and three rank and file, to the cavalry only: A deserter of Morgan's assures us that the infantry never came within three miles of the house. I wish you to try all you can about intelligence.

(NOTE

## (NOTE O.)

Notes to the  
Third  
Chapter.

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated  
Wynnesborough, Dec. 15th, 1780.*

✍ IF it should happen that any of your foraging parties should go to any of the sequestered (b.) estates on which a deputy of Mr. Cruden's may be placed, you will direct your officer to make application to that deputy for the forage, and give him the receipt.

I HAVE no material intelligence, and I am sorry to say, none that I can depend on from the enemy on our front. If you can meet with any persons more enterprising than those I can find, I beg you will employ them. No news from Ninety Six, or General Cunningham, since you left us. I saw yesterday your (a.) convalescents; some of them I hardly thought fit to join; and there were rather more black attendants, both male and female, than I think you will like to see. As soon as I hear any thing material from Leslie, you shall hear from me.

CHAPTER

## CHAPTER IV.

*Movements of the Americans.—The British light troops pass Broad river.—*

*Earl Cornwallis moves from Wynnesborough.—Action at the Cowpens.—General Leslie joins Earl Cornwallis.—Pursuit of General Morgan.—Morgan passes the Catawba river.—The King's troops pass the Catawba.—Affair at Tarrant's.—Earl Cornwallis marches to Salisbury.—Skirmish at the Trading ford.—Earl Cornwallis moves to the Upper fords.—General Greene passes the Dan.—Earl Cornwallis marches to Hillsborough, — and erects the King's standard.—General Greene repasses the Dan.—Earl Cornwallis crosses Haw river.—Skirmish near Allamance.—Affair at Wetzell's mill.—Earl Cornwallis passes a branch of Deep river.*

**D**URING the preparations for the second invasion of North Caro- CHAP. IV.  
lina, emissaries had been dispatched into that province, to obtain intelligence of the force and designs of the Americans. Near the end of December information was received, that General Greene (D.) had made a division of his troops, who did not exceed one thousand four hundred men, exclusive of the militia; and, that he had committed the light infantry and Colonel Washington's cavalry to General Morgan, with directions to pass the Catawba and Broad rivers, in order to collect the militia in the districts through which he marched, and

*Movements  
of the Americans.*

(D.) Note D.

afterwards

CHAP. IV. afterwards threaten Ninety Six; whilst he conducted the other division of the continentals to Haley's ferry, on the river Pedee, to form a junction with General Caswall, and give jealousy to Camden. This appeared to be the outline of the American designs previous to the arrival of General Leslie's reinforcement. The intelligence General Greene had procured since his appointment to the southward, and the calculation of his own and the British force, might suggest the propriety of attempting to distress the frontier of South Carolina by a desultory war, till he could acquire a command sufficiently numerous and well disciplined to undertake more decisive operations. There could not be an arrangement better chosen, provided the royalists were not joined by any additional regiments; but the increase of the English army would certainly frustrate such a disposition. It is not to be supposed that General Greene would have adopted the hazardous plan of dividing and advancing his troops, if he had received authentic information of General Leslie's command being withdrawn from Virginia, and united to the force in South Carolina; because such an accession of strength would naturally produce a movement from Wyncelborough, which, if executed with tolerable rapidity, might separate the two divisions of the American army, and endanger their being totally dispersed or destroyed.

WHILST the reinforcement marched from Charles town to join the royal forces, Earl Cornwallis employed various measures, in order to acquire daily intelligence of the enemy, and to obtain a competent knowledge of the nature of the country in his front. No expence was spared to learn the state of the roads, (a.) the number of the mills, and the quantities of forage and provisions, between Broad river and

(a.) In note B.



the Catawba. This (a) information was peculiarly necessary for a general who was about to invade a province not remarkable for its fertility, and which has no navigable rivers to convey supplies to the interior parts of the country. CHAP. IV.

TRYON county presented an entrance into North Carolina, which accorded equally with the designs of Earl Cornwallis and the present position of the King's troops. Its comparative abundance, and the proofs of attachment exhibited by the inhabitants, enhanced its local recommendation. The motives for the second invasion of North Carolina may be explained in a few words. The strength of the royal army in South Carolina, near the end of the year 1780, allowed Earl Cornwallis the experiment of an enterprize, which the loyalists and British troops in America, as well as the administration in England, supposed he could with facility accomplish. The superiority of his force, when compared with General Greene's, gave every reasonable assurance, that with proper care the latter might be destroyed, or driven over the Roanoke; when it was imagined that the loyalists, who were computed to be the greater proportion of the inhabitants, would make indefatigable exertions to render themselves independent of Congress. Such was the opinion of thousands when the King's troops prepared for this expedition: But their expectations were not verified, though the continental army was chased out of the province, and the loyal subjects were invited to repair to the King's standard at Hillsborough; it therefore becomes necessary to investigate, whether the scheme itself was visionary, or the plan to complete it injudicious; or whether the force employed was inadequate to the purpose.

(a.) In note E.

E e

IE

CHAP. IV. IF Earl Cornwallis was not equally sanguine in his expectation of final conquest, it must, however, be universally acknowledged, that the present was a favourable crisis for exertion. The strength of the King's troops, and the weakness of the enemy, strongly recommended this second invasion of North Carolina. On the junction of General Leslie, three thousand five hundred fighting (b.) men could advance into that province, besides leaving a large force on the frontier. Any advantage gained over the Americans at this period, would undoubtedly derange their projects, and give a better barrier to South Carolina and Georgia; and though the expedition was ultimately productive only of the advantage of securing (A.) old possessions, yet the attempting greater objects was justifiable, and gave a fair trial to the ardent wishes of government at home, and the confident hopes of the loyalists in America.

GENERAL Leslie, with one thousand five hundred and thirty (C.) men, was greatly advanced on his march toward the army, when the operations of the Americans to the westward of Broad river laid immediate claim to the attention of the British. General Morgan, with the continental light infantry, Colonel Washington's cavalry, and large detachments of militia, was reported to be advancing to Ninety Six. Although the fortifications were in tolerable condition at that place, and sufficiently strong to resist an assault, yet the preservation of the country in its neighbourhood was considered as so great an object for the garrison and the loyalists of the district, that Earl Cornwallis dispatched an aid-de-camp (a.) on the 1st of January, to order Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton over Broad river, with his corps of cavalry and infantry, of five hundred and fifty men, the first battalion

The British  
light troops  
cross Broad  
river.

(b.) In note B.

(A.) Note A.

(C.) Note C.

(a.) In note F.

of

of the 71st, consisting of two hundred, and two three-pounders, to CHAP. IV. counteract the designs of General Morgan, by protecting the country, and compelling him to repass Broad river. Tarleton received a letter the next day from his lordship, communicating an earnest wish, that the American commander, if within his reach, should be "pushed (b.) to " the utmost; and requiring, likewise, his opinion, whether any move of the main army (c.) would be advantageous to the service. On the receipt of this letter, he directed his course to the westward, and employed every engine to obtain intelligence of the enemy. He had not proceeded above twenty miles from Brierley's ferry, before he had undoubted proofs, that the report which occasioned the order for the light troops to march was erroneous. The secure state of Ninety Six, and the distance of General Morgan, immediately prompted Tarleton to halt the troops under his command, as well to allow time for the junction of the baggage of the different corps, which had been left on the ground when they first decamped, as to give information to Earl Cornwallis of the situation and force of Morgan, and to propose operations which required his sanction and concurrence.

As Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton had been entrusted with the outline of the future campaign, he thought it incumbent on him to lay before his lordship, by letter, the probable accounts of Morgan's (a.) force and designs; the necessity of waiting for the baggage of the light troops in their present situation, as any future delay might prove a great inconvenience to the army; and the plan of operation which struck him as equally necessary and advantageous for the King's service. He represented the course to be taken, which fortunately corresponded with the scheme of the campaign: He mentioned the

(b.) In note F.

(c.) In note F.

(a.) In note G.

CHAP. IV. mode (b.) of proceeding to be employed against General Morgan : He proposed the same (c.) time, for the army and the light troops to commence their march : He explained the point (d.) to be attained by the main body : And he declared, that it should be his endeavour to push the enemy into that quarter. (e.)

Earl Cornwallis moves from Weymouth.

EARL Cornwallis approving the (a.) suggested operations, the light troops only waited for their baggage to proceed. Two hundred men of the 7th regiment, who were chiefly recruits, and designed for the garrison at Ninety Six, and fifty dragoons of the 17th regiment, brought the waggons from Brierley's to camp. On their arrival, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton crossed Indian, and afterwards Dunken creek, though both were considerably swelled by a late fall of rain : He hourly received accounts of the increase of Morgan's corps, which induced him to request Earl Cornwallis, who was moving on the east of Broad river, to give him permission to retain the 7th regiment, that the enemy might be sooner pressed over Broad river, or some favourable situation obtained, whence great advantage might be derived from additional numbers : Having received leave to carry forwards the 7th regiment, he continued his course on the 12th to the westward, in order to discover the most practicable fords for the passage of the Ennoree and Tyger, and that the infantry might avoid the inconveniences they had undergone in crossing the other waters. An useful expedient was concealed under this apparent necessity. In proportion to the approach of the light troops to the sources of the rivers, and the progress of the main army to King's mountain, General Morgan's danger would increase, if he remained to the westward of Broad river. The

(b.) In note G.

(c.) In note G.

(d.) In note G.

(e.) In note G.

(a.) In note H.

Ennoree and Tyger were passed on the 14th, above the Cherokee road, CHAP. IV. and Tarleton obtained information in the evening that General Morgan guarded all the fords upon the Pacolet. About the same time Earl Cornwallis advertised Tarleton, that the main army (a.) had reached Bull's run, and that General Leslie had surmounted the difficulties which had hitherto retarded his march. At this crisis Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton assured Earl Cornwallis that he would endeavour to pass the Pacolet, purposely to force General Morgan to retreat towards Broad river, and requested his lordship to proceed up the eastern bank without delay, because such a movement might perhaps admit of co-operation, and would undoubtedly stop the retreat of the Americans.

ON the 15th circumstantial intelligence was procured by Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton of the different guards stationed on the Pacolet. A march was commenced in the evening towards the iron works, which are situated high upon the river; but in the morning the course was altered, and the light troops secured a passage within six miles of the enemy's camp. As soon as the corps were assembled beyond the Pacolet, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton thought it advisable to advance towards some log houses, formerly constructed by Major Ferguson, which lay midway between the British and Americans, and were reported to be unoccupied by General Morgan. The necessity and utility of such a proceeding appeared so strong, that some dragoons and mounted infantry were sent with all possible expedition to secure them, lest a similar opinion should strike the American commander, which might be productive of great inconvenience. Tarleton intended to take post, with his whole corps, behind the log houses, and wait the motions of the enemy; but a patrol discovering that the Americans

(a.) In note I.

CHAP. IV. were decamped, the British light troops were directed to occupy their position, because it yielded a good post, and afforded plenty of provisions, which they had left behind them, half cooked, in every part of their encampment.

PATROLES and spies were immediately dispatched to observe the Americans: The dragoons were directed to follow the enemy till dark, and the other emissaries to continue their inquiries till morning, if some material incident did not occur: Early in the night the patrols reported that General Morgan had struck into byways, tending towards Thickelle creek: A party of determined loyalists made an American colonel prisoner, who had casually left the line of march, and conducted him to the British camp: The examination of the militia colonel, and other accounts soon afterwards received, evinced the propriety of hanging upon General Morgan's rear, to impede the junction of reinforcements, said to be approaching, and likewise to prevent his passing Broad river without the knowledge of the light troops, who could perplex his design, and call in the assistance of the main army if necessity required. Other reports at midnight of a corps of mountaineers being upon the march from Green river, proved the exigency of moving to watch the enemy closely, in order to take advantage of any favourable opportunity that might offer.

ACCORDINGLY, at three o'clock in the morning on the 17th, the pickets being called in, the British troops, under the command of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, were directed to follow the route the Americans had taken the preceding evening, and the baggage and waggon were ordered to remain upon their ground till daybreak, under the protection of a detachment from each corps. Three companies of light infantry, supported by the legion infantry, formed the advance;  
the



the 7th regiment, the guns, and the 1st battalion of the 71st, composed the center; and the cavalry and mounted infantry brought up the rear. The ground which the Americans had passed being broken, and much intersected by creeks and ravines, the march of the British troops during the darkness was exceedingly slow, on account of the time employed in examining the front and flanks as they proceeded. Before dawn, Thickelle creek was passed, when an advanced guard of cavalry was ordered to the front. The enemy's patrol approaching, was pursued and overtaken: Two troops of dragoons, under Captain Ogilvie, of the legion, were then ordered to reinforce the advanced guard, and to harass the rear of the enemy. The march had not continued long in this manner, before the commanding officer in front reported that the American troops were halted and forming. The guides were immediately consulted relative to the ground which General Morgan then occupied, and the country in his rear. These people described both with great perspicuity: They said that the woods were open and free from swamps; that the part of Broad river, just above the place where King's creek joined the stream, was about six miles distant from the enemy's left flank, and that the river, by making a curve to the westward, ran parallel to their rear.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Tarleton having attained a position, which he certainly might deem advantageous, on account of the vulnerable situation of the enemy, and the supposed vicinity of the two British corps on the east and west of Broad river, did not hesitate to undertake those measures which the instructions of his commanding officer imposed, and his own judgement, under the present appearances, equally recommended. He ordered the legion dragoons to drive in the militia parties who covered the front, that General Morgan's disposition might be conveniently and distinctly inspected. He discovered that the American

Action at the  
Cowpens.

CHAP. IV. rican commander had formed a front line of about one thousand militia, and had composed his second line and reserve of five hundred continental light infantry, one hundred and twenty of Washington's cavalry, and three hundred back woodsmen. This accurate knowledge being obtained, Tarleton desired the British infantry to disencumber themselves of every thing, except their arms and ammunition: The light infantry were then ordered to file to the right till they became equal to the flank of the American front line: The legion infantry were added to their left; and, under the fire of a three-pounder, this part of the British troops was instructed to advance within three hundred yards of the enemy. This situation being acquired, the 7th regiment was commanded to form upon the left of the legion infantry, and the other three-pounder was given to the right division of the 7th: A captain, with fifty dragoons, was placed on each flank of the corps, who formed the British front line, to protect their own, and threaten the flanks of the enemy: The 1st battalion of the 71st was desired to extend a little to the left of the 7th regiment, and to remain one hundred and fifty yards in the rear. This body of infantry, and near two hundred cavalry, composed the reserve. During the execution of these arrangements, the animation of the officers and the alacrity of the soldiers afforded the most promising assurances of success. The disposition being completed, the front line received orders to advance; a fire from some of the recruits of the 7th regiment was suppressed, and the troops moved on in as good a line as troops could move at open files: The militia, after a short contest, were dislodged, and the British approached the continentals. The fire on both sides was well supported, and produced much slaughter: The cavalry on the right were directed to charge the enemy's left: They executed the order with great gallantry, but were drove back by the fire of the reserve, and by a charge of Colonel Washington's cavalry.

As

As the contest between the British infantry in the front line and the continentals seemed equally balanced, neither retreating, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton thought the advance of the 71st into line, and a movement of the cavalry in reserve to threaten the enemy's right flank, would put a victorious period to the action. No time was lost in performing this manoeuvre. The 71st were desired to pass the 7th before they gave their fire, and were directed not to entangle their right flank with the left of the other battalion. The cavalry were ordered to incline to the left, and to form a line, which would embrace the whole of the enemy's right flank. Upon the advance of the 71st, all the infantry again moved on : The continentals and back woodsmen gave ground : The British rushed forwards : An order was dispatched to the cavalry to charge : An unexpected fire at this instant from the Americans, who came about as they were retreating, stopped the British, and threw them into confusion. Exertions to make them advance were useless. The part of the cavalry which had not been engaged fell likewise into disorder, and an unaccountable panic extended itself along the whole line. The Americans, who before thought they had lost the action, taking advantage of the present situation, advanced upon the British troops, and augmented their astonishment. A general flight ensued. Tarleton sent directions to his cavalry to form about four hundred yards to the right of the enemy, in order to check them, whilst he endeavoured to rally the infantry to protect the guns. The cavalry did not comply with the order, and the effort to collect the infantry was ineffectual : Neither promises nor threats could gain their attention ; they surrendered or dispersed, and abandoned the guns to the artillery men, who defended them for some time with exemplary resolution. In this last stage of defeat Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton made another struggle to bring his cavalry to the charge. The weight of such an attack might yet retrieve the day, the enemy being much broken by their late

CHAP. IV. rapid advance; but all attempts to restore order, recollection, or courage, proved fruitless. Above two hundred dragoons forsook their leader, and left the field of battle. Fourteen officers and forty horsemen were, however, not unmindful of their own reputation, or the situation of their commanding officer. Colonel Washington's cavalry were charged, and driven back into the continental infantry by this handful of brave men. Another party of the Americans, who had seized upon the baggage of the British troops on the road from the late encampment, were dispersed, and this detachment retired towards Broad river unmolested. On the route Tarleton heard with infinite grief and astonishment, that the main army had not advanced beyond Turkey (a.) creek: He therefore directed his course to the south east, in order to reach Hamilton's ford, near the mouth of Bullock creek, whence he might communicate with Earl Cornwallis.

THE number of the killed and wounded, in the action at the Cowpens, amounted to near three hundred on both sides, officers and men inclusive: This loss was almost equally shared; but the Americans took two pieces of cannon, the colours of the 7th regiment, and near four hundred prisoners.

A DIFFUSE comment upon this affair would be equally useless and tiresome: Two observations will be sufficient: One will contain the general circumstances which affected the plan of the campaign, and the other the particular incidents of the action. It appears that Earl Cornwallis intended to invade North Carolina: Before his march commenced, an irruption was made by the enemy into the western part of South Carolina: In order to expel hostility from that quarter, he di-

(a.) In note K.

rested Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to proceed with a corps, and “push CHAR. IV.  
 “the enemy to the utmost;” at the same time desiring to know if any  
 movement of the main army would be useful. Tarleton, finding the  
 Americans not so far advanced as was reported, halted his troops, that  
 he might convey his opinion, by letter, to his commanding officer.  
 He proposed that the army under Earl Cornwallis, and the corps of  
 light troops, should commence their march at the same time for King’s  
 mountain, and that he would endeavour to destroy the enemy, or push  
 them over Broad river to that place. Earl Cornwallis replied, that  
 Tarleton perfectly understood his intentions. After three days move  
 from Wynnesborough, his lordship sent intelligence that General (I.)  
 Leslie was retarded by the waters, and that he imagined the light  
 troops must be equally impeded. Tarleton shortened his marches till  
 he heard that the reinforcement was out of the swamps, though he  
 had more difficulties of that nature to struggle against than could possi-  
 bly be found between the Catawba and Broad rivers: This delay being  
 occasioned by General Leslie’s corps, rather astonished him, because  
 the troops under that officer’s command were not mentioned in the first  
 proposal; and if they were deemed necessary for the combination, one  
 forced march would have brought them from the banks of the Ca-  
 tawba to the middle road, which Earl Cornwallis was then moving on,  
 between the two great rivers, and where no creeks or waters could ob-  
 struct their advance towards Tryon county. On the 14th Earl Corn-  
 wallis informed Tarleton that Leslie had surmounted his difficulties,  
 (a.) and that he imagined the enemy would not pass the Broad river,  
 though it had fallen very much. Tarleton then answered, that he  
 would try to cross the Pacolet to force them, and desired Earl Corn-  
 wallis to acquire as high a station as possible, in order to stop their re-

(I.) Note I.

(a.) In Note I.

CHAP. IV. treat. No letter, order, or intelligence, from head quarters, reached Tarleton after this reply, previous to the defeat on the 17th, and after that event he found Earl Cornwallis on Turkey creek, near twenty-five miles below the place where the action had happened. The distance between Wynnesborough and King's mountain, or Wynnesborough and Little Broad river, which would have answered the same purpose, does not exceed sixty-five miles: Earl Cornwallis commenced his march on the 7th or 8th of January. It would be mortifying to describe the advantages that might have resulted from his lordship's arrival at the concerted point, or to expatiate upon the calamities which were produced by this event. If an army is acting where no co-operation can take place, it is necessary for the commander in chief to keep as near as possible to his detachments, if such a proceeding does not interfere with a manoeuvre which in itself would decide the event of the campaign. A steady adherence to that line of conduct would prevent the misfortunes which detachments are liable to, or soften their effects. Earl Cornwallis might have conceived, that, by attending to the situation of the enemy, and of the country, and by covering his light troops, he would, in all probability, have alternately brought Generals Morgan and Greene into his power by co-operative movements: He might also have concluded, that all his parties that were beaten in the country, if they had no corps to give them instant support or refuge, must be completely destroyed. Many instances of this nature occurred during the war. The fall of Ferguson was a recent and melancholy example: That catastrophe put a period to the first expedition into North Carolina; and the affair of the Cowpens overshadowed the commencement of the second.

THE particular incidents relative to the action arise from an examination of the orders, the march, the comparative situation of Morgan



gan and Tarleton, the disposition, and the defeat. The orders were CHAP. IV.  
positive. The march was difficult, on account of the number of  
creeks and rivers; and circuitous, in consequence of such impediments: The Pacolet was passed by stratagem: The Americans to  
avoid an action, left their camp, and marched all night: The ground  
which General Morgan had chosen for the engagement, in order to  
cover his retreat to Broad river, was disadvantageous for the Americans, and convenient for the British: An open wood was certainly as  
proper a place for action as Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton could desire; America does not produce many more suitable to the nature of the  
troops under his command. The situation of the enemy was desperate in case of misfortune; an open country, and a river in their rear, must have thrown them entirely into the power of a superior cavalry; whilst the light troops, in case of repulse, had the expectation of a  
neighbouring force to protect them from destruction. The disposition  
was planned with coolness, and executed without embarrassment. The  
defeat of the British must be ascribed either to the bravery or good  
conduct of the Americans; to the loose manner of forming which had  
always been practised by the King's troops in America; or to some  
unforeseen event, which may throw terror into the most disciplined  
soldiers, or counteract the best-concerted designs. The extreme extension of the files always exposed the British regiments and corps,  
and would, before this unfortunate affair, have been attended with  
detrimental effect, had not the multiplicity of lines with which they,  
generally fought rescued them from such imminent danger. If infantry who are formed very open, and only two deep, meet with opposition, they can have no stability: But when they experience an unexpected shock, confusion will ensue, and flight, without immediate  
support, must be the inevitable consequence. Other circumstances, perhaps, contributed to so decisive a rout, which, if the military system

CHAP. IV. admitted the same judicious regulation as the naval, a court martial would, perhaps, have disclosed. Public trials of commanding officers after unfortunate affairs, are as necessary to one service as the other, and might, in some instances, be highly beneficial to the military profession. Influenced by this idea, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, some days after the action, required Earl Cornwallis's approbation of his proceedings, or his leave to retire till inquiry could be instituted, to investigate his conduct. The noble earl's decided support of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's management of the King's troops, previous to and during the action, is fully expressed in a letter (L.) from his lordship.

General Leslie joins Earl Cornwallis.

ABOVE two hundred cavalry who had fled to the main army, and several other fugitives, joined Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton the day after the action, at Hamilton's ford. Major-general Leslie's corps marched into Earl Cornwallis's camp on the morning of the (a.) 18th: The 19th, the army, with the cavalry on their left flank, moved towards King's creek: The 20th, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton was directed to pass Broad river with the dragoons and the yagers, to obtain intelligence of General Morgan, and to give protection to the fugitives who might yet have escaped the power of the victorious Americans. He recrossed the river in the evening, having received information, that Morgan, soon after the action, had quitted the field of battle, to pass his corps and the prisoners at the high fords on Broad river, leaving the wounded under the protection of a flag of truce. This news induced Earl Cornwallis to cross Buffalo creek and Little Broad river, in hopes of intercepting General Morgan; but the celerity made use of by the Americans, after their unexpected advantage

Pursuit of General Morgan.

(L.) Note L.

(a.) In note R.

at

at the Cowpens, enabled them to evade his lordship's army, and CHAP. IV.  
 reach (a.) the Catawba. In the mean time, General Greene appointed <sup>Morgan</sup>  
 the eastern bank of that river for the place of rendezvous of the <sup>passes the Ca-</sup> ~~tawba river.~~  
 militia, and to effect a junction, if possible, of the continentals. In  
 order to complete his plan, he prepared to dispute the passage of the  
 British, with General Morgan's (b.) division and the militia, till the  
 other corps of continentals could, by forced marches, reach the upper  
 parts of North Carolina.

. THE King's troops, after their ineffectual pursuit, pointed their  
 course towards the Catawba: The train of waggons that now attended  
 them met with great obstacles on the march, which considerably im-  
 peded the progress of the army. On the 25th, (b.) a halt was made  
 at Ransfoure's mills, for the purpose of destroying all the baggage and  
 carriages, except such as were absolutely necessary. Earl Cornwallis  
 reduced the size and quantity of his own baggage, and this laudable  
 example was followed by the general and other officers under his com-  
 mand. After adopting this measure, so necessary for the prosecution  
 of offensive operations, the army proceeded towards the Catawba. Pa-  
 troles were dispatched to reconnoitre the neighbouring fords: Par-  
 ties of continentals and militia were discovered on the opposite banks:  
 Intelligence was likewise obtained of the arrival of General Greene,  
 with an escort of American dragoons, at Beatty's ford; and, that his  
 troops were advancing by rapid marches from the Pedee. The situa-  
 tion of the public fords rendering them formidable, inhabitants and  
 spies were employed to discover the state of the private passes through  
 the river, that the main column of the army might attempt some  
 place not strongly guarded, whilst a detachment, with great demon-

(a.) In note N.

(b.) In note N.

(b.) In note R.

CHAP. IV. stration, occupied the attention of the Americans at the most frequented and shallowest part of the Catawba.

ON the evening of the 31st of January, a large proportion of the King's troops received orders to be in readiness to march at one o'clock in the morning; and Colonel Webster was directed to move at day-break, with the 33d, the second battalion of the 71st, Hamilton's corps, the yagers, the six pounders, and all the waggons, to Beatty's ford. At the time appointed, Earl Cornwallis commanded the guides to conduct him, with the principal part of the army (c.) and two three-pounders, to M'Cowan's, six miles to the southward of the public ford. Owing to the intricacy of the roads, and the darkness of the morning, one of the three pounders was overset, and for some time caused a separation of the 23d regiment, the cavalry, and the artillery men, from the main body. The brigade of guards, and the regiment of Bose, reached the river before dawn; and it evidently appeared, by the fires on the opposite bank, that a detachment of the enemy were ready to contest the passage. Brigadier-general O'Hara formed the guards into column, and directed them to move forwards, and approach the Americans without firing. As soon as the light company entered the water, supported by the grenadiers and the two battalions, the enemy commenced a galling and constant fire, which was steadily received by the guards, without being returned. The column advanced without the smallest halt, though the soldiers were frequently above their middle in water; and a rapid stream, upwards of five hundred yards wide, was passed in the face of an enemy with great gallantry (d.) and resolution. The attack of the light and grenadier companies, as soon as they reached the land, dispersed the

The King's  
troops pass  
the Catawba.

(c.) In note R.

(d.) In note R.

Americans,

Americans, who left their leader, General Davidson, dead upon the spot, and about forty men killed and wounded. Lieutenant-colonel Hall, of the light infantry, fell as he quitted the stream. The guards had very few men killed, and only thirty-six wounded, on this trying occasion. CHAP. IV.

THE regiment of Bose, the 23d, the three pounders, and the cavalry, followed in succession. When the passage was completed, Earl Cornwallis directed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton (e.) to move forwards with his own corps and the 23d regiment, to attack the rear of the camp at Beatty's, in case the Americans had not quitted that position : But as that was looked upon as the probable consequence of the firing at M'Cowan's, upon finding the ford open for Colonel Webster, he was instructed to make a patrol into the country, to gain intelligence of the enemy. The advanced dragoons soon brought some prisoners to Tarleton, who informed him, that the different guards upon the fords had quitted the river, and were making a precipitate retreat. A heavy rain and bad roads preventing the progress of the infantry, the 23d was posted about five miles east from Beatty's ford, on the main route leading to Salisbury, and the pursuit was continued with the cavalry : They had not proceeded above three miles, when Tarleton gained intelligence, that the fugitives from the fords, and other parties of militia from the counties of Rohan and Mecklenburgh, were to assemble at two o'clock in the afternoon at Tarrant's tavern. Although the report of the distance and the numbers was contrary to his wishes, he reflected, that the time was advantageous to make impression upon the militia ; that the weather, on account of a violent rain, was favourable for the project ; and that a retreat was always practi-

(e.) In note R.

CHAP. IV. cable with a superior body of cavalry. Actuated by these considerations, he determined, by a rapid march, to approach the enemy : The militia were vigilant, and were prepared for an attack. In this critical situation, Tarleton resolved to hazard one charge, and, if unsuccessful, to order a retreat : When at a proper distance, he desired his soldiers to advance, and *remember the Cowpens*. Animated by this reproach, a furious onset ensued : They broke through the center with irresistible velocity, killed near fifty on the spot, wounded many in the pursuit, and dispersed above five hundred of the enemy. Small parties of dragoons were detached in every direction, to continue their confusion, and prevent their assembling : The remainder of the cavalry halted at Tarrant's. Seven men were killed and wounded, and twenty horses fell, by the first fire of the enemy. This exertion of the cavalry succeeding the gallant action of the guards in the morning, diffused such a terror among the (f.) inhabitants, that the King's troops passed through the most hostile part of North Carolina without a shot from the militia. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, on the return of the detachments, fell back with his corps and some prisoners, to join the army, five miles from Beatty's ford.

Affair at  
Tarrant's.

SOME papers belonging to Colonel Locke, who was killed in the late affair, discovered General Greene's solicitude (M.) for the assembling of the militia. On his first arrival in Mecklenburgh and Rohan, he thought those counties would supply force sufficient, with the aid of Morgan's corps, to prevent the King's troops passing the Catawba ; but if the inhabitants joined their assistance after that event, he had full confidence in the ability of General Pickens, to harass and impede the progress of the King's troops, till he placed the districts be-

(f.) In note R.

(M.) Note M.



yond the Yadkin in a state of defence, by calling out their militia, and effecting a junction of the divided continentals. The design of the American commander being in some degree frustrated, Earl Cornwallis proceeded with the royal army on the 2d of Februry, to endeavour to render the whole abortive. He reached Salisbury on the 4th, where some emissaries informed him, that General Morgan was at the Trading ford, but had not passed the river: Brigadier-general O'Hara was directed to march to that place, with the guards, the regiment of Bose, and the cavalry. Owing to rain, darkness, and bad roads, the troops did not arrive at the Yadkin till near midnight. After a skirmish (c.) it was discovered that Morgan's corps had crossed in the evening, leaving a detachment of riflemen to protect some wagons and stores belonging to country people, who were flying with their effects, to avoid the British army. General O'Hara having made a fruitless (g.) effort to get possession of the flats and large boats upon the river, took post with the infantry on the ground which commanded the ford and the ferry, and sent back the cavalry to Salisbury. A heavy rain swelled the Yadkin the succeeding day and night, and General Morgan remained on the eastern bank, facing the British troops.

CHAP. IV.  
Earl Cornwallis  
marches to  
Salisbury.

Skirmish at  
the Trading  
ford.

EARL Cornwallis finding that he could not attempt the Trading ford, on account of the advantageous position of the enemy and depth of the river, detached the cavalry, supported by the 23d regiment, on the afternoon of the 6th, to reconnoitre Grant's creek, and the country beyond it. Some militia broke the bridge on the creek, but retired on the approach of the British. As soon as the bridge was repaired, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton made a long patrol with the

(c.) In note N.

(g.) In note R.

G g 2

cavalry,

CHAP. IV. cavalry, and finding no obstacles to impede the course of the main army to the upper fords, and no probability of opposition in crossing the Yadkin above the forks, he returned towards his infantry, and sent a written report of his discoveries to Salisbury. On this news, Earl Cornwallis directed General O'Hara to quit his position at the Trading ford, and return to head quarters; which being accomplished, the royal army marched from Salisbury, and passed the different creeks on the road to the shallow fords, where they crossed the Yadkin, and entered the Moravian settlement.

Earl Cornwallis moves to the upper fords.

THE mild and hospitable disposition of the inhabitants, being assisted by the well-cultivated and fruitful plantations in their possession, afforded abundant and seasonable supplies to the King's troops during their passage through this district. Earl Cornwallis, wishing to intercept the Americans, and force them to action to the southward of the Roanoke, proceeded from Salem towards the head of Haw river, and on his march gained intelligence of their having composed a formidable (d.) corps of light troops, consisting of Lee's, Bland's, and Washington's cavalry, the continental light infantry, and some riflemen, in order to watch his motions, and retard his progress, whilst General Greene removed the stores and heavy baggage of the continental army into Virginia, and hastened the remainder of his troops to the river Dan, on the frontier of that province. At the cross roads, near the Reedy fork, the advanced guard of the British light troops was attacked by Colonel Lee's dragoons, who were repulsed with some loss; but an officer of the advanced guard continuing the pursuit too far, was made prisoner, with three of his followers. The bridge on Reedy fork being broken down, retarded for some hours the ad-

(d.) In note N.

vance

vance of Earl Cornwallis, who afterwards crossed Troublesome creek, CHAP. IV. and persevered in the direction to the high fords of the Dan. On the road many skirmishes took place between the British and the American light troops, without great loss to either party, or any impediment to the progress of the main body. Owing to an excellent disposition, which was attended with some fortunate contingencies, General Greene passed the whole army over the river Dan on the 14th, General Greene passes the Dan. near Country-line creek, without their receiving any material detriment from the King's troops. Every measure of the Americans, during their march from the Catawba to Virginia, was judiciously designed and vigorously executed. The British proceeded without intermission to Boyd's ferry, (h.) where they found some works evacuated, which had been constructed to cover the retreat of the enemy, who six hours before had finished their passage, and were then encamped on the opposite bank.

THE continentals being chased out of North Carolina, and the militia being awed and impeded from collecting, Earl Cornwallis thought the opportunity favourable for assembling the King's friends. With this intention he retired from the Dan, and proceeded by easy marches towards Hillsborough, the capital of the province. On this movement the King's troops gradually recovered from the fatigue they had undergone on the late march, which they had borne with exemplary patience and fortitude. Earl Cornwallis, on his arrival at Hillsborough, published a proclamation, (O.) inviting all loyal subjects to repair to the King's standard, (i.) and to take an active part in assisting him to restore order and constitutional government. Earl Cornwallis marches to Hillsborough, And erects the King's standard.

(h.) In note R.

(O.) Note O.

(i.) In note R.

DURING

CHAP. IV. DURING these operations, Generals Sumpter and Marion endeavoured to disturb the communications, and excite insurrections, in South Carolina. Lord Rawdon immediately suppressed all the enemy's attempts within his reach. A body of continentals, under Colonel Lee, had met with some success on the extremity of the eastern border, where the garrison of George town were surprised: But this part of the frontier was relieved by the recall of the continentals to the northward, and George town was again occupied by the British.

PREVIOUS to the movement of the royal army from Wynneshorough, Earl Cornwallis instructed Lieutenant-colonel Balfour, to send a detachment from Charles town, under the convoy of a naval force, to take possession of Wilmington, in North Carolina. Information was received about this time, that Major Craig, of the 82d, with the flank companies of his regiment, and two hundred men, had proceeded up Cape-Fear river with military supplies, and had fortified himself in that post. From Hillsborough, Earl Cornwallis opened correspondence with Wilmington, and desired the officer commanding at that place to report to him the state of the country in his neighbourhood, and to gather as early and complete information as possible, of the practicability of establishing a water communication between his garrison and Cross creek.

SOON after the King's standard was erected at Hillsborough, many hundred inhabitants of the surrounding districts rode into the British camp, to talk over the proclamation, inquire the news of the day, and take a view of the King's troops. The generality of these visitors seemed desirous of peace, but averse to every exertion that might tend to procure it. They acknowledged the continentals were chased out of the province; but they declared, they soon expected them to return,

turn, and the dread of violence and persecution prevented their taking a decided part in a cause which yet appeared dangerous. Some of the most zealous professors of attachment, who were denominated tories, from having publicly avowed their sentiments, promised to raise corps and regiments for the King's service; but their followers and dependents protesting against military restraint and subordination, numbers were never found to complete their establishments. Another circumstance deserves mention, which undoubtedly had material influence at this period. Owing to a variety of causes, the King's troops had never made any serious effort to assist the well affected in North Carolina since the commencement of the war. The length of time that had elapsed since Governor Martin quitted the province, and the variety of calamities which had attended the exertions of the loyalists, had not only reduced their numbers and weakened their attachment, but had confirmed the power and superiority of the adverse party, and had occasioned a general depression in the King's friends, which would not easily have been shaken off in the most prosperous times, and therefore was not likely to be warmed into action with the present appearance of public affairs.

NOTWITHSTANDING the indifference or the terror of the loyalists was visible at Hillsborough, Earl Cornwallis entertained hopes of receiving reinforcements from the inhabitants between the Haw and the Deep river. On the 23d (k.) Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton was detached with two hundred cavalry, one hundred and fifty men of Colonel Webster's brigade, and one hundred yagers, to give countenance to the friends of government in that district: A family of the name of Pyle had made preparation for an insurrection in that quarter, and had

(k.) In note R.

CHAP. IV. communicated their intentions to Earl Cornwallis, who assured them that a British force should be sent to give them protection whilst they assembled, and at the same time requested them to march to Hillsborough, or to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's corps, as soon as they had collected a body. On the 24th the British detachment passed the Haw, and dispersed a party of American militia, who had united to counteract the intentions of the loyalists. Tarleton was told by the prisoners, that a continental force was expected in the neighbourhood, which intelligence induced him to send to the Pyles to join him without delay. In the course of the day particular and authentic information was obtained of Colonel Lee's cavalry having passed Haw river to meet a corps of mountaineers under Colonel Preston, for the purpose of intimidating or dispersing the King's friends. This report made Tarleton repeat his orders to the Pyles for an instant junction of the numbers already assembled, that he might proceed against either Lee or Preston before they united. Spies were sent to gain intelligence of both, and some satisfactory accounts had arrived, when several wounded loyalists entered the British camp, and complained to Tarleton of the cruelty of his dragoons. Though the accusation was erroneous, their sufferings were evident, and the cause from whence they proceeded was soon afterwards discovered. Colonel Pyle, and two hundred of his followers, being all equally ignorant of the customs of war, had not complied with the orders they received, and though forewarned of their danger, thought fit to pay visits to their kindred and acquaintance before they repaired to the British camp: Inspired by whiskey and the novelty of their situation, they unfortunately prolonged their excursions, till, meeting a detachment of dragoons, whom they supposed to be British, they received a fierce and unexpected attack, in answer to their amicable salutation of "God save the King," and many of them experienced inhuman barbarity; when discovering

their



their mistake, they supplicated for mercy. Patrols were sent out to learn the course the American dragoons had taken after this event, and assistance was dispatched to the wounded loyalists. After dark information was procured of the distance and position of the mountaineers; and when the British troops were under arms at midnight, to proceed towards their encampment, an express arrived from Earl Cornwallis with an order (P.) for Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's return to Hillsborough.

THE exertion made by the noble Earl to call forth the loyalists in North Carolina, since the absence of the continental army, had excited the attention of General Greene, who endeavoured to obstruct the design, by privately employing the active emissaries of his party, till he had collected a sufficient force to venture over the Dan, and give public support to the American cause. The report of his advance soon made the luke-warm friends abandon the British camp, and prompted Earl Cornwallis to call in his detachments. The express from head quarters obliged Tarleton to forego his enterprise, and return immediately to the general, who had taken a new position out of the town, on the banks of the river Eno. The American commander, though considerably reinforced by state troops, by back woodsmen, and by militia, did not intend to approach and offer battle to the King's troops in the present situation of the two armies. His plan was not to venture upon action without manifest superiority and advantage; but to keep alive the courage of his party, to depress that of the loyalists, to wait for the additional assistance which he expected, and to harass the foragers and detachments of the British.

General  
Greene re-  
crosses the  
Dan.

(P.) Note P.

H h.

ALTHOUGH

CHAP. IV. ALTHOUGH the King's standard had been erected at Hillsborough, and the loyalists of North Carolina invited to repair to it, Earl Cornwallis did not deem it judicious (1.) to remain long in that situation after General Greene returned from Virginia. On the 26th the royal army marched by the left, passed through Hillsborough, and pointed their course towards the Haw. The fruitfulness of the country, and the protection of a body of the King's friends, supposed to reside in that district, were the reasons assigned for this movement. The Haw was passed on the 27th, and the King's troops took post near Allamance creek and Stinking quarter. If General Greene lost the confidence of his friends by quitting North Carolina when pursued by a superior force, Earl Cornwallis likewise relinquished his claim to the superiority of the British arms by abandoning Hillsborough upon the return of the American general into the province; and undoubtedly both officers from this period placed their future hopes in their own military conduct, and rested the event of the campaign upon the operations of their respective armies.

Earl Corn-  
wallis passes  
Haw river.

As soon as General Greene was informed of the position of the main body of the King's troops near Allamance, and that their advanced guard extended a little way towards Deep river, he crossed the Haw near its source, and took post between Troublesome creek and Reedy fork. The two armies did not long remain in this situation. The British cavalry were ordered on the 2d of March to forage about three miles in front of their encampment. Captain Hovenden, of the legion, who commanded the covering party, observing some of the American dragoons in the neighbourhood of the plantations where he was directed to collect forage, rode forwards to examine more closely;

(1.) In note R.

when,

when, perceiving the enemy's infantry, he dispatched the foragers to camp without their burdens, and, on his return, reported the circumstances he had discovered. This intelligence induced Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to make a patrol with his whole corps, which consisted of the cavalry, a few mounted infantry, the light company of the guards, and one hundred and fifty men of Colonel Webster's brigade, after having conveyed to Earl Cornwallis, by express, his reason for such a proceeding. The approach to the ground where the enemy were described to have been seen proving unfit for the operations of cavalry, Tarleton directed the infantry to form the advance, and to explore the thick woods upon the flanks with great attention. The light company of the guards, commanded by Captain Dundas, led the column, the infantry of the line followed the guards, and the cavalry brought up the foragers in the rear, till the country would allow the dragoons to move on to the front. When the British drew near to the plantations which were to furnish the forage, a heavy fire from some thickets on each side of the road discovered the situation of the enemy. The guards formed with their usual alacrity, and Captain Ingram, of the 33d regiment, who commanded the hundred and fifty men of Webster's brigade, was directed to dress his left by their right, whilst the cavalry moved to his right, where the country appeared most favourable for their exertions. The gallantry of the British troops, after a short conflict, dislodged and dispersed a corps of eight hundred men, composed of Lee's legion, Washington's dragoons, and Preston's backwoodsmen. The loss of the Americans was confined principally to the woodsmen; the continentals retreated early, and did not wait the charge of the British dragoons, who were much impeded in their advance by a thick wood and high rails, which prevented the action from being more general and decisive.

of Skirmish  
near Allamance.

CHAP. IV. THE pursuit was restrained on account of the various roads by which the enemy's cavalry could escape, and in consequence of the report of prisoners, who acknowledged that General Greene was moving with the American army to the southward of the Reedy fork. Though the continentals suffered little in this affair, numbers of the riflemen were killed and wounded; and being abandoned by their cavalry, the rest were totally dispersed. The loss of the British amounted to one officer wounded, and twenty men killed and wounded, which fell principally upon the guards. During the time that the dragoons were collecting their trusses, an express was sent to Earl Cornwallis to advise him of the movement of the enemy; and the forage being completed, the light troops fell back to their former encampment; where they found Major De Buy, with the yagers, the regiment of Bose, and two pieces of cannon, Earl Cornwallis having advanced this support as soon as he heard the musketry in front.

THE next morning Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton was directed to move a corps, consisting of two hundred cavalry, the light company of the guards, eighty yagers, one hundred and fifty men of Webster's brigade, two six-pounders, and the regiment of Bose, six miles to the front of the British army, into the neighbourhood of the enemy. He chose a strong post for his numbers. The intermediate country was foraged during the day: In the evening Tarleton was desired to maintain his position till morning, unless he found that he was likely to be attacked by a force too considerable to resist: The advanced post, in this delicate and ticklish situation, was felt all night by the enemy, and the patrols were frequently driven in. The forage being completed, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton withdrew, and joined the army in the morning.

ABOUT this period Earl Cornwallis and General Greene entered into CHAP. IV. correspondence for the exchange of prisoners belonging to the southern armies. Captain Brodrick, who was empowered to treat by the former, on account of some difficulties which arose, could not bring the business to a conclusion : It dropped for some time ; and being afterwards revived, was finished by Captain Cornwallis, on the part of the British, and Colonel Carrington as agent for the Americans, when the customary tariff was signed, and accordingly executed.

ON the 5th information was conveyed to head quarters of the principal part of General Greene's army being situated near Guildford court house, and that the light troops and militia extended down Reedy fork and towards the Haw river, to protect the country, and guard the communications with Virginia, and the upper parts of North Carolina. Several reports confirming the validity of this intelligence, Earl Cornwallis determined to move the next day to disturb the enemy's (a.) communications, and derange their projects. (m.) Early in the morning he passed the Allamance : The light troops led the column, supported by Colonel Webster's brigade : The regiment of Bose was followed by the brigade of guards ; and Hamilton's corps, with the waggons, brought up the rear. The British dragoons soon pushed Colonel Lee's cavalry from their advanced situation : They retired to Wetzell's mill on the Reedy fork : Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton discovered the enemy to be in force at that place, and reported the circumstance to Earl Cornwallis, who directed Colonel Webster to form his brigade into line with the light company of the guards and the yagers. This disposition being made, the front line advanced, the rest of the King's troops remaining in column. The enemy did not oppose the right

*Affair at Wetzell's mill.*

(a.) In note Q.

(m.) In note R.

CHAP. IV. wing of the British so steadily as the left: The 23d and 71st moved forwards to the creek without any great impediment; and the ardent bravery of the 33d and the light company of the guards soon dislodged them from their strong position. The infantry mounted the hill above the creek, and dispersed the Americans so effectually, that the cavalry could only collect a few stragglers from the woods in front. The militia who guarded this pass had upwards of one hundred men killed, wounded, and taken. The killed and wounded of the British amounted to about thirty.

IF the design had been completed with the same energy with which it was commenced, the happiest consequences might have resulted from it. An immediate movement of the King's troops across High-rock ford might, at this period, have produced various and decisive events. Such a manœuvre (b.) might have intercepted the American stores and reinforcements, then approaching from Hillsborough and Virginia; might have interrupted the retreat of the American army, or forced the continentals to hazard an action without the assistance of their eighteen-months men and militia. The news of Earl Cornwallis's march made General Greene decamp precipitately, in order to proceed towards the Haw for the protection of his (c.) stores and reinforcements: Intelligence was obtained of this circumstance by the express falling into the hands of a British legion dragoon, who conducted him to Earl Cornwallis with his dispatches. But notwithstanding these weighty considerations, it was strenuously urged to his lordship, that a move towards Deep river would cover the King's friends, and that the army had not sufficient provisions to proceed into the country beyond the Haw. In vain was it represented that the British troops could never

(b.) In note Q.

(c.) In note Q.



expect great assistance from the loyalists till they had destroyed Greene, CHAP. IV.  
and acquired a marked superiority of arms; that the present enterprise  
was momentous, and happily commenced; and that vigorous exertions  
for forty-eight hours would procure favourable opportunities of taking  
all the stores of the Americans, beating their army in detail, and secu-  
ring the event of the campaign.

THE performance of these operations, which would probably have  
averted many of the subsequent calamities, was not, however, under-  
taken, and an order was given for the King's troops to incline to the  
westward: They accordingly moved in a south-west direction for a few  
days, whilst General Greene (d.) connected, without molestation, his  
militia, his eighteen-months men, and his continentals; when he ad-  
vanced towards a good position over Reedy fork with an army of seven  
thousand men, and pushed forwards his light troops to attack the rear  
of the British as they crossed a branch of Deep river: The legion dra-  
goons repulsed the enemy's detachment with some loss, and the royal  
army encamped on the 13th at the Quakers' meeting house.

Earl Corn-  
wallis passes a  
branch of  
Deep river.

(d.) In note Q.

## NOTES



# N O T E S

## TO THE

### F O U R T H C H A P T E R.

---

#### ( N O T E A. )

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Major-general Leslie, dated camp at Wynnesborough, Nov. 12th, 1780.*

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

WE will then give our friends in North Carolina a fair trial: If they behave like men, it may be of the greatest advantage to the affairs of Britain; if they are as — as our friends to the southward, we must leave them to their fate, *and secure what we have got.*

---

#### ( N O T E B. )

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, Dec. 18th, 1780.*

IF you had not moved yesterday, Kinlock would have informed you that Leslie's fleet came over the bar on Thursday last, all  
I i
well,

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

well, and not a single missing ship; they will begin their march, I believe, this day. I expect Balfour here to-morrow or Wednesday. Lord Rawdon has received intelligence, which, however, he does not credit, that Morgan's corps and the cavalry had passed the Catawba. I have sent out every body I could engage to go; but the friends hereabout are so timid, and so stupid, that I can get no intelligence.

I APPREHEND we must first dislodge Lacey, &c. from Turkey creek, and then march up the west side of Catawba to some of the fords above the Tuckaseege. I wish you would take pains to inform yourself as thoroughly as possible of the state of the roads, (a.) provisions, forage, mills, &c. I have a good account of our recruits, in general, and hope to march from hence three thousand five hundred fighting men, leaving those I mentioned to you on the frontiers.

I TRUST you will make every possible shift rather than go much farther back, as I should then be uneasy about M<sup>r</sup> Arthur; and as soon as you have been able to get information about the country, I should be glad to see you, to talk over our march.

---

(NOTE C.)

*Extract. — From Major-general Leslie to Lord George Germain, dated Charles town, Dec. 19th, 1780.*

I DID myself the honour of writing to your lordship at sea, on board the Romulus, the 27th ult. From hard gales and contrary winds, we did not get here before the 13th instant. The troops are all arrived in great health: We met with no loss except our horses.

Com-

Commodore Gayton paid the greatest attention in keeping his fleet together, and disposing of his light armed vessels for the protection of the transports. I found orders here to march up the country with about one thousand five hundred and thirty men, to join Lord Cornwallis as soon as possible: The want of horses and waggons prevented me proceeding on my march until this day.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

---

(NOTE D.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, Dec. 26th, 1780.*

✂ A MAN came this morning from Charlotte town; his fidelity is, however, very doubtful; he says, that Greene marched on Wednesday last towards the Cheraws, to join General Caswall, and that Morgan, with his infantry and one hundred and twenty-four of Washington's light horse, crossed Biggar's ferry, on Thursday and Friday last, to join Lacey. I expect more certain intelligence before night, when you shall hear again from me.

---

(NOTE E.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, Dec. 30th, 1780.*

✂ DEAR TARLETON,

I SEND you the reports of the day. First, Morgan and Washington have passed Broad river; secondly, a brig from York says, that

Notes to the Fourth Chapter. a packet had arrived there from England, and that accounts were brought, that six regiments were under orders for embarkation, *supposed* to be destined for Carolina; thirdly, and the worst report of all, if true, that one thousand French are got into Cape Fear, who will probably fortify themselves at Wilmington, and stop our water communication with Charles town for provisions; fourthly, that an embarkation was taking place, under General Phillips, from New York, said to be destined for the Chesapeake.

LORD Rawdon mentions, that by a letter from M<sup>c</sup>Kinnon to England, he is afraid that the accoutrements for the 17th dragoons are coming up by the slow process of General Leslie's corps. Try to get (a.) all possible intelligence of Morgan.

Your's very sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

Lieut. Col. Tarleton.

---

(NOTE F.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, Jan. 2d, 1780, seven o'clock A. M.\**

✉ DEAR TARLETON,

I SENT Haldane (a.) to you last night, to desire you would pass Broad river, with the legion and the first battalion of the 71st, as soon as possible. If Morgan is still at Williams', or any where within your reach, I should wish you to push him to the utmost: I have not

\* This letter was misdated by mistake, being written on the 2d of January, 1781.

heard,



heard, except from M<sup>c</sup>Arthur, of his having cannon; nor would I believe it, unless he has it from very good authority: It is, however, possible, and Ninety Six is of so much consequence, that no time is to be lost.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

Your's sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

LET me know if you think that the moving the whole, or any part of my (c.) corps, can be of use.

---

(NOTE G.)

*Extract. — From Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to Earl Cornwallis, dated Brookes', Jan. 4th, 1781.*

MORGAN, with upwards of one thousand two hundred men, being on this side Broad river, to threaten Ninety Six, and evade your lordship's army whenever you may move, I beg leave to offer my opinion how his design may be prevented.

I must draw my baggage, the 71<sup>st</sup> and legion's are deposited at my old camp, to me. I wish it to be escorted by the 17<sup>th</sup> light dragoons, for whom horses are ready; by the yagers, if to be spared; and by the 7<sup>th</sup> regiment. The 7<sup>th</sup> I will send, as soon as I reach Ennoree, with the field piece, to Ninety Six. My encampment is now twenty miles from Brierley's, in a plentiful forage country, and I can lay in four days flour for a move.

WHEN

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

WHEN I advance, I must either destroy Morgan's (b.) corps, or push it before me over Broad river, towards King's (e.) mountain. The advance of the army should commence (when your lordship orders this (c.) corps to move) onwards for King's (d.) mountain. Frequent communication by letter can pass the Broad river. I feel myself bold in offering my opinion, as it flows from zeal for the public service, and well-grounded inquiry concerning the enemy's designs and operations.

I HAVE directed Captain M'Pherson, the bearer of this letter, who is going on the recruiting service, to deliver a letter to Lieutenant Munroe, whom I left at my camp, to bring up my baggage, but no women.

If your lordship approves of this plan, Captain M'Pherson may give my order to Lieutenant Munroe to escort to me three puncheons of rum, and some salt; and, upon their arrival, I will move.

---

(NOTE H.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Wynnesborough, January 5th, 1781, eight o'clock P. M.*

✉ DEAR TARLETON,

SINCE I wrote to you this morning, I received yours; dated yesterday, two P. M. You have exactly done what I wished you to do, and understood my (a.) intentions perfectly. Left my letter of this morning should miscarry, I repeat the most material paragraph.

\* Your baggage is ordered to Brierley's, under care of seventh regiment. I propose marching on Sunday.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

Yours sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated  
M<sup>c</sup>Alister's, January 8th, 1781.*

✉ DEAR TARLETON,

I HAVE just received yours, 7th January, three o'clock P. M.  
I shall remain here to-morrow, march to cross roads on Wednesday,  
halt Thursday, and reach Bullock's-creek meeting house Saturday.

I HAVE no news.

Yours very sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated  
M<sup>c</sup>Alister's, January 9, 1781, three P. M.*

✉ DEAR TARLETON,

NOTHING new since yesterday; some of Washington's cavalry,  
who had been escorting prisoners to Charlotte town, returned over.

\* It is necessary to inform the reader, that all words or lines in Lord Cornwallis's subsequent letters, that have these marks . . . . . under them, are in the originals in cypher.

Broad

Notes to the Fourth Chapter. Broad river. I have taken every means in my power to find out Morgan's movements, and whether he repasses Broad river.

I RECEIVED yours January 8th.

Yours very sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.

---

(NOTE I.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated M<sup>r</sup> Alister's, January 11th, 1781, P. M.*

✉ DEAR TARLETON,

I RECEIVED yours last night, of the 9th, four P. M. I fear the waters have been much more swelled since you wrote it. At present I think I shall move Saturday to cross roads. I can hear nothing of Morgan; they say there are several ferries high up Broad river where he may pass, particularly Talbot's ferry. Leslie is much retarded by the waters.

Yours sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Bull run, January 14, 1781.*

✉ L. E. S. L. I. E. is at last (a.) out of the swamps.

I HAVE

I HAVE not heard of Morgan's moving; but conclude he will not cross Broad river: I hear it has fallen very much.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

---

(NOTE K.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lord George Germain, dated  
Jan. 18, 1781.*

MY LORD,

I THINK it necessary to transmit to your lordship a copy of my letter to Sir Henry Clinton, lest the exaggerated accounts from the rebels should reach Europe before your lordship could hear from New York. I shall only say, in addition to what I have said to Sir Henry Clinton, that this event was extremely unexpected; for the greatest part of the troops that were engaged, had, upon all former occasions, behaved with the most distinguished gallantry.

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated camp on  
Turkey (a.) creek, Broad river, Jan. 18th, 1781.*

SIR,

IN my letter of the 6th of this month I had the honour to inform your excellency, that I was ready to begin my march for North Carolina, having been delayed some days by a diversion made by the enemy towards Ninety Six. General Morgan still remained on the Pacolet; his corps, by the best accounts I could get, consisted of about five hundred men, continental and Virginia state troops, and one hundred

K k

cavalry

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

cavalry under Colonel Washington, and six or seven hundred militia : But that body is so fluctuating, that it is impossible to ascertain its number within some hundreds for three days following.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Tarleton, with the legion, and corps annexed to it, consisting of about three hundred cavalry, and as many infantry, and the 1st battalion of the 71st regiment, and one three-pounder, had already passed the Broad river for the relief of Ninety Six. I therefore directed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to march on the west of Broad river, to endeavour to strike a blow at General Morgan, and at all events to oblige him to repass the Broad river ; I likewise ordered that he should take with him the 7th regiment and one three-pounder, which were marching to reinforce the garrison of Ninety Six, as long as he should think their services could be useful to him. The remainder of the army marched between the Broad river and Catawba.

As General Greene had quitted Mecklenburgh county, and crossed the Pedee, I made not the least doubt that General Morgan would retire on our advancing. The progress of the army was greatly impeded by heavy rains, which swelled the rivers and creeks ; yet Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton conducted his march so well, and got so near to General Morgan, who was retreating before him, as to make it dangerous for him to pass Broad river, and came up with him at eight o'clock of the morning of the 17th instant. Every thing now bore the most promising aspect : The enemy were drawn up in an open wood, and, having been lately joined by some militia, were more numerous ; but the different quality of the corps under Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's command, and his great superiority in cavalry, left him no room to doubt of the most brilliant success. The attack was begun by the first  
line



line of infantry, consisting of the 7th regiment, the infantry of the legion, and corps of light infantry annexed to it; a troop of cavalry was placed on each flank; the 1st battalion of the 71st, and the remainder of the cavalry, formed the reserve. The enemy's line soon gave way, and their militia quitted the field; but our troops having been thrown into some disorder by the pursuit, General Morgan's corps faced about, and gave them a heavy fire: This unexpected event occasioned the utmost confusion in the first line: The 1st battalion of the 71st, and the cavalry, were successively ordered up; but neither the exertions, entreaties, or example, of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, could prevent the panic, from becoming general. The two three-pounders were taken, and, I fear, the colours of the 7th regiment shared the same fate. In justice to the detachment of the royal artillery, I must here observe, that no terror could induce them to abandon their guns, and they were all either killed or wounded in the defence of them. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton with difficulty assembled fifty of his cavalry, who, having had time to recollect themselves, and being animated with the bravery of the officer who had so often led them to victory, charged and repulsed Colonel Washington's horse, retook the baggage of the corps, and cut to pieces the detachment of the enemy who had taken possession of it; and after destroying what they could not conveniently bring off, retired with the remainder, unmolested, to Hamilton's ford, near the mouth of Bullock's creek. The loss of our cavalry is inconsiderable; but I fear about four hundred of the infantry are either killed, wounded, or taken. I will transmit the particular account of the loss as soon as it can be ascertained.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

It is impossible to foresee all the consequences that this unexpected and extraordinary event may produce; but your excellency may be

K k 2.

assured!

Notes to the Fourth Chapter. assured that nothing but the most absolute necessity shall induce me to give up the important object of the winter's campaign.

I SHALL direct Lieutenant-colonel Balfour to transmit a copy of this letter, by the first opportunity, to the secretary of state.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE L.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Forney's, January 30, 1780.*

☞ YOU have forfeited no part of my esteem as an officer by the unfortunate event of the action of the 17th: The means you used to bring the enemy to action were able and masterly, and must ever do you honour. Your disposition was unexceptionable; the total misbehaviour of the troops could alone have deprived you of the glory which was so justly your due.

---

(NOTE M.)

*Copy. — From Major-general Greene to Colonel Locke, dated camp at Beatty's ford, January 31st, 1781.*

☞ SIR,

THE enemy are laying on the opposite side of the river, and, from every appearance, seem determined to penetrate the country.

General

General Davidson informs, he has called again and again for the people to turn out and defend their country. The inattention to his call and the backwardness of the people is unaccountable. Providence has blessed the American arms with signal success in the defeat of Tarleton, and the surprize of George town by Colonel Lee with his legion. If, after these advantages, you neglect to take the field, and suffer the enemy to overrun the country, you will deserve the miseries ever inseparable from slavery. Let me conjure you, my countrymen, to fly to arms, and to repair to head quarters without loss of time, and bring with you ten days provision. You have every thing that is dear and valuable at stake: If you will not face the approaching danger, your country is inevitably lost. On the contrary, if you repair to arms, and confine yourselves to the duties of the field, Lord Cornwallis must be certainly ruined. The continental army is marching with all possible dispatch from the Pedee to this place; but, without your aid, their arrival will be of no consequence.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

I am, S I R,

Your humble servant,

NATH. GREENE.

Colonel Locke.

---

( N O T E N . )

Philadelphia, Feb. 28th.\*

*Intelligence from the southward.*

BY authentic advices we learn, that General Morgan collected near one hundred prisoners, by parties sent out for the purpose, after the

\* Vide Remembrancer, page 302—3, part 1st, 1781.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

account he gave in his letter to General Greene, dated the 19th of January last; that upon receiving the news of Colonel Tarleton's defeat, Lord Cornwallis marched with his army in pursuit of the light infantry and prisoners. As soon as General Greene was informed of the movement of Lord Cornwallis, he put the army in motion on Pedee, and leaving it under the command of General Huger, set out to join the light infantry, (b.) in order to collect the militia, and embarrass the enemy, until he could effect a junction of his forces. General Morgan, after his attack on Colonel Tarleton, had very judiciously made forced marches up the country, and happily (a.) crossed the Catawba the evening before a great rain, which swelled the river to such a degree, as prevented the enemy from crossing for several days; during which time the prisoners were got over the Yadkin, and on their march to Dan river, which they passed, and on the 14th of this month had reached Bedford court house, in the state of Virginia.

GENERAL Greene, on the latter end of January, arrived at the light-infantry camp, at Sherard's ford, on the Catawba. The enemy were a little lower down the river, at M'Cowan's ford; and the river was still so high, that they could not cross. They had destroyed their waggons, and equipped themselves completely as light infantry. Their force consisted of between one thousand five hundred and three thousand troops, including near three hundred dragoons, and their mounted infantry. On the 1st of February they crossed at M'Cowan's ford: General Davidson, with a party of militia, was posted there, in order to oppose their passage; but he falling by the first discharge, the enemy made good their landing, and the militia retreated.

A PLACE

A PLACE of rendezvous was appointed for the militia to assemble at, who were posted at the different fords up and down the river. Part of them halted about seven miles short of the place of rendezvous, and were overtaken by Tarleton, and dispersed. General Greene waited that night at the place appointed, but finding the militia did not collect, the light infantry continued their march to Salisbury, and crossed the Yadkin. Before they had got over all the baggage and stores, the enemy approached, and there was a pretty smart skirmish (c.) between a part of our riflemen and the advance of the enemy, near the ford. The boats being secured, and the river continuing high from the late rains, the enemy were for some time stopped in their pursuit. Heavy rains, deep creeks, and bad roads, as well as delays for want of provisions and other causes, prevented our forming a junction as soon as was expected: General Greene, therefore, fearing the river might fall so as to be fordable, ordered the army to file off to Guildford court house, where part of them arrived on the evening of the 8th, and the rest were expected to be in on the 9th. The enemy finding they could not pass at the Trading ford, near Salisbury, marched up the south side of the Yadkin, and on the night of the 7th crossed at the shallow ford, and had on the 9th advanced towards Salem, one of the Moravian towns, within twenty-five or thirty miles of Guildford court house.

THESE rapid movements having prevented the junction of the militia, General Greene ordered the stores and heavy baggage to be removed to Prince Edward court house, in the state of Virginia; and having formed a light army, (d.) composed of the cavalry of the 1st and 3d regiments, Lieutenant-colonel Lee's legion, a detachment of light infantry under Colonel Howard, and some few Virginia riflemen, making in the whole seven hundred, ordered them with the militia

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

militia to harass the enemy in their advance, and check their progress, while he, with the rest of the army, crossed the Roanoke. In the mean time General Sumpter was ordered to collect the militia in the upper part of South Carolina, and General Pickens had orders to take the command of the men in arms in the rear of the enemy. Such was the situation of the two armies at the date of the last dispatches, which was the 16th of this month.

---

(NOTE O.)

(COPY.)

*By the Right Honourable Charles Earl Cornwallis, Lieutenant-general of  
His Majesty's forces, &c.*

#### A PROCLAMATION.

WHEREAS it has pleased the Divine Providence to prosper the operations of His Majesty's arms, in driving the rebel army out of this province; and whereas it is His Majesty's most gracious wish to rescue his faithful and loyal subjects from the cruel tyranny under which they have groaned for many years, I have thought proper to issue this proclamation, to invite all such faithful and loyal subjects to repair, without loss of time, with their arms and ten days provisions, to the royal standard now erected at Hillsborough, where they will meet with the most friendly reception: And I do hereby assure them, that I am ready to concur with them in effectual measures for suppressing the remains of rebellion in this province, and for the re-establishment of good order and constitutional government.

GIVEN



GIVEN under my hand, at head quarters, at Hillsborough, this twentieth day of February, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty one, and in the twenty-first year of His Majesty's reign.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

CORNWALLIS.

By his lordship's command,

H. BRODRICK, Aid-de-camp.

GOD SAVE THE KING!



(NOTE P.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Hillsborough, Feb. 24th, 1781, three P. M. triplicate.*

DEAR TARLETON,

I HAVE received intelligence from two persons, that Greene passed the Dan on the 22d, and was advancing to Dobbys's. They mention so many particulars, that I cannot help giving some credit: I therefore wish you to join me as soon as possible.

Your's sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

I TAKE my ground this evening on the south side the Eno.

L1

(NOTE

## (NOTE Q.)

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

*Copy. — From Major-general Greene to General Washington, dated head quarters, iron works, North Carolina, March 10th, 1781.*

S I R,

SINCE I had the honour of addressing your excellency last, there have been some changes in our circumstances. On the 2d, Lieutenant-colonel Lee, with a detachment of riflemen, attacked the advance of the British army, under Colonel Tarleton, near Allamance, and killed and wounded, by report, about thirty of them. On the 6th, the British moved down toward High Rock, either with a view to intercept our (a.) stores, or cut off the light infantry from the main body of the army, then advanced near seven miles; but they were handsomely opposed, and suffered considerably, without effecting any thing.

THIS manoeuvre (b.) occasioned me to retire over the Haw river, and move down the north side of it, with a view to secure (c.) our stores coming to the army, and to form a junction with several considerable reinforcements of Carolina and Virginia militia, and one regiment of eighteen-months men, on the march from Hillsborough to High Rock. I effected (d.) this business, and returned to Guildford court house.

OUR militia had been upon such a loose and uncertain footing ever since we crossed the Dan, that I could attempt nothing with confidence, though we kept within ten or twelve miles of the enemy for several days. The enemy kept close, seemingly determined that we

should

should gain no advantage of them without risking something of consequence. Notes to the Fourth Chapter.

I have the honour to be,  
 With great respect and esteem,  
 Your most obedient humble servant,  
 NATHANIEL GREENE.

His Excellency General Washington.

---

(NOTE R.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lord George Germain, dated Guildford, March 17th, 1781.*

MY LORD,

HAVING occasion to dispatch my aid-de-camp, Captain Brodrick, with the particulars of the action of the 15th, in compliance with general directions from Sir Henry Clinton, I shall embrace the opportunity to give your lordship an account of the operations of the troops under my command previous to that event, and of those subsequent, until the departure of Captain Brodrick.

My plan for the winter's campaign was to penetrate into North Carolina, leaving South Carolina in security against any probable attack in my absence. Lord Rawdon, with a considerable body of troops, had charge of the defensive, and I proceeded about the middle of January upon the offensive operations. I decided to march by the upper in preference to the lower roads leading into North Carolina, because fords being frequent above the forks of the rivers, my passage there could not easily be obstructed; and General Greene having taken

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

post on the Pedee, and there being few fords in any of the great rivers of this country below their forks, especially in winter, I apprehended being much delayed, if not entirely prevented from penetrating by the latter route.

I WAS the more induced to prefer this route, as I hoped in my way to be able to destroy or drive out of South Carolina the corps of the enemy commanded by General Morgan, which threatened our valuable district of Ninety Six: And I likewise hoped, by rapid marches to get between General Greene and Virginia, and by that means force him to fight without receiving any reinforcement from that province; or, failing of that, to oblige him to quit North Carolina with precipitation, and thereby encourage our friends to make good their promises of a general rising, to assist me in re-establishing His Majesty's government.

THE unfortunate affair of the 17th of January was a very unexpected and severe blow; for, besides reputation, our loss did not fall short of six hundred men: However, being thoroughly sensible that defensive measures would be certain ruin to the affairs of Britain in the southern colonies, this event did not deter me from prosecuting the original plan. That General Greene might be uncertain of my intended route as long as possible, I had left General Leslie at Camden, until I was ready to move from Wynneshorough, and he was now within a day's march of me: I employed the 18th (a.) in forming a junction with him, and in collecting the remains of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's corps; after which, great exertions were made by part of the army, without baggage, to retake our prisoners, and to intercept General Morgan's corps on its retreat to the Catawba; but the celerity

celerity of their movements, and the swelling of numberless creeks in our way, rendered all our efforts fruitless.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

I THEREFORE assembled the army on the 25th (b.) at Ramsoure's mill, on the fourth fork of the Catawba; and as the loss of my light troops could only be remedied by the activity of the whole corps, I employed a halt of two days in collecting flour, and in destroying superfluous baggage, and all my waggons, except those loaded with hospital stores, salt, and ammunition, and four reserved empty in readiness for sick or wounded. In this measure, though at the expence of a great deal of officers' baggage, and of all prospect in future of rum, and even a regular supply of provisions to the soldiers, I must, in justice to the army, say, that there was the most general and chearful acquiescence.

IN the mean time the rains had rendered the north Catawba impassable; and General Morgan's corps, the militia of the rebellious counties of Rowan and Mecklenburg under General Davidson, or the gang of plunderers usually under the command of General Sumpter, not then recovered from his wounds, had occupied all the fords in a space of more than forty miles upwards from the fork. During its height, I approached the river by short marches, so as to give the enemy equal apprehensions for several fords; and after having procured the best information in my power, I resolved to attempt the passage at a private ford, then slightly guarded, near M'Cowan's ford, on the morning of the 1st of February.

Lieutenant-colonel Webster was detached with part of the army and all the baggage to Beattie's ford, six miles above M'Cowan's, where General Davidson was supposed to be posted with five hundred militia,  
and

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

and was directed to make every possible demonstration, by cannonading and otherwise, of an intention to force a passage there; and I marched at one in the morning, (c.) with the brigade of guards, regiment of Bose, 23d, two hundred cavalry, and two three-pounders, to the ford fixed upon for the real attempt.

THE morning being very dark and rainy, and part of our way through a wood where there was no road, one of the three pounders in front of the 23d regiment and the cavalry overset in a swamp, and occasioned those corps to lose the line of march; and some of the artillery men belonging to the other gun, (one of whom had the match) having stopped to assist, were likewise left behind. The head of the column in the mean while arrived at the bank of the river, and the day began to break. I could make no use of the gun that was up, and it was evident, from the number of fires on the other side, that the opposition would be greater than I had expected: However, as I knew that the rain then falling would soon render the river again impassable, and I had received information the evening before, that General Greene had arrived in General Morgan's camp, and that his army was marching after him with the greatest expedition, I determined not to desist from the attempt; and therefore, full of confidence in the zeal and gallantry of Brigadier-general O'Hara, and of the brigade of guards under his command, I ordered them to march on, but, to prevent confusion, not to fire until they gained the opposite bank. Their behaviour justified my high opinion of them; for a constant fire from the enemy, in a ford upwards of five hundred yards wide, in many places up to their middle, with a rocky bottom and strong current, made no impression on their cool and determined valour, nor (d.) checked their passage. The light infantry landing first, immediately formed, and in a few minutes killed or dispersed

every



every thing that appeared before them ; the rest of the troops forming, and advancing in succession. We now learned that we had been opposed by about three hundred militia that had taken post there only the evening before, under the command of General Davidson. Their general and two or three other officers were among the killed ; the number of wounded was uncertain ; a few were taken prisoners. On our side, Lieutenant-colonel Hall and three men were killed, and thirty-six wounded, all of the light infantry and grenadiers of the guards. By this time the rear of the column had joined ; and the whole having passed with the greatest dispatch, I detached Lieutenant-colonel (e.) Tarleton, with the cavalry and twenty-third regiment, to pursue the routed militia. A few were soon killed or taken ; and Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton having learned that three or four hundred of the neighbouring militia were to assemble that day at Tarrant's house, about ten miles from the ford, leaving his infantry, he went on with his cavalry, and finding the militia as expected, he with excellent conduct and great spirit attacked them instantly, and totally routed them, with little loss on his own side, and on their's, between forty and fifty killed, wounded, or prisoners. This stroke, with our passage of the ford, so effectually dispirited the militia, that we met with no farther (f.) opposition on our march to the Yadkin, though one of the most rebellious tracts in America.

DURING this time the rebels having quitted Beatty's ford, Lieutenant-colonel Webster was passing his detachment and the baggage of the army ; this had become tedious and difficult, by the continuance of the rain, and the swelling of the river ; but all joined us soon after dark, about six miles from Beatty's ford. The other fords were likewise abandoned by the enemy : The greatest part of the militia dispersed ; and General Morgan with his corps marched all that afternoon.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

noon and the following night towards Salisbury. We pursued next morning, in hopes to intercept him between the rivers; and after struggling with many difficulties, arising from swelled creeks and bad roads, the guards came up with his rear, in the evening of the 3d, routed it, and took a few waggons at the Trading ford of the Yadkin. He had passed the body of the infantry in flats, and his cavalry and waggons by the ford, during that day and the preceding night; but at the time of our arrival, the boats (g.) were secured on the other side, and the ford had become impassable. The river continuing to rise, and the weather appearing unsettled, I determined to march to the upper fords, after procuring a small supply of provisions at Salisbury: This, and the height of the creeks in our way, detained me two days; and in that time, Morgan having quitted the banks of the river, I had information from our friends, who crossed in canoes, that General Greene's army was marching with the utmost dispatch to form a junction with him at Guildford. Not having had time to collect the North-Carolina militia, and having received no reinforcement from Virginia, I concluded he would do every thing in his power to avoid an action on the south side of the Dan; and it being my interest to force him to fight, I made great expedition, and got between him and the upper fords; and being assured that the lower fords are seldom practicable in winter, and that he could not collect many flats at any of the ferries, I was in great hopes that he would not escape me without receiving a blow. Nothing could exceed the patience and alacrity of the officers and soldiers under every species of hardship and fatigue, in endeavouring to overtake them: But our intelligence upon this occasion was exceedingly defective; which, with heavy rains, bad roads, and the passage of many deep creeks, and bridges destroyed by the enemy's light troops, rendered all our exertions vain; for, upon our arrival at Boyd's ferry on the 12th, we learned, that his rear

guard

guard had got over the night before, his baggage and main body having passed the preceding day at that and the neighbouring ford, where more flats had been collected than had been represented to me as possible.

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

My force being ill suited to enter by that quarter so powerful a province as Virginia, and North Carolina being in the utmost confusion, after giving the troops a halt of a day, I proceeded by easy marches to Hillsborough, where I erected the King's standard, and invited, by proclamation, all loyal subjects to repair to it, and to stand forth and take an active part in assisting me to restore order and constitutional government. As a considerable body of friends were said to reside between the Haw and Deep rivers, I detached Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton on the 23d, (k.) with the cavalry and a small body of infantry, to prevent their being interrupted in assembling. Unluckily a detachment of the rebel light troops had crossed the same day, and, by accident, fell in with about two hundred of our friends, under Colonel Pyle, on their way to Hillsborough, who, mistaking the rebels for Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's corps, allowed themselves to be surrounded, and a number of them were most inhumanly butchered, when begging for quarter, without making the least resistance. The same day I had certain intelligence that General Greene, having been reinforced, had recrossed the Dan, which rendered it imprudent to separate my corps, occasioned the recall of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's detachment; and forage and provisions being scarce in the neighbourhood of Hillsborough, as well as the position too distant (upon the approach of the rebel army) for the protection of the body of our friends, I judged it expedient (l.) to cross the Haw, and encamped near Allamance creek, detaching Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, with the cavalry, light company of the guards, and one hundred and fifty men of Lieutenant-colonel Web-

Notes to the  
Fourth  
Chapter.

ster's brigade, a few miles from me on the road to Deep river, more effectually to cover the country.

GENERAL Greene's light troops soon made their appearance; and on the 2d, a patrol having reported that they had seen both cavalry and infantry near his post, I directed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to move forward with proper precautions, and endeavour to discover the designs of the enemy. He had not advanced far when he fell in with a considerable corps, which he immediately attacked and routed; but being ignorant of their force, and whether they were supported, with great prudence desisted from the pursuit. He soon learned from prisoners that those he had beat were Lee's legion, three or four hundred back mountainmen under Colonel Preston, with a number of militia; and that General Greene, with a part of his army, was not far distant. Our situation for the former few days had been amongst timid friends, and adjoining to inveterate rebels; between them I had been totally destitute of information, which lost me a very favourable opportunity of attacking the rebel army. General Greene fell back to Thompson's house, near Boyd's ford, on the Reedy fork; but his light troops and militia still remained near us; and as I was informed that they were posted carelessly at separate plantations for the convenience of subsisting, I marched on the 6th to drive them in, and to attack (m.) General Greene, if an opportunity offered. I succeeded completely in the first; and at Wetzell's mill, on the Reedy fork, where they made a stand, the back mountainmen and some militia suffered considerably, with little loss on our side; but a timely and precipitate retreat over the Haw prevented the latter. I knew that the Virginia reinforcement were upon their march; and it was apparent that the enemy would, if possible, avoid risking an action before their arrival.

THE neighbourhood of the fords of the Dan in their rear, and the extreme difficulty of subsisting my troops in that exhausted country putting it out of my power to force them, my resolution was to give our friends time to join us, by covering their country as effectually as possible, consistent with the subsistence of the troops, still approaching the communication with our shipping in Cape-Fear river, which I saw it would soon become indispensably necessary to open, on account of the sufferings of the army from the want of supplies of every kind ; and at the same time I was determined to fight the rebel army, if it approached me, being convinced that it would be impossible to succeed in that great object of our arduous campaign, the calling forth the numerous loyalists of North Carolina, whilst a doubt remained on their minds of the superiority of our arms. With these views, I had moved to the Quakers' meeting, in the forks of Deep river, on the 13th, and on the 14th I received the information which occasioned the movement that brought on the action at Guildford, of which I shall give your lordship an account in a separate letter.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.





## CHAPTER V.

*Battle of Guildford. — Earl Cornwallis crosses Deep river, — and retires towards Cross creek. — General Greene follows the British. — Earl Cornwallis arrives at Cross creek, — and moves to Wilmington. — General Greene advances towards South Carolina. — Earl Cornwallis marches towards the Roanoke. — Skirmish at Halifax. — Earl Cornwallis unites the royal armies at Petersburg. — The British pass James river at Westover. — The Marquis de la Fayette crosses the South and North Anna. — Earl Cornwallis sends detachments to destroy stores. — The British move towards Richmond. — The Marquis de la Fayette follows the King's troops. — Earl Cornwallis marches to Williamsburgh. — Affair near the Chickahomany.*

THE British troops since their departure from Hillsborough had CHAP. V. been in great want of many of those necessaries, which, in general, are deemed absolutely requisite to render their hardships supportable, and their minds contented; this deficiency, however, did not diffuse dissatisfaction, or produce desertion, but rather augmented the zeal, and strengthened the fidelity of the soldiery. Notwithstanding both officers and men manifested an alacrity equal to any fatigue or danger, Earl Cornwallis meditated on the measures he should adopt, in order to open the communication with his stores. To forward this operation, Major Craig, who commanded at Wilmington, was directed, if he found it practicable, to transport supplies of shoes and other material.

CHAP. V. rial articles, by water, to Crofs creek : But the number and vicinity of the American army, reported to be upwards of eight thousand men, and advanced to Guildford court house, would not allow the British commander to send a detachment to Crofs creek, supposing the stores were already arrived at that place ; and, in all likelihood, if he moved with the main body in that direction, the superior force of General Greene would stimulate him to interrupt the undertaking.

Thus situated, Earl Cornwallis had the alternative, either to commence his retreat, or prepare for a general action. The power and position of his enemy rendered all the country beyond the pickets hostile to the British cause, which had no friends or partizans at this period except those included within the extent of the royal camp. On the 14th of March, his lordship determined to advance upon the Americans at Guildford, and bring on an engagement, that he thought they would not avoid, and which he hoped would be productive of considerable advantage. Before dawn next morning, the waggons, with the baggage, the wounded, and the sick, were instructed to move to Bell's mill, on Deep river, under the escort of a detachment, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Hamilton, (a.) formed of his own regiment, one hundred infantry of the line, and twenty dragoons of the legion. The main body at daybreak marched toward the enemy's camp. The cavalry, the light infantry of the guards, and the yagers, composed the advanced guard. Colonel Webster's brigade, the regiment of Bose, and the brigade of guards, followed successively : The artillery marched with their respective divisions. The British had proceeded seven miles on the great Salisbury road to Guildford, when the light troops drove in a picket of the enemy. A sharp conflict en-

(a.) In note A.

fued between the advanced (b.) parties of the two armies. In the onset, the fire of the Americans was heavy, and the charge of their cavalry was spirited: Notwithstanding their numbers and opposition, the gallantry of the light infantry of the guards, assisted by the legion, made impression upon their center, before the 23d regiment arrived to give support to the advanced troops. Colonel Lee's dragoons retreated with precipitation along the main road, and Colonel Campbell's mountaineers were dispersed with considerable loss. The pursuit was not pushed very far, as there were many proofs beside the acknowledgment of the prisoners, that General Greene was at hand. Captain Goodrick of the guards, a promising young officer, fell in this contest, and between twenty and thirty of the guards, dragoons, and yagers, were killed and wounded. The King's troops moved on till they arrived in sight of the American army. An engagement was now become inevitable, and both sides prepared for it with tranquillity and order.

DURING the skirmish of the light troops, General Greene formed the American army of seven thousand men into three lines, (a.) and waited the attack. His front line consisted of North-Carolina militia, under Generals Butler and Eaton: The center was placed behind rails, in the rear of a clearing, about three hundred yards space, and the flanks extended into the woods: Two six-pounders were stationed to the right of the center, on the main road which led to the court house. The second line was composed of the Virginia militia, under the command of Generals Stephens and Butler, who formed their brigades in the woods parallel to the front line, and about four hundred yards in their rear. The continentals, consisting of two brigades, one Virgi-

Battle of  
Guilford.

(b.) In note A.

(a.) In note D.

CHAP. V. mia and the other Maryland troops, with the Delaware regiment, were commanded by Brigadier-general Huger and Colonel Williams, and were posted facing the wood where the two lines of militia were drawn up: General Greene had chosen open ground, in front of the court house, for great part of his regulars: The flanks did not dress up to the center, but were drawn back, so that each brigade presented a different front: Two six-pounders were placed on a small eminence which looked upon the road. The position of these brigades was near six hundred yards in the rear of the second line. Lieutenant-colonel Washington, with the dragoons (b.) of the 1st and 3d regiments, a detachment of light infantry, composed of continentals, and a regiment of riflemen under Colonel Lynch, formed a corps of observation for the security of the right flank. Lieutenant-colonel Lee, with his legion, a party of light infantry, and a corps of riflemen under Colonel Campbell, had a similar situation on the left.

As the front of the British column approached the open ground facing the American position, the enemy's six pounders opened from the road, and were immediately answered by the royal artillery. After Earl Cornwallis had consulted the guides concerning the nature of the country, and viewed as much as he could the disposition of the militia, he desired Major-general Leslie (c.) to move to the right with the 71st and the regiment of Bose, which force was to compose his front line for the attack of the enemy's left, and the 1st battalion of the guards was allotted for his reserve. Colonel Webster was directed to form the 23d (d.) and 33d on the left of General Leslie's division: Brigadier-general O'Hara was instructed to support Colonel Webster, with the 2d battalion and the grenadier company of the guards. Whilst these

(b.) In note D.

(c.) In note A.

(d.) In note A.

troops were forming, the yagers and the light infantry of the guards CHAP. V. remained near the guns in the road; but when the line moved on, they attached themselves to the left of Webster's brigade. The artillery, under Lieutenant Macleod, proceeded along the high road: The dragoons likewise could only move in column in the same direction, and Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton was ordered to keep his regiment in reserve till the infantry could penetrate through the woods to the open ground, near the court house, where the country was represented to be more favourable for the operations of cavalry.

DURING these arrangements for the attack, the British artillery cannonaded the enemy's center with considerable effect: Lieutenant O'Hara, a spirited young officer, was unfortunately killed, whilst directing the three pounders before the line was ready to move on. The troops were no sooner formed than they marched forwards with steadiness and composure: The order and coolness of that part of Webster's brigade which advanced across the open ground, exposed to the enemy's fire, cannot be sufficiently extolled: The extremities were not less gallant, but were more protected by the woods in which they moved. The militia allowed the front line to approach within one hundred and fifty yards before they gave their fire: The front line continued to move on: The Americans sent back their cannon, and part of them repeated their fire: The King's troops threw in their fire, and charged rapidly with their bayonets: The shock was not waited for by the militia, who retreated behind their second line. At this place the action became more severe. The broken ground and the extent of the enemy's front had occasioned the flanks to open from the center; upon which Generals Leslie and O'Hara moved the two battalions and the grenadiers of the guards into line, when the superior discipline and bravery of the King's troops again threw the militia into confusion. The

CHAP. V. thickness of the woods where these conflicts happened prevented the cavalry making a charge upon the Americans on their retreat to the continentals, and impeded the British infantry moving forwards in a well-connected line. Some corps meeting with less opposition and embarrassment than others, arrived sooner in presence of the continentals, who received them with resolution and firmness.

At this period the event of the action was doubtful, and victory alternately presided over each army. On the left of the British Colonel Webster carried on the yagers, the light company of the guards, and the 33d regiment, after two severe struggles, to the right of the continentals, whose superiority of numbers and weight of fire obliged him to recross a ravine, and take ground upon the opposite bank. This manoeuvre was planned with great judgement, and, being executed with coolness and precision, gave Webster an excellent position till he could hear of the progress of the King's troops upon his right. In the center the 2d battalion of the guards, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Stewart, supported by the grenadiers, made a spirited and successful attack on the enemy's six pounders, which they took from the Delaware regiment; but the Maryland brigade, followed by Washington's cavalry, moving upon them before they could receive assistance, retook the cannon, and repulsed (e.) the guards with great slaughter. The ground being open, Colonel Washington's dragoons killed Colonel Stewart and several of his men, and pursued the remainder into the wood. General O'Hara, though wounded, rallied the remainder of the 2d battalion of the guards to the 23d and 71st regiments, who had inclined from the divisions on the right and left, and were now approaching the open ground. The grenadiers, after all their officers

(e.) In note A.



were wounded, attached themselves to the artillery and the cavalry, CHAP. V. who were advancing upon the main road. At this crisis, the judicious use of the three pounders, the firm countenance of the British infantry, and the appearance of the cavalry, obliged the enemy to retreat, leaving their cannon and ammunition waggons behind them. Colonel Webster soon after connected his corps with the main body, and the action on the (f.) left and in the center was finished.

EARL Cornwallis did not think it advisable for the British cavalry to charge the enemy, who were retreating in good order, but directed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to proceed with a squadron of dragoons to the assistance of Major-general Leslie on the (g.) right, where, by the constant fire which was yet maintained, the affair seemed not to be determined. The right wing, from the thickness of the woods and a jealousy for its flank, had imperceptibly inclined to the right, by which movement it had a kind of separate action after the front line of the Americans gave way, and was now engaged with several bodies of militia and riflemen above a mile distant from the center of the British army. The 1st battalion of the guards, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Norton, and the regiment of Bose, under Major De Buy, had their share of the difficulties of the day, and, owing to the nature of the light troops opposed to them, could never make any decisive impression: As they advanced, the Americans gave ground in front, and inclined to their flanks: This sort of conflict had continued some time, when the British cavalry, on their way to join them, found officers and men of both corps wounded, and in possession of the enemy: The prisoners were quickly rescued from the hands of their captors, and the dragoons reached General Leslie without delay. As soon as

(f.) In note A.

(g.) In note A.

CHAP. V. the cavalry arrived, the guards and the Hessians were directed to fire a volley upon the largest party of the militia, and, under the cover of the smoke, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton doubled round the right flank of the guards, and charged the Americans with considerable effect. The enemy gave way on all sides, and were routed with confusion and loss. Thus ended a general, and, in the main, a well-contested action, which had lasted upwards of two hours. General Leslie soon afterwards joined Earl Cornwallis, who had advanced a short distance on the Reedy-fork road, with the 23d and 71st regiments, to support the other squadron of the British legion, who followed the rear of the continentals.

ON the part of the British, (B.) the honourable Lieutenant-colonel Stewart, of the guards, two lieutenants, two ensigns, thirteen sergeants, and seventy-five rank and file, were killed: Brigadier-generals O'Hara and Howard, Lieutenant-colonels Webster and Tarleton, nine captains, four lieutenants, five ensigns, two staff officers, fifteen sergeants, five drummers, and three hundred and sixty-nine rank and file, were wounded; and twenty-five rank and file were missing.

THE American (E.) loss amounted to a more considerable number, though it was eventually of less importance; most of the militia having returned to their homes, instead of repairing to the rendezvous at Speedwell furnace. The continentals had one brigadier general, one major, nine captains, seven subalterns, fourteen sergeants, eight drums and fifes, and two hundred and ninety rank and file, killed, wounded, and missing. The Virginia militia had one brigadier general, eight captains, eighteen subalterns, fifteen sergeants, and three hundred and sixty-one

(B.) Note B.

(E.) Note E.

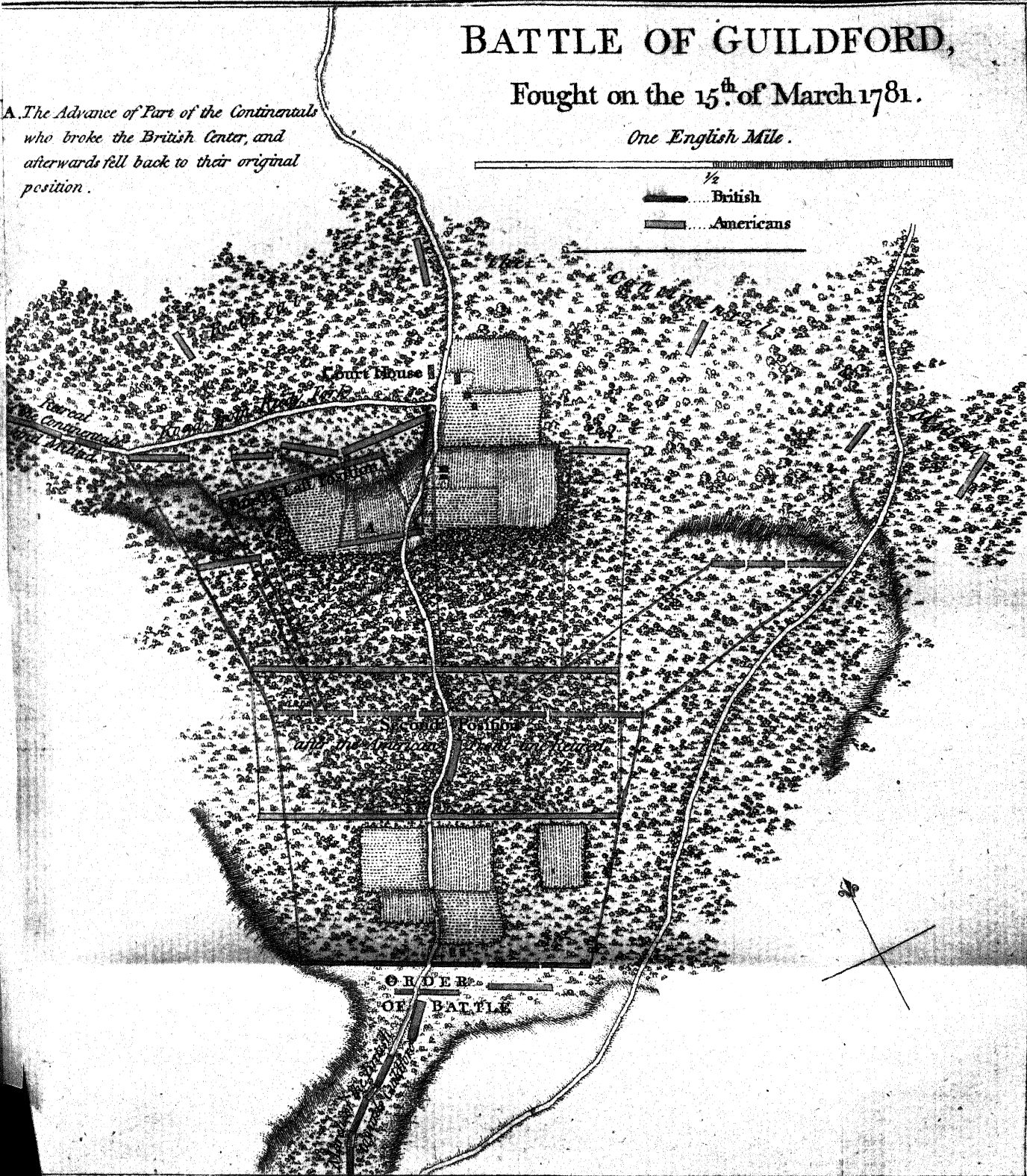
rank.

# BATTLE OF GUILDFORD,

Fought on the 15<sup>th</sup> of March 1781.

One English Mile.

A. The Advance of Part of the Continentals who broke the British Center, and afterwards fell back to their original position.



276

CHAP. V.

rank and file killed, wounded, and missing. The North-Carolina militia had six rank and file killed; one captain, one subaltern, and three rank and file wounded; and two captains, two subalterns, and five hundred and fifty-two rank and file, missing. CHAP. V.

EARL Cornwallis's disposition of the King's troops was judiciously adapted to the ground where the action commenced, and the gallantry and undaunted bravery of his officers and soldiers were conspicuous throughout the different and trying engagements of the day; but the superior numbers of the enemy, together with the present situation of the royal army, far distant from support or resource, and deficient in supplies to prosecute any advantage, undoubtedly rendered a general action more desirable to the Americans than to the British: The move, therefore, to Guildford, produced one of the most hazardous, as well as severe battles that occurred during the war. The post occupied by General Greene on this occasion was extremely well chosen, and the manner of forming his troops unexceptionable. The reasons which now induced him not to decline an engagement equally indicated his wisdom and his professional knowledge. A defeat of the British would have been attended with the total destruction of Earl Cornwallis's infantry, whilst a victory at this juncture could produce no very decisive consequences against the Americans. The ability of the English commander, seconded by the vigour and resolution of his officers and soldiers, with extreme difficulty forced the enemy from their position, and in that fortunate exploit the British army was crippled, by the quality and number of the officers and men killed and wounded. One opportunity being overlooked by General Greene, towards the close of the action, gave that advantage, which was long doubtful, to the disciplined perseverance of the King's troops. If one brigade of continentals, after the repulse of the 2d battalion and the grenadier company of  
the



CHAP. V. the guards, had taken possession of, and remained at the eminence on the edge of the wood, from whence the three pounders afterwards fired upon them, they would effectually have broken the left of the center, and continued the confusion of the British, there being no support immediately at hand, nor any corps in reserve, except the cavalry, who could not stir a yard out of the road, on account of the thickness of the brush-wood; and the guards being pressed by the manoeuvre and entangled in difficult ground, could not have manifested their active and persevering courage by rallying and returning to the charge: By this advance likewise the 23d and 71st regiments would have been kept asunder, and the 33d, with the light company of the guards, divided from the center. The superior number, as well as freshness of the continentals, having had no march, and but a slight engagement, together with the comparative state of the British, and the evident advantage of the ground, might have intimated and recommended the movement, which, if carried into immediate execution, would probably have produced the most fatal effect; but the pause of the Americans, and their voluntary return to the ground where they were originally formed, presented the marked and favourable interval, of which the British availed themselves, by collecting as large a force as possible, and pushing forwards their center. To this oversight or hesitation of the Americans may chiefly be attributed a victory, which, however splendid and honourable to the general and the troops, was not useful or advantageous to Great Britain.

THE wounded of both armies were assembled expeditiously after the action, and the surgeons were directed to separate the British and Hessians, who were severely wounded, from those who could bear the exercise of travelling: The former, to the amount of seventy, (h.)

(h.) In note A.

with



with several Americans who were in the same situation, were lodged, CHAP. V.  
 under the protection of a flag of truce, in New-garden meeting house,  
 and other adjacent buildings, whilst the latter were placed in the best  
 waggons, or on horseback, to attend the motions of the King's troops.  
 The position and strength of General Greene, at the iron works on Earl Corn-  
 Troublesome creek, about twelve miles distant from Guildford, did not wallis crosses  
Deep river.  
 invite the approach of the British army; Earl Cornwallis, therefore,  
 commenced his march on the 18th for Deep river, in his way to Cross  
 creek: On this move his lordship distributed a proclamation, (C.) in  
 which he published an account of his victory, exhorted the loyalists to  
 join him, and offered pardon to the Americans who had taken part in  
 rebellion, if they would surrender their arms and ammunition on or  
 before the 20th day of April, and retire to their homes to live peace-  
 ably till civil government was restored.

SOME supplies of flour and meal being collected in the neighbour-  
 hood of Bell's (a.) mill, the royal forces again crossed Deep river, that  
 they might move through a country well supplied with forage, on the And retires  
 road to Ramsey's mill. On this march the rear guard, which was now towards Cross  
creek.  
 composed of the light infantry of the guards, the yagers, and the ca-  
 valry, under Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, obtained information that  
 General Greene with his army had reached Buffaloe (a.) creek, to the  
 southward of Guildford court house: The day before the King's troops  
 arrived at Ramsey's, the Americans insulted the yagers in their encamp-  
 ment: The royalists remained a few days at Ramsey's, for the benefit  
 of the wounded, and to complete a bridge over Deep river, when the  
 light troops of the Americans again disturbed the pickets, and the army  
 were ordered under arms. Before the end of the month, the British Gen. Greene  
follows the  
British.

(C.) Note C.

(a.) In note G.

(a.) In note F.

crossed

CHAP. V. crossed the river, and the same day General Greene reached (b.) Ramfey's with an intention to attack them. The halt of the King's troops at that place nearly occasioned an action, which would not probably have been advantageous to the royal forces, on account of the badness of the position, and the disheartening circumstance of their being encumbered with so many wounded officers and men since the action at Guildford. Deep river, over which the rear guard broke the bridge, the want of provisions, (c.) and the desert country through which the King's troops now commenced their march, impeded the immediate advance of General Greene, and Earl Cornwallis, without any material occurrence, entered Cross creek.

Earl Cornwallis arrives at Cross creek.

ON his arrival, he received a letter from Major Craig, who very judiciously and explicitly pointed out the causes which prevented his opening the water communication between that place and Wilmington. The distance, the narrowness of the river, the commanding elevation of its banks, and the hostile sentiments of great part of the inhabitants, rendered the design impracticable (b.) for the corps under his command. This accurate account of the relative situations of Cross creek and Wilmington, which ought to have been clearly understood before the King's troops entered North Carolina, because the most fortunate or necessary operations of a campaign may be delayed, or counteracted, or totally frustrated, by blindly trusting to a communication that cannot be opened, was now first displayed to the British army, when they were encumbered with sick and wounded, destitute of many necessary supplies, and in daily expectation of receiving the mortifying intelligence, that their lately conquered enemy would make a successful irruption into South Carolina. Upon this serious

(b.) In note F.

(c.) In note F.

(b.) In note G.

and

and important disappointment, respecting the navigation of the north-west river, an instant movement from Cross creek towards Camden would have been an advisable measure. The comparative situations of the British and American armies, the state of South Carolina, the dismantled (K.) condition of Charles town, and the remembrance of the second object of the campaign, which was to secure old possessions, strongly suggested and recommended such an expedition; and it may be deemed unfortunate that so eligible a plan was not carried into execution.

NOTWITHSTANDING the cruel persecution the inhabitants of Cross creek had constantly endured for their partiality to the British, they yet retained great zeal for the interest of the royal army. All the flour and spirits in the neighbourhood were collected and conveyed to camp, and the wounded officers and soldiers were supplied with many conveniences highly agreeable and refreshing to men in their situation. After some expresses were dispatched to Lord Rawdon, to advertise him of the movements of the British and Americans, and some waggons were loaded with provisions, Earl Cornwallis resumed his march for Wilmington. On the road (c.) some valuable officers and brave men died of their wounds, but none more deservedly regretted than <sup>And moves to Wilmington.</sup> Lieutenant-colonel Webster, who united all the virtues of civil life to the gallantry and professional knowledge of a soldier.

THOUGH the militia of the country did not appear in arms, they had broken some bridges over creeks, to retard the march of the royal army: They were repaired by the light troops as they advanced, and the main body soon reached a position facing Wilmington, on the 7th April.

(K.) Note K.

(c.) In note G.

O o

north-

CHAP. V. north-west river, whence they were conveyed to it by the assistance of the royal navy. Major Craig, (d.) since his arrival in North Carolina, had made himself respectable in that quarter of the country, by several successful excursions into the adjacent districts, and by fortifying a bad post so judiciously, as to render it tenable, and the stores and detachment committed to his care perfectly secure against any attempt of the militia. As soon as the royal army was quartered in and about the town, the officers commanding corps were requested to lose no time in equipping their respective divisions with ample necessaries for immediate service. Unluckily for many of the troops, and for the cavalry in particular, the supplies transported from Charles town to Wilmington were inadequate to the deficiencies, and few necessaries were obtained except shoes for the infantry. In the mean time, Earl Cornwallis prepared his public (1.) dispatches for the minister, and meditated the future operations of his army.

Gen. Greene  
advances to-  
wards South  
Carolina.

THE letters from (a.) Charles town, conveying the news of a reinforcement of three regiments from England being destined for the southward of America, and giving accounts of the commander in chief's having detached General Phillips from New York, with a considerable force into the Chesapeak, arrived at Wilmington, when other intelligence equally interesting reached that place. Clear and positive information was now received, that the move towards the shipping in Cape-fear river had prompted General Greene to point his course towards South Carolina, and that, after detaching Lieutenant-colonel Lee to assist General Marion in the center of the province, he had pressed forwards his march with an indefatigable attention, which

(d.) In note G.

(1.) Which were conveyed to England by Captain Broderick.

(a.) In note H.

foon carried his main body into the neighbourhood of Camden. The CHAP. V. wisdom and vigour of the American operations not only deranged all the designs of Earl Cornwallis at Wilmington, but threatened severe consequences to the British forces in South Carolina. Lord Rawdon, who commanded on the frontier, and who had been industriously employed in suppressing the insurrections, and opposing the incursions of Generals Sumpter and Marion, had now an unexpected and more formidable enemy to contend with. On the approach of General Greene his lordship might justly apprehend, unless he received tidings of Earl Cornwallis's movement to South Carolina, a total defection of the inhabitants, an interruption of all communication with Charles town, and the attack of a continental army superior to his own in numbers. Though the expresses (b.) from Cross creek did not reach their destination, Lord Rawdon by some other means gained such early intelligence of the approach of Greene, that he made judicious arrangements to counteract the designs of the enemy, and to advertise Earl Cornwallis of his embarrassed situation at Camden.

THE aspect of public affairs at this juncture presented various (2.) and opposite designs to the noble earl at Wilmington. Upon the different investigations of the subject, it was too successfully described, that the country (c.) between Cape-fear river and Camden was barren, and intersected with creeks and rivers; that the road to George

(b.) In note H.

(2. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, who commanded the advanced guard of the army, was consulted upon the feasibility of moving the King's troops from Wilmington to South Carolina, and from Wilmington to Virginia: He answered, that he thought either operation practicable, and he offered, in case the infantry embarked for Charles town, to conduct his regiment of dragoons, with the assistance of one company of mounted infantry, into South Carolina.

(c.) In note H.

CHAP. V town was replete with the same difficulties ; that an embarkation for Charles town was disgraceful, and would occasion delay whilst the transports were coming round ; and that Virginia was more accessible, where General Phillips commanded a respectable force. Happy would it have been, as far as general probability can determine, had Earl Cornwallis directed his chief attention to the critical state of South Carolina, and commenced his return by any route to secure it : But it was represented, that the plan of carrying the war into so opulent a province as Virginia, would recall General Greene from the southward as soon as he had information of Lord Cornwallis's design ; and that his Lordship would have the advantage of an early movement, to form a powerful army, by joining the corps at Wilmington to the troops under Major-general Phillips, on the banks of James river. This large scale of operations coinciding with Earl Cornwallis' present views, he determined (I.) to make an instant attempt upon Virginia. For this purpose, orders were given to the principal officers to prepare their troops as well as they could for a long march, and Lieutenant-colonel Balfour was directed to send transports from Charles town to Cape-fear river, to be in readiness to receive them, in case the expedition was frustrated.

At this period, Major-general Leslie's health being greatly impaired by the climate, his physicians advised his return to a colder latitude than the Carolinas and Virginia ; upon which he prepared to embark for New York : Brigadier-general O'Hara, by great strength of constitution and the skill of his surgeons, surmounted two painful wounds, which he had borne with singular fortitude, and was restored to the command he had filled with such distinguished reputation : Many

(I.) Note I.

I.

officers



officers and men daily recovered and joined their regiments: Captains Lord Dunblaw and Maynard of the guards were unfortunately attacked by fevers, and died, sincerely lamented by their numerous friends throughout the army. CHAP. V.

BEFORE the end of April, Earl Cornwallis prepared to leave Wilmington, having (I.) decided (L.) upon his plan of operation, and given his orders to Major Craig, to embark his garrison and the sick for Charles town as soon as he heard that the King's troops had passed the Roanoke. A corps of about one thousand six hundred men, consisting of a detachment of royal artillery, with four pieces of cannon, the brigade of guards, the 23d, the 33d, the second battalion of the 71st, the regiment of Bose, a company of pioneers, the British legion, and the 82d and Hamilton's light companies, received orders to be in readiness to march as soon as the quarter-master-general's waggons were loaded with an ample supply of rum, salt, and flour. This being ably and expeditiously completed under the inspection of Major England, deputy quarter-master general, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, with the advanced guard, was directed to seize as many boats as possible on the north-east branch of Cape-fear river, and collect them at a place about fifteen miles above Wilmington. Some boats were secured, and Captain Ingles, of the royal navy, dispatched others from the King's ships, to protect and expedite the passage of the army. The advanced guard crossed without loss of time, and took post on the opposite bank, till the stores, waggons, cannon, and troops, were brought over. As many rivers and creeks intersected the country, between this place and Virginia, it was thought expedient to mount two boats upon carriages, which could proceed with the army, and might facilitate the passage of any waters.

Earl Cornwallis  
marches towards the  
Roanoke.

(I.) Note I.

(L.) Note L.

THE

## CHAP. V.

THE King's troops moved for a few days without any obstacles on their route, and almost without any intelligence. In the neighbourhood of the river Nuse reports were brought to Earl Cornwallis, that General Phillips had proceeded as high as Richmond on the James river, and other rumours said, that he had embarked and sailed from Virginia. This mortifying news was not alleviated by any favourable incidents on the march. The middle and eastern districts of North Carolina were found more barren than they were described, and much assistance of provisions to save the stock upon the waggons could not be taken or bought from the inhabitants. At this period Earl Cornwallis thought proper to advance his light troops, as well to order the mills to grind under pain of military execution, as to procure intelligence of the most convenient place to pass the Roanoke, and the situation of the British troops in Virginia.

IN the beginning of May, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, with one hundred and eighty dragoons, and the light companies of the 82d and of Hamilton's North-Carolina regiment, both mounted on horses, advanced in front of the army, crossed the Nahunta and Coteckney creeks, and soon reached the Tarr river. On his route he ordered the inhabitants to collect great quantities of provisions for the King's troops, whose numbers he magnified in order to awe the militia, and secure a retreat for his detachment, in case the Roanoke could not be passed. When Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton had proceeded over the Tarr, he received instructions, (M.) if the country beyond that river could afford a tolerable supply of flour and meal for the army, to make every possible effort to procure information of General Phillips: Upon finding the districts more fruitful as he advanced, he determined, by a rapid march,

(M.) Note M.

to

to make an attempt upon Halifax, where the militia were assembling, and by that measure open a passage across the Roanoke, for some of the emissaries, who had been dispatched into Virginia, to return to the King's troops in North Carolina. CHAP. V.

ON this move the Americans at Swift creek, and afterwards at Fishing creek, attempted to stop the progress of the advanced guard; but their efforts were baffled, and they were dispersed with some loss. The British took the shortest road to Halifax, to prevent the militia receiving reinforcements, and recovering from the consternation probably diffused throughout that place by the fugitives from the creeks. The event answered the expectation: The Americans were charged and defeated in detached parties, in the environs and in the town, before they had settled any regular plan of operation: The ground about half a mile in front of Halifax afforded a strong position, of which they did not avail themselves; but they were surprised whilst assembling on the wrong side of the bridge over a deep ravine, and were routed with confusion and loss: The only useful expedient which they had adopted was the securing a number of the boats belonging to the inhabitants of the place on the other side of the river, where a party began to intrench themselves, and from whence they fired upon the British when they approached the bank: This circumstance, however, could only be a temporary inconvenience to the King's troops, because the Americans would be obliged to abandon that post on the arrival of the cannon, the eminence on the side of Halifax so perfectly commanded the opposite shore.

Skirmish at  
Halifax..

THE damage sustained by the light troops in taking possession of Halifax amounted only to three men wounded, and a few horses killed and wounded. Some stores of continental cloathing and other supplies were

CHAP. V. were found in the place. Without loss of time, guards were placed on all the avenues to the post, and spies were dispatched over the river above and below the town, to gain intelligence of General Phillips. These precautions and necessary proceedings were speedily completed, owing to the assistance of Lieutenant-colonel Hamilton, who had formerly been connected with that quarter of North Carolina, and was a volunteer on this expedition. A report was afterwards dispatched to Earl Cornwallis, describing the situation of the enemy on the opposite bank of the river, and the accounts from Virginia, which were yet dark and perplexing. In his letter, Tarleton requested that the light company of the guards might be detached on horseback to assist him in the defence of his present post, till he could procure authentic information from James river, as it was rather hazardous for a corps of light dragoons, without carbines, and sixty infantry, to remain on the same ground many days and nights, near fifty miles from the army, in a populous and hostile country. This request was not in any respect complied with : It was answered, that the body of the King's troops could not advance beyond Vivaret's (a.) mill, before favourable news was obtained of General Phillips ; that the light company of the guards could not proceed for want of horses ; but that Tarleton might stay a few days at Halifax, if he thought it safe, in order to acquire intelligence from the northward.

As the rumours from Virginia at this period were obscure, and the accounts of Lord Rawdon's having beat General Greene were confidently (a.) reported, and daily confirmed, (b.) Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton deemed it probable that Earl Cornwallis would forego the expedition towards James river, and return upon the back of Greene to

(a.) In note M.

(a.) In note N.

(b.) In note M.

the frontier of South Carolina. To wait the event of intelligence or orders with greater security, he changed his ground, by leaving Halifax under the inspection of an advanced picket during the day, and he took a position with his corps behind the ravine half a mile from the town. In this situation he earnestly watched every path and road to his camp, and used efforts to collect and secure a number of boats some distance below the town: In this latter employment he was greatly assisted by some refugees and negroes; and his suspense concerning General Phillips was alleviated by the appearance of some friends and emissaries from Virginia, who brought information that the British troops had not quitted James river, but were at or near Cabbins point. This news was immediately communicated to Earl Cornwallis by express, who instantly forwarded the light company (b.) of the guards, with some pioneers, and a piece of cannon. CHAR. V.

BEFORE the light company of the guards, and Lieutenant Sutherland, of the engineers, who was with them, arrived at Halifax, the militia evacuated the intrenchments they had thrown up on the opposite bank: Previous to their quitting the river, they damaged or scuttled the batteaux within their power, which were, however, soon repaired by the carpenters of the town and the pioneers of the army. In order to secure the boats and the passage, Lieutenant Sutherland constructed a small work beyond the river, which was garrisoned by a company of light infantry till the army arrived.

As soon as Earl Cornwallis reached the Roanoke, he ordered Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to cross it with the cavalry and two com-

(b.) In note N.

P p

panies

CHAP. V. panies of mounted infantry, to explore the country and find out the convenient places for passing the rivers Meherrin and Nottoway, which lay between his army and Petersburg, the place of rendezvous proposed in his lordship's letters to General Phillips. The light troops had not proceeded above four miles beyond the Roanoke, when his lordship, attended by six dragoons of his guard, overtook them, and halted their march. On the arrival of some country people, Earl Cornwallis directed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to dismount his dragoons and mounted infantry, and to form them into a rank entire, for the convenient inspection of the inhabitants, and to facilitate the discovery of the villains who had committed atrocious outrages the preceding evening. A serjeant and one private dragoon were pointed out, and accused of rape and robbery: They were conducted to Halifax, where they were condemned to death by martial law. The immediate infliction of the sentence exhibited to the army and manifested to the country the discipline and justice of the British general.

THE light troops reached and passed the river Meherren at Armstead's bridge on the 14th of May: The next day they proceeded to the Nottoway, which they found Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe had crossed higher up, on his march towards Earl Cornwallis, who, in the mean time, had arrived at Jones' house to the northward of the Roanoke. The light troops of the two corps having removed all impediments between their respective armies, and discovered fords in lieu of bridges, which the Americans had destroyed, Brigadier-general Arnold, who had for a few days commanded the King's troops in Virginia, with an escort left his own camp to meet Earl Cornwallis.

MAJOR-GENERAL Phillips, equally beloved and respected for his virtues and his military talents, died at Petersburg a short period before



before the junction of the royal forces. Some information having reached Earl Cornwallis, after he passed the Roanoke, relative to the union of a great reinforcement, destined for the American army under the Marquis de la Fayette, he pressed (O.) forwards his march with great diligence, lest the enemy should attempt any thing against the British at Petersburg before his arrival: No movement was made by the Americans in the absence of Brigadier-general Arnold; and Earl Cornwallis joined his own corps to that which was Phillips', and took the direction of all the King's troops in Virginia soon after the middle of May.

CHAP. V.  
Earl Cornwallis unites the royal armies at Petersburg.

THE force recently employed on James (P.) river, and now added by Earl Cornwallis to his Carolina army, consisted of a respectable detachment of royal artillery, two battalions of light infantry, the 76th and 80th British regiments, the Hessian regiment of Prince Hereditaire, Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe's corps of cavalry and infantry, commonly called the Queen's rangers, one hundred yagers, and Arnold's American legion; besides the garrison of Portsmouth on Elizabeth river. This combination, which had cost Earl Cornwallis so much toil and solicitude, was scarcely completed, when he received Lord Rawdon's report of the advantage obtained over General Greene before Camden. This favourable circumstance, and the account of three British regiments having sailed from Cork for Charles town, eased his anxiety for South Carolina, and gave him brilliant hopes of a glorious campaign in those parts of America where he commanded.

IMMEDIATE measures (Q.) being adopted by Earl Cornwallis to inform Sir Henry Clinton of his arrival at Petersburg, and to notify

(O.) Note O.

(P.) Note P.

(Q.) Note Q.

P p 2

to

CHAP. V. to the garrisons of Charles town and Wilmington, that no additional transports would be wanted in Cape-fear river ; his lordship proceeded to learn the state of the enemy and the country, and to form arrangements, previous to his entering upon active operations. The light troops and spies were directed to find out the situation and strength of the Marquis de la Fayette : A patrol under Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton being pushed to Warwick court house, fell in with a party of four hundred militia in that neighbourhood, who were routed with great loss to the Americans, and a trifling detriment to the British, the former being surpris'd, and the latter considerably shielded by a heavy fall of rain, which prevented the militia from using their fire arms : Fifty Americans were conducted to Petersburg : From the prisoners and by emissaries it was clearly discovered that about one thousand continental troops were posted between Wiltown and Richmond, waiting the junction of General Wayne with the Pennsylvania line, and the expected reinforcements of militia.

ABOUT this time the arrival of a reinforcement (S.) from New York for the Chesapeak army was announced to Earl Cornwallis : The commander in chief had dispatched General Leslie, whose health had benefited by the sea air on the late voyage, and who was always zealous for the public service, with the 17th and 43d British regiments, and two battalions of Anspach, into Virginia, upon receiving news of the march from Wilmington. This addition of force prompted Earl Cornwallis to accelerate the measures for passing James river : A movement of the King's troops from Petersburg towards the frigates, armed vessels, and boats, would save time both to the navy and army, would prevent the Americans giving opposition, and would facilitate the junc-

(S.) Note S.

tion of any part of the troops lately arrived from New York : Accord- CHAP. V.  
 ingly the royal forces marched to Mead's house, opposite to Colonel  
 Byrd's, at Westover. The passage of the river at that place afforded  
 an easy entrance into a fertile quarter of Virginia, and enabled the  
 British to prosecute such operations against the Americans as future cir-  
 cumstances should render eligible.

SOME boats which had been constructed under the inspection of Briga-  
 dier-general Arnold, for the convenience of the royal forces on their ar-  
 rival at Portsmouth, were of great utility on the present occasion. The  
 channel of the ferry, at which the infantry, the cavalry, the artillery, The British pass James river at West-  
 over. the bat horses, the baggage, and the waggons, were to cross, exceeded  
 two miles ; but such were the exertions of the detachment of sailors,  
 under the orders of Captains Aplin and Dundas, that the passage was  
 completed in less than three days. Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, with  
 the Queen's rangers, and the yagers, first arrived at Westover : Great  
 part of the infantry and cannon, and all the baggage, followed that  
 division : The legion cavalry (R.) and some mounted infantry, who  
 had been posted five miles from Mead's, on the Petersburg road, at  
 the commencement of the embarkation, were now directed to move  
 through the brigade of guards, who covered the rear, and on their  
 landing at the opposite shore, to march towards Turkey island.

DURING the passage of the troops, Earl Cornwallis directed the  
 43d regiment, who were part of the late reinforcement, to join the  
 army ; and he desired Major-general Leslie, to proceed with the 17th,  
 and two battalions of Anspach, to Portsmouth, in order to take the  
 command of that post. Brigadier-general Arnold obtained leave to

(R.) Note R.

return

CHAP. V. return to New York, where business of consequence demanded his attendance. As soon as the guards and 43d regiment reached Westover, the main body followed the advanced guard to Turkey island, and on the 27th of May encamped near White-oak swamp. Information was obtained at this place, that the Marquis de la Fayette had abandoned Richmond, and crossed the Chickahomany. The royal army pointed their course towards Bottom bridge, on that river, and the Americans moved with celerity across the South and North Anna.

The Marquis  
de la Fayette  
crosses the  
South and  
North Anna.

A FEW days afterwards, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton being directed to ascertain with his cavalry the situation of the continentals, he advanced to their camp near Mattapony river, drove in their pickets, and made them stand to their arms. Whilst in this situation, a patrol, which had been sent towards the rear of the enemy, conducted an express and his dispatches to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton. Amongst other papers of consequence from the Marquis de la Fayette to Generals Greene, Steuben, &c. one letter, addressed to Mr. Jefferson, the governor of Virginia, was particularly striking: After exhorting that gentleman to turn out the militia, he prophetically declared, that the British success in Virginia resembled the French invasion and possession of Hanover in the preceding war, and was likely to have similar consequences, if the government and the country would exert themselves at the present juncture. The light troops having effected their orders, retired gradually from the presence of their enemy, and with a few prisoners returned to the royal encampment near the North Anna.

At this period, the superiority of the army, and the great superiority of the light troops, were such as to have enabled the British to traverse the country without apprehension or difficulty, either to destroy stores and tobacco in the neighbourhood of the rivers, or to undertake

undertake more important expeditions. While the main body was in Hanover county, and the Marquis de la Fayette lay between them and Fredericksburg, Earl Cornwallis had clear intelligence of the meeting of the governor and assembly at Charlotteville, under the protection of a guard, in order to vote taxes for the exigencies of government, to concert measures for the augmentation of the eighteen-months men, or state troops, and to issue commands for a large draft of militia. At the same time he obtained information, that Baron Steuben was gone to Point of Fork, which is situated at the extremity of James river, between the Fluvanna and Rivanna, with the eighteen-months men, to cover a continental store, consisting of cannon, small arms, and accoutrements. To frustrate these intentions, and to distress the Americans, by breaking up the assembly at Charlotteville, and by taking or destroying the arms and other stores at Point of Fork, his Lordship employed Lieutenant-colonel (a.) Tarleton on the former expedition, as most distant, and on that account more within the reach of cavalry, whilst he committed the latter enterprize to the execution of Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, (b.) with the yagers, the infantry, and the hussars of the rangers. It was designed that these blows should, as near as circumstances would permit, be struck at the same moment; that Tarleton, after completing his business, should retire down the Rivanna, to give assistance to Simcoe, if he failed in his first attempt, and that both should afterwards join the army, which would in the mean time file to the left, through Goochland county, and approach the Point of Fork.

Earl Cornwallis sends detachments to destroy stores.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Tarleton, with one hundred and eighty dragoons, supported by Captain Champagne of the 23d regiment, and

(a.) In note W.

(b.) In note W.



CHAP. V. seventy mounted infantry, left the army in the beginning of June, and proceeded between the North and South Anna. The heat of the weather obliged him to refresh his men and horses in the middle of the day: He pressed forwards in the afternoon, halted at eleven near Louisa court house, and remained on a plentiful plantation till two o'clock in the morning, at which time he again resumed his march. Before dawn he fell in with twelve waggons that were on their journey, under a weak guard, from the upper parts of Virginia and Maryland, with arms and clothing for the continental troops in South Carolina. The waggons and stores were burnt, that no time might be lost, or diminution of force made, by giving them an escort. Soon after daybreak, some of the principal gentlemen of Virginia, who had fled to the borders of the mountains for security, were taken out of their beds: Part were paroled, and left with their families, while others, who were suspected to be more hostile in their sentiments, were carried off. In the neighbourhood of Dr. Walker's, a member of the continental Congress was made prisoner, and the British light troops, after a halt of half an hour to refresh the horses, moved on towards Charlottesville. Various were the accounts on the road concerning this place, and the force it contained. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton imagined, that a march of seventy miles in twenty-four hours, with the caution he had used, might, perhaps, give him the advantage of a surprise, and concluded, that an additional celerity to the object of his destination would undoubtedly prevent a formidable resistance: He therefore approached the Rivanna, which runs at the foot of the hill on which the town is situated, with all possible expedition. The advanced dragoons reported, that the ford was guarded; an attack was nevertheless ordered; the cavalry charged through the water with very little loss, and routed the detachment posted at that place.



As soon as one hundred cavalry had passed the water, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton directed them to charge into the town, to continue the confusion of the Americans, and to apprehend, if possible, the governor and assembly. Seven members of assembly were secured: A Brigadier-general Scott, and several officers and men, were killed, wounded, or taken. The attempt to secure Mr. Jefferson was ineffectual; he discovered the British dragoons from his house, which stands on the point of a mountain, before they could approach him, and he provided for his personal liberty by a precipitate retreat. A great quantity of stores were found in Charlotteville and the neighbourhood; one thousand new firelocks that had been manufactured at Fredericksburg were broken: Upwards of four hundred barrels of powder were destroyed: Several hogheads of tobacco, and some continental clothing and accoutrements, shared the same fate. The next morning the British were joined by about twenty men, who being soldiers of the Saratoga army, had been dispersed throughout the district, and allowed to work in the vicinity of the barracks, where they had been originally imprisoned. Many more would probably have joined their countrymen, if Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton had been at liberty to remain at Charlotteville a few days; but his duty pointed out the propriety of returning the same afternoon, with his corps and the prisoners, down the Rivanna, towards the Point of Fork.

THE gentlemen taken on this expedition were treated with kindness and liberality. In different conversations with Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, on the state of public affairs, they generally and separately avowed, that if England could prevent the intended co-operation of the French fleet and army with the American forces during the ensuing autumn, both Congress and the country would gladly dissolve the French alliance, and enter into treaty with Great Britain. These

CHAP. V. sentiments were communicated to Earl Cornwallis, who, doubtless, made them known to the commander in chief, for the information of the admiral in the West Indies, and the minister in England. The captives of distinction, both civil and military, were restrained by their promise not to quit the camps or line of march of the light troops till they joined the army, which they faithfully complied with; but the lower class were secured as prisoners of war.

IN the mean time, Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe executed the plan committed to his direction with great zeal and indefatigable attention. Baron Steuben did not wait the attack of the King's troops, but abandoning Point of Fork on their approach, lost part of his rear guard in retreating from that place. The British found in the magazine several brass mortars and cannon, an immense quantity of small arms under repair, and other valuable military stores. If the distance would have allowed Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe to send a small party of hussars to inform the corps at Charlotteville of the flight of the Americans, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton might have been in time to harass Baron Steuben's progress, whilst Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe could have pressed him in the rear; and a combination of this sort would in all probability have ruined that body of new levies: But the distance of thirty-five miles in an enemy's country, and the uncertainty of Tarleton's success, perhaps represented such a co-operation as too speculative and precarious.

UPON the arrival of the main body at Jefferson's plantation, in the neighbourhood of Point of Fork, Earl Cornwallis gave directions for carriages to be provided for the conveyance of the brass artillery and other stores, captured at Point of Fork. The prisoners of note brought down the country were, in general, dismissed, on giving their paroles.

Imme-

Immediately afterwards, the 76th regiment, commanded by Major Needham, were attached to the British legion, who were directed to supply them with horses for an expedition. This business was almost completed, when Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton received a copy of his instructions, (T.) which guided his march first to Albemarle court house, to destroy the magazine at that place, and from thence across the Fluvanna, to attempt General Steuben: It was strongly recommended to defeat and disperse his corps, as they were the foundation of a large body of eighteen-months men, lately voted by the province. Tarleton was likewise enjoined to do his utmost to intercept any light troops that might be on their way from South Carolina, and to destroy all the stores and provisions between the Dan and Fluvanna, that the continental armies might receive no assistance from such supplies. These services being performed, the British light troops were to return, with all (a.) their prisoners, both civil and military, to Manchester, where boats would be in readiness to receive and convey them to the royal army at Richmond. Before Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton left his camp to proceed upon this enterprize, reports reached headquarters, that the stores were removed from Albemarle court house, and that the Baron Steuben had made a circuitous move, in order to form a junction with the American army, which had now crossed the North Anna; the expedition, therefore, was countermanded, and the royal forces commenced their march towards Westham.

The British  
move towards  
Richmond.

THE Marquis de la Fayette, who had hitherto practised defensive manoeuvres with skill and security, being now reinforced by General Wayne, with about eight hundred continentals, and some detachments of militia, followed (V.) the British as they proceeded down James

The Marquis  
de la Fayette  
follows the  
King's  
troops.

(T.) Note T.

(a.) In note T.

(V.) Note V.

Q q 2

river.

CHAP. V. river. This design being judiciously arranged, and executed with extreme caution, allowed opportunity for the junction of General Stubben, confined the small detachments of the King's troops, and both saved the property, and animated the drooping spirits, of the Virginians. While the royal army marched, (a.) the rear and left flank were covered by the British legion and the 76th regiment on horseback; and on its arrival at Richmond, Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, with his corps, was posted at Westham, and Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, at Meadow bridge. During these operations, the Marquis de la Fayette continued to approach with the main body, and he advanced his light troops to harass the patrols. On the 18th, (a.) Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton made a forced march, to attempt General Muhlenberg's detachment, who evaded the blow by an early retreat, and the British legion returned to the royal army.

Earl Cornwallis moves towards Williamsburgh.

EARL Cornwallis left Richmond on the 20th, and directed his course by Bottom bridge and New-Kent court house for Williamsburgh. On this movement, the King's troops destroyed some cannon and stores as they passed through the country. After the Chickahomany was passed, Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, with his corps, covered part of the rear, by proceeding slowly on the banks of that river; and Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton performed the same service, by constantly inclining to the Pamunkey. In the mean while, the Marquis de la Fayette employed the light troops, supported by the continentals, to hang upon the rear. At the time the royal army quitted New-Kent court house, the main body of the Americans approached within twelve miles of that place; which circumstance nearly occasioned Earl Corn-

(a.) In note V.

(a.) In note U.

wallis

wallis to countermarch, but, upon reflection, he pursued his design of moving to Williamsburgh, where he arrived on the 25th of June. CHAP. V.

EARLY next morning, the British legion were directed to march from their position in front, leaving only a captain's detachment to forage for the regiment, and to proceed through the army to Burrel's ferry on James' river. Before the horses were unbridled, the sound of musketry and cannon announced the commencement of an action at the outpost, and Lord Chewton soon afterwards delivered Earl Cornwallis' orders for the cavalry and mounted infantry to repair with expedition to the army, (b.) who were already moving to the relief of Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe. The Queen's rangers had destroyed a number of boats and some stores on their route down the Chickahomany, and were now advanced to Spencer's plantation, within six miles of Williamsburgh, when they were (c.) attacked by about seven hundred light troops, under Colonel Butler, supported by some continentals, under General Wayne.

THE cavalry and infantry of the rangers, with the detachment of Hessian yagers, under Captain Ewald, gallantly resisted the efforts of the assailants, who finding they had not effected a surprise, and that they could not make the impression they expected, began to be apprehensive for their own retreat. The movement of Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton from his advanced post in the morning was a favourable incident for the Americans; for if the legion foraging party, under Captain Ogilvie, who accidentally approached the flank of the riflemen, could produce hesitation and astonishment, the charge of the whole cavalry must have considerable assisted Lieutenant-colonel Sim-

Affair near  
the Chicka-  
homany,

(b.) In note U.

(c.) In note U.

CHAP. V. coe, whose judicious conduct obliged Colonel Butler to fall back upon General Wayne, before the arrival of the infantry from Williamsburgh, or the dragoons from Burrell's. The loss in this affair was nearly equal, except that the British took some prisoners, (c.) upwards of thirty being killed and wounded on each side. The Americans retreated to their army at Tyre's plantation, fifteen miles from the field of action, and the King's troops returned in the evening to Williamsburgh, where they found some recruits for the guards, who had arrived during their absence.

(c.) In note W.

NOTES



N O T E S  
TO THE  
F I F T H C H A P T E R.

---

(NOTE A.)

*Copy of Earl Cornwallis's dispatch, No. 8, to Lord George Germain,*  
*dated Guildford, 17th March, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

MY LORD,

I HAVE the satisfaction to inform your lordship, that His Majesty's troops under my command obtained a signal victory, on the 15th instant, over the rebel army commanded by General Greene.

IN pursuance of my intended plan, communicated to your lordship in my dispatch, No. 7, I had encamped, on the 13th instant, at the Quakers' meeting between the forks of Deep river. On the 14th I received information that General Butler, with a body of North-Carolina militia and the expected reinforcements from Virginia, said to consist of a Virginia state regiment, a corps of Virginia eighteen-months men, three thousand Virginia militia and recruits for the Maryland line, had joined General Greene, and that the whole army, which was reported

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

reported to amount to nine or ten thousand men, was marching to attack the British troops. During the afternoon intelligence was brought, which was confirmed in the night, that he had advanced that day to Guildford, about twelve miles from our camp. Being now persuaded that he had resolved to hazard an engagement, after detaching Lieutenant-colonel Hamilton (a.) with our waggons and baggage, escorted by his own regiment, a detachment of one hundred infantry, and twenty cavalry, towards Bell's mill on Deep river, I marched with the rest of the corps at daybreak on the morning of the 15th, to meet the enemy, or attack them in their encampment. About four miles from Guildford our advanced guard, (b.) commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, fell in with a corps of the enemy, consisting of Lee's legion, some backmountainmen and Virginia militia, which he attacked with his usual good conduct and spirit, and defeated; and, continuing our march, we found the rebel army posted on rising grounds about a mile and a half from the court house. The prisoners taken by Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton having been several days with the advanced corps, could give me no account of the enemy's order or position, and the country people were extremely inaccurate in their description of the ground. Immediately between the head of the column and the enemy's line was a considerable plantation, one large field of which was on our left of the road, and two others, with a wood of about two hundred yards broad, between them, on our right of it; beyond these fields the wood continued for several miles to our right. The wood beyond the plantation in our front, in the skirt of which the enemy's first line was formed, was about a mile in depth, the road then leading into an extensive space of cleared ground about Guildford court house. The woods on our right and left were reported to be impracticable for cannon; but as that on our right appeared the most open, I resolved to attack the left wing of the enemy; and, whilst my disposition was making

making for that purpose, I ordered Lieutenant Macleod to bring forward the guns and cannonade their center. The attack was directed to be made in the following order :

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

ON the right, (c.) the regiment of Bose and the 71st regiment, led by Major-general Leslie, and supported by the 1st battalion of guards ; on the left, the 23d and 33d (d.) regiments, led by Lieutenant-colonel Webster, and supported by the grenadiers and 2d battalion of guards, commanded by Brigadier-general O'Hara ; the yagers and light infantry of the guards remained in the wood on the left of the guns, and the cavalry in the road, ready to act as circumstances might require. Our preparations being made, the action began at about half an hour past one in the afternoon ; Major-general Leslie, after being obliged, by the great extent of the enemy's line, to bring up the 1st battalion of guards to the right of the regiment of Bose, soon defeated every thing before him ; Lieutenant-colonel Webster having joined the left of Major-general Leslie's division, was no less successful in his front ; when, on finding that the left of the 33d was exposed to a heavy fire from the right wing of the enemy, he changed his front to the left, and, being supported by the yagers and light infantry of the guards, attacked and routed it ; the grenadiers and 2d battalion of the guards moving forward to occupy the ground left vacant by the movement of Lieutenant-colonel Webster.

ALL the infantry being now in the line, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton had directions to keep his cavalry compact, and not to charge without positive orders, except to protect any of the corps from the most evident danger of being defeated. The excessive thickness of the woods rendered our bayonets of little use, and enabled the broken enemy to make frequent stands, with an irregular fire, which occasioned some

R r

loss,

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

loss, and to several of the corps great delay, particularly on our right, where the 1st battalion of the guards and regiment of Bose were warmly engaged in front, flank, and rear, with some of the enemy that had been routed on the first attack, and with part of the extremity of their left wing, which, by the closeness of the woods, had been passed unbroken. The 71st regiment and grenadiers, and 2d battalion of the guards, not knowing what was passing on their right, and hearing the fire advance on their left, continued to move forward, the artillery keeping pace with them on the road, followed by the cavalry. The 2d battalion of guards first gained the clear ground near Guildford court house, and found a corps of continental infantry, much superior in number, formed in the open field on the left of the road. Glowing with impatience to signalize themselves, they instantly attacked and defeated them, taking two six-pounders; but, pursuing into the wood with too much ardour, were thrown into confusion by a heavy fire, and immediately charged and driven (e.) back into the field by Colonel Washington's dragoons, with the loss of the six-pounders they had taken. The enemy's cavalry was soon repulsed by a well-directed fire from two three-pounders just brought up by Lieutenant Macleod, and by the appearance of the grenadiers of the guards, and of the 71st regiment, which, having been impeded by some deep ravines, were now coming out of the wood on the right of the guards, opposite to the court house. By the spirited exertions of Brigadier-general O'Hara, though wounded, the 2d battalion of the guards was soon rallied, and, supported by the grenadiers, returned to the charge with the greatest alacrity. The 23d regiment arriving at that instant from our left, and Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton having advanced with part of the cavalry, the enemy were soon put to flight, and the two six-pounders once more fell into our hands; two ammunition waggons, and two other six-pounders, being all the artillery they had in the field,

were

were likewise taken. About this time the 33d regiment and light infantry of the guards, after overcoming many difficulties, completely routed the corps which was opposed to them, and put an end to the action in this (f.) quarter. The 23d and 71st regiments, with part of the cavalry, were ordered to pursue; the remainder of the cavalry was detached with Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to our right, (g.) where a heavy fire still continued, and where his appearance and spirited attack contributed much to a speedy termination of the action. The militia, with which our right wing had been engaged, dispersed in the woods; the continentals went off by the Reedy fork, beyond which it was not in my power to follow them, as their cavalry had suffered but little. Our troops were excessively fatigued by an action which lasted an hour and a half, and our wounded, dispersed over an extensive space of country, required immediate attention. The care of our wounded, and the total want of provisions in an exhausted country, made it equally impossible for me to follow the blow the next day. The enemy did not stop until they got to the iron works on Troublesome creek, eighteen miles from the field of battle.

FROM our observation, and the best accounts we could procure, we did not doubt but the strength of the enemy exceeded seven thousand men; their militia composed their line, with parties advanced to the rails of the field in their front; the continentals were posted obliquely in the rear of their right wing. Their cannon fired on us whilst we were forming from the center of the line of militia, but were withdrawn to the continentals before the attack.

I HAVE the honour to enclose to your lordship the list of our killed and wounded. Captain Schutz's wound is supposed to be mortal; but the surgeons assure me that none of the other officers are in danger, and

R r 2

that

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

that a great number of the men will soon recover. I cannot ascertain the loss of the enemy, but it must have been considerable; between two and three hundred dead were left upon the field; many of their wounded that were able to move, whilst we were employed in the care of our own, escaped and followed the routed enemy; and our cattle drivers and forage parties have reported to me, that the houses in a circle of six or eight miles round us are full of others: Those that remained we have taken the best care of in our power. We took few prisoners, owing to the excessive thickness of the wood facilitating their escape, and every man of our army being repeatedly wanted for action.

THE conduct and actions of the officers and soldiers that compose this little army will do more justice to their merit than I can by words. Their persevering intrepidity in action, their invincible patience in the hardships and fatigues of a march of above six hundred miles, in which they have forded several large rivers and numberless creeks, many of which would be reckoned large rivers in any other country in the world, without tents or covering against the climate, and often without provisions, will sufficiently manifest their ardent zeal for the honour and interests of their Sovereign and their country.

I HAVE been particularly indebted to Major-general Leslie for his gallantry and exertion in the action, as well as his assistance in every other part of the service. The zeal and spirit of Brigadier-general O'Hara merit my highest commendations; for after receiving two dangerous wounds he continued in the field whilst the action lasted; by his earnest attention on all other occasions, seconded by the officers and soldiers of his brigade: His Majesty's guards are no less distinguished by their order and discipline than by their spirit and valour.

The



The Hessian regiment of Bose deserves my warmest praises for its discipline, alacrity, and courage, and does honour to Major Du Buy, who commands it, and who is an officer of superior merit. I am much obliged to Brigadier-general Howard, who served as volunteer, for his spirited example on all occasions. Lieutenant-colonel Webster conducted his brigade like an officer of experience and gallantry. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's good conduct and spirit in the management of his cavalry was conspicuous during the whole action; and Lieutenant Macleod, who commanded the artillery, proved himself upon this, as well as all former occasions, a most capable and deserving officer. The attention and exertions of my aid-de-camps, and of all the other public officers of the army, contributed very much to the success of the day.

I HAVE constantly received the most zealous assistance from Governor Martin during my command in the southern district: Hoping that his presence would tend to incite the loyal subjects of this province to take an active part with us, he has cheerfully submitted to the fatigues and dangers of our campaign: But his delicate constitution has suffered by his public spirit; for, by the advice of the physicians, he is now obliged to return to England for the recovery of his health.

THIS part of the country is so totally destitute of subsistence, that forage is not nearer than nine miles, and the soldiers have been two days without bread; I shall, therefore, leave about seventy (h.) of the worst of the wounded cases at the New-garden Quaker meeting house, with proper assistance, and move the remainder with the army to-morrow morning to Bell's mill. I hope our friends will heartily take an active part with us, to which I shall continue to encourage them; still approaching our shipping by easy marches, that we may procure the necessary.

Notes to the Fifth Chapter. necessary supplies for farther operations, and lodge our sick and wounded where proper attention can be paid to them.

THIS dispatch will be delivered to your lordship by my aid-de-camp, Captain Brodrick, who is a very promising officer, and whom I beg leave to recommend to your lordship's countenance and favour.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE B.)

*Return of the killed, wounded, and missing, of the troops under the command of Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis, in the action at Guildford, March 15th, 1781.*

ROYAL artillery. 1 lieutenant, 1 rank and file, killed; 4 rank and file wounded.

Brigade of guards. 1 lieutenant colonel, 8 serjeants, 28 rank and file, killed; 2 brigadier generals, 6 captains, 1 ensign, 1 staff officer, 2 serjeants, 2 drummers, 143 rank and file, wounded; 22 rank and file missing.

23d foot. 1 lieutenant, 12 rank and file, killed; 1 captain, 1 serjeant, 53 rank and file, wounded.

33d foot. 1 ensign, 1 serjeant, 9 rank and file, killed; 1 lieutenant colonel, 2 lieutenants, 3 ensigns, 1 staff officer, 1 serjeant, 55 rank and file, wounded.

71st foot. 1 ensign, 1 serjeant, 11 rank and file, killed; 4 serjeants, 46 rank and file, wounded.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

Regiment of Bose. 3 serjeants, 7 rank and file, killed; 2 captains, 2 lieutenants, 1 ensign, 6 serjeants, 3 drummers, 53 rank and file, wounded; 1 serjeant, 2 rank and file, missing.

Yagers. 4 rank and file killed; 3 rank and file wounded; 1 rank and file missing.

British legion. 3 rank and file killed; 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 serjeant, 12 rank and file, wounded.

Total. 1 lieutenant colonel, 2 lieutenants, 2 ensigns, 13 serjeants, 75 rank and file, killed; 2 brigadier generals, 2 lieutenant colonels, 9 captains, 4 lieutenants, 5 ensigns, 2 staff officers, 15 serjeants, 5 drummers, 369 rank and file, wounded; 1 serjeant, 25 rank and file, missing.

#### OFFICERS' NAMES KILLED AND WOUNDED.

Royal artillery. Lieutenant O'Hara, killed.

Brigade of guards. Hon. Lieutenant-colonel Stewart, killed; Brigadier-generals O'Hara and Howard, and Captain Swanton, wounded; Captains Schutz, Maynard, and Goodricke, wounded, and since dead; Captains Lord Dunglafs and Maitland, Ensign Stuart and Adjutant Colquhoun, wounded.

23d foot. Second-lieutenant Robinson, killed; Captain Peter, wounded.

33d foot. Ensign Talbot, killed; Lieutenant-colonel Webster, (since dead) Lieutenants Salvin, Wynyard, Ensigns Kelly, Gore, and Hughes, and Adjutant Fox, wounded.

71st foot. Ensign Grant, killed.

Regiment

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

Regiment of Bose. Captains Wilmouisky, (since dead) Eichendrobt,  
Lieutenants Schwener and Graise, Ensign de Trott, (since dead)  
wounded.

British legion. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, wounded.

J. DESPARD,  
Deputy adjutant general.

*Return of ordnance, ammunition, and arms, taken at the battle of Guildford,  
March 15, 1781.*

#### B R A S S   O R D N A N C E.

MOUNTED on travelling carriages, with limbers and boxes complete, 4 six-pounders. Shot, round, fixed with powder, 160 six-pounders. Case, fixed with ditto, 50 six-pounders; 2 ammunition waggons, 1300 stands of arms distributed among the militia, and destroyed in the field.

J. MACLEOD,  
Lieutenant, and commanding  
officer of artillery.

---

#### ( N O T E   C . )

*By the Right Honourable Charles Earl Cornwallis, Lieutenant-general of  
His Majesty's forces, &c.*

#### A   P R O C L A M A T I O N.

WHEREAS, by the blessing of Almighty God, His Majesty's  
arms have been crowned with signal success, by the complete victory  
obtained

obtained over the rebel forces on the 15th instant, I have thought proper to issue this proclamation to call upon all loyal subjects to stand forth, and take an active part in restoring good order and government. And whereas it has been represented to me, that many persons in this province, who have taken a share in this unnatural rebellion, but having experienced the oppression and injustice of the rebel government, and having seen the errors into which they have been deluded by falsehoods and misrepresentations, are sincerely desirous of returning to their duty and allegiance, I do hereby notify and promise to all such persons, (murderers excepted) that if they will surrender themselves, with their arms and ammunition, at head quarters, or to the officer commanding in the district contiguous to their respective places of residence, on or before the 20th day of April next, they shall be permitted to return to their homes, upon giving a military parole, and shall be protected in their persons and properties from all sort of violence from the British troops, and will be restored as soon as possible to all the privileges of legal and constitutional government.

GIVEN under my hand at head quarters, this 18th day of March, A. D. 1781, and in the twenty-first year of His Majesty's reign.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE D.)

Camp, at the iron works, ten miles from Guildford  
court house, March 16, 1781.

S I R,

ON the 10th, I wrote to his excellency General Washington, from the High-rock ford, on the Haw river, a copy of which I en-

S s

closed

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

closed your excellency, that I had effected a junction with a continental regiment of eighteen-months men, and two considerable bodies of militia belonging to Virginia and North Carolina. After this junction, I took the resolution of attacking the enemy without loss of time, and made the necessary disposition accordingly, being persuaded, that if we were successful, it would prove ruinous to the enemy, and, if otherwise, it would only prove a partial evil to us.

THE army marched from the High-rock ford on the 12th, and on the 14th arrived at Guildford. The enemy lay at the Quaker meeting house, on Deep river, eight miles from our camp. On the morning of the 15th, our reconnoitering party reported the enemy advancing on the great Salisbury road. The army was drawn up in (a.) three lines: The front line was composed of North-Carolina militia, under the command of Generals Butler and Eaton; the second line of Virginia militia, commanded by Generals Stephens and Lawson, forming two brigades; the third line, consisting of two brigades, one of Virginia, and one of Maryland continental troops, commanded by General Huger and Colonel Williams. Lieutenant-colonel Washington, with the dragoons (b.) of the 1st and 3d regiments, a detachment of light infantry, composed of continental troops, and a regiment of riflemen, under Colonel Lynch, formed a corps of observation for the security of our right flank. Lieutenant-colonel Lee, with his legion, a detachment of light infantry, and a corps of riflemen, under Colonel Campbell, formed a corps of observation for the security of our left flank.

THE greater part of this country is a wilderness, with a few cleared fields interspersed here and there. The army was drawn up on a large hill of ground, surrounded by other hills, the greater part of which

was



was covered with timber and thick underbrush. The front line was posted with two field pieces just on the edge of the woods, and the back of a fence, which ran parallel with the line, with an open field directly in their front. The second line was in the woods, about three hundred yards in the rear of the first; and the continental troops about four hundred yards in the rear of the second, with a double front, as the hill drew to a point where they were posted; and on the right and left were two old fields. In this position we waited the approach of the enemy, having previously sent off the baggage to this place, appoint to rendezvous at, in case of a defeat. Lieutenant-colonel Lee, with his legion, his infantry, and part of his riflemen, met the enemy on their advance, and had a severe skirmish with Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, in which the enemy suffered greatly. Captain Armstrong charged the British legion, and cut down near thirty of their dragoons; but as the enemy reinforced their party, Lieutenant-colonel Lee was obliged to retire, and take his position in the line.

THE action commenced by a cannonade, which lasted about twenty minutes, when the enemy advanced in three columns; the Hessians on the right, the guards in the center, and Lieutenant-colonel Webster's brigade on the left. The whole moved through the old fields to attack the North-Carolina brigades, who waited the attack until the enemy got within one hundred and forty yards, when part of them began to fire, but a considerable part left the ground without firing at all. The general and field officers did all they could to induce the men to stand their ground; but neither the advantages of the position, nor any other consideration, could induce them to stay. General Stephens, and General Lawson, and the field officers of those brigades, were more successful in their exertions. The Virginia militia gave the enemy a warm reception, and kept up a heavy fire for a long

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

time; but being beat back, the action became general almost every where. The corps of observation, under Washington and Lee, were warmly engaged, and did great execution. In a word, the engagement was long and severe, and the enemy only gained their point by superior discipline.

THEY having broken the 2d Maryland regiment, and turned our left flank, got into the rear of the Virginia brigade; and appearing to be gaining our right, which would have encircled the whole of the continental troops, I thought it most adviseable to order a retreat. About this time Lieutenant-colonel Washington made a charge with the horse upon a part of the brigade of guards; and the first regiment of Marylanders, commanded by Colonel Gunby, and seconded by Lieutenant-colonel Howard, followed the horse with their bayonets, near the whole of the party fell a sacrifice. General Huger was the last that was engaged, and gave the enemy a check. We retreated in good order to the Reedy-fork river, and crossed at the ford, about three miles from the field of action, and then halted, and drew up the troops, until we collected most of the stragglers. We lost our artillery, and two ammunition waggons, the greater part of the horses being killed before the retreat began, and it being impossible to move the pieces but along the great road. After collecting our stragglers, we retired to this camp, ten miles distant from Guildford.

FROM the best information I can get, the enemy's loss is very great, not less in killed and wounded than six hundred men, besides some few prisoners that we brought off.

INCLOSED I send your excellency a return of our killed, wounded, and missing. Most of the latter have gone home, as is but too customary

tomary with the militia after an action. I cannot learn that the enemy has got any considerable number of prisoners. Our men are all in good spirits, and in perfect readiness for another field day.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

I ONLY lament the loss of several valuable officers, who are killed and wounded in the action. Among the latter are General Stephens, shot through the thigh, and General Huger in the hand; and among the former is Major Anderson, one of the Maryland line.

THE firmness of the officers and foldiers, during the whole campaign, has been most unparalleled. Amidst innumerable difficulties, they have discovered a degree of magnanimity and fortitude that will for ever add a lustre to their military reputation.

I have the honour to be,

With very great respect and esteem,

Your excellency's most obedient,

And most humble servant,

NATHANIEL GREENE.

---

(NOTE E.)

*Return of the killed, wounded, and missing, of the continental troops, in the action of the 15th of March, 1781, near Guildford court house, in North Carolina.*

Camp, Speedwell furnace, Guildford county,  
North Carolina, March 17, 1781.

BRIGADE of Virginia regulars, commanded by Brigadier-general Huger. Killed, 1 captain, 2 subalterns, 3 serjeants, 23 rank and file. Wounded, 4 serjeants, 35 rank and file. Missing, 39 rank and file.

Brigade:

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

Brigade of Maryland regulars, commanded by Colonel Williams. Killed, 1 major, 1 subaltern, 2 serjeants, 11 rank and file. Wounded, 5 captains, 1 serjeant, 36 rank and file. Missing, 3 serjeants, 6 drums and fifes, 88 rank and file.

Of Delaware battalion, Captain Kirkwood's company. Killed, 7 rank and file. Wounded, 2 subalterns, 11 rank and file. Missing, 2 drums and fifes, 13 rank and file.

Detachments of 1st and 3d regiments of cavalry, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Washington. Killed, 3 rank and file. Wounded, (prisoners of war) 2 captains, 2 subalterns, 4 rank and file. Missing, 3 rank and file.

Partizan legion, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Lee. Killed, 3 rank and file. Wounded, (prisoners of war) 1 captain, 1 serjeant, 7 rank and file. Missing, 7 rank and file.

Total. 1 major, 9 captains, 7 subalterns, 14 serjeants, 8 drums and fifes, 290 rank and file.

Brigadier-general Huger slightly wounded in the hand.

I HAVE received no return of the companies of artillery; but their loss, &c. is very inconsiderable.

THIS return is the most accurate that can be obtained at present; but it is expected many of the missing will yet rejoin their corps.

O. H. WILLIAMS,  
Deputy adjutant general.

*Return*

*Return of militia killed, wounded, and missing, in the action at Guildford court house, in North Carolina, the 15th of March, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

Camp, Speedwell furnace, North Carolina  
March 17th, 1781.

FIRST brigade, Virginia militia, commanded by Brigadier-general Stevens. Killed, 2 captains, 9 rank and file. Wounded, 1 captain, 4 subalterns, 30 rank and file. Missing, 1 major, 1 captain, 3 subalterns, 3 serjeants, 133 rank and file.

Second brigade, Virginia militia, commanded by Brigadier-general Lawson. Killed, 1 rank and file. Wounded, 1 major, 2 subalterns, 13 rank and file. Missing, 1 subaltern, 3 serjeants, 83 rank and file.

Rifle regiments, commanded by Colonels Campbell and Lynch. Killed, 2 captains, 1 rank and file. Wounded, 1 captain, 1 subaltern, 1 serjeant, 13 rank and file. Missing, 1 captain, 7 subalterns, 8 serjeants, 78 rank and file.

Total. 8 captains, 18 subalterns, 15 serjeants, 361 rank and file.

Brigadier-general Stevens wounded through the thigh. Many of those missing are expected to return, or to be found at their homes.

O. H. WILLIAMS,  
Deputy adjutant general.

*Return of the North-Carolina militia killed, wounded, and missing, in the action at Guildford court house, in North Carolina, the 15th of March, 1781.*

TWO brigades, commanded by Brigadier-generals Butler and Eaton. Killed, 6 rank and file. Wounded, 1 captain, 1 subaltern, 3 rank and file. Missing, 2 captains, 9 subalterns, 552 rank and file.

Total. 3 captains, 10 subalterns, 561 rank and file.

The

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

The North-Carolina cavalry, commanded by the Marquis of Bretigny, lost one man killed, and one wounded.

I HAVE received no return of one of the North-Carolina regiments. Those missing are supposed to have gone home. According to the reports of the general and field officers, very few were killed and taken, most of them having thrown away their arms, and abandoned the field early in the action.

O. H. WILLIAMS,  
Deputy adjutant general.

Published by order of Congress,

CHARLES THOMPSON, Sec.

---

(NOTE F.)

Philadelphia, April 18.

*The following is an extract of a letter from General Green's head quarters, Colonel Ramsey's, Deep river, March 30, 1781.*

I WROTE to you the 23d instant from Buffaloe (a.) creek, since which we have been in pursuit of the enemy, with a determination to bring them to action again.

ON the 27th, we arrived at Rigden's ford, twelve miles above this, and found the enemy then lay at Ramsey's mill, from which it was imagined they meant to wait an attack; our baggage was accordingly left under proper guard in our rear, and the army put in motion with-  
out



out loss of time; but we found the enemy had crossed some hours before our arrival, (b.) and with such precipitation, that they left their dead unburied on the ground. Our men had suffered for want of provisions (c.) in this exhausted part of the country, that many of them fainted on their march, and the difficulty of procuring any immediate supply prevented our farther pursuit. The enemy are on the route to Cross creek and Wilmington.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

FROM undoubted information we learn, that the enemy's loss in the battle of Guildford amounted to six hundred and thirty-three, exclusive of officers, and most of their principal officers were either killed or wounded.

NOTHING but blood and slaughter has prevailed among the Whigs and Tories, and their inveteracy against each other must, if it continues, depopulate this part of the country.

SINCE we re-crossed the Dan river, we have taken at different times upwards of one hundred and twenty British prisoners, and several officers.

THE enemy left seventy of our wounded, who had fallen into their hands in the action of the 15th, behind them; except these, they have taken but few prisoners; not so many as we took of theirs, notwithstanding they kept the ground.

Tt

(NOTE

## (NOTE G.)

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter. *Copy of Earl Cornwallis's dispatch, No. 9, to Lord George Germain, dated  
Wilmington, April 18, 1781.*

MY LORD,

I MARCHED from Guildford on the morning of the 18th of March, and next day arrived at Bell's (a.) mill, where I gave the troops two days rest, and procured a small supply of provisions. From thence I proceeded slowly towards Cross creek, attending to the convenience of subsistence, and the movement of our wounded. On my way I issued the enclosed proclamation, and took every other means in my power to reconcile enemies, and to encourage our friends to join us.

FROM all my information I intended to have halted at Cross creek, as a proper place to refresh and refit the troops; and I was much disappointed, on my arrival there, to find it totally impossible: Provisions were scarce, not four days forage within twenty miles, and to us the navigation of Cape-fear river to Wilmington (b.) impracticable; for the distance by water is upwards of one hundred miles, the breadth seldom above an hundred yards, the banks high, and the inhabitants on each side generally hostile. Under these circumstances, I was obliged to continue my march to this place, in the neighbourhood of which I arrived on the 7th instant.

I HAVE been busy since my arrival in disposing of our sick and wounded, and in procuring the necessary supplies to put the troops in a proper state to take the field. I am in daily expectation of seeing

the

the reinforcement from Europe, and of receiving the commander in chief's directions for the farther operations of the campaign.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

CAPTAIN Schutz died a few days after the action, as we expected; but I am sorry to inform (c.) your lordship, that, notwithstanding the flattering appearances, and the assurances of the surgeons, Colonel Webster, (whose loss is severely felt by me and the whole army) Captain Maynard of the guards, and Captain Wilmourky and Ensign de Trott of the regiment of Bose, are since dead: The rest of the officers are recovering fast, and many of the wounded soldiers have already joined their regiments.

MAJOR Craig, who took possession of this place in the latter end of January, has conducted himself with great zeal and capacity, having, with a very small force, not only secured the post from all insults, but made himself respectable in this part of the country by several successful excursions.

I SHALL not trouble your lordship on the subject of South Carolina, having directed Lord Rawdon, who commands on the frontiers, and Lieutenant-colonel Balfour, commandant of Charles town, to take every opportunity of communicating to your lordship, as well as the commander in chief, the state of affairs in that province. As they are both officers of capacity and great merit, I trust that their conduct will have given satisfaction.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

*Copy of Earl Cornwallis's dispatch, No. 10, to Lord George Germain, dated  
Wilmington, April 18, 1781.*

MY LORD,

AS Governor Martin returns to England by this opportunity, I shall beg leave to refer your lordship to him for many particulars relative to this province: But I think it incumbent on me to be explicit to your lordship, as His Majesty's minister, on one or two capital points.

THE principal reasons for undertaking the winter's campaign were, the difficulty of a defensive war in South Carolina, and the hopes that our friends in North Carolina, who were said to be very numerous, would make good their promises of assembling and taking an active part with us, in endeavouring to re-establish His Majesty's government. Our experience has shewn, that their numbers are not so great as had been represented, and that their friendship was only passive, for we have received little assistance from them since our arrival in the province; and although I gave the strongest and most public assurances, that after refitting and depositing our sick and wounded, I should return to the upper country, not above two hundred have been prevailed upon to follow us, either as provincials or militia.

THIS being the case, the immense extent of this country, cut with numberless rivers and creeks, and the total want of internal navigation, which renders it impossible for our army to remain long in the heart of the country, will make it very difficult to reduce this province to obedience by a direct attack upon it.

IF,

If, therefore, it should appear to be the interest of Great Britain, to maintain what she already possesses, and to push the war in the southern provinces, I take the liberty of giving it as my opinion, that a serious attempt upon Virginia would be the most solid plan, because successful operations might not only be attended with important consequences there, but would tend to the security of South Carolina, and ultimately to the submission of North Carolina. The great reinforcements sent by Virginia to General Greene whilst General Arnold was in the Chesapeake, are convincing proofs, that small expeditions do not frighten that powerful province.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE H.)

*Copy of Earl Cornwallis's dispatch, No. 11, to Lord George Germain,  
dated Wilmington, April 23d, 1781.*

MY LORD,

I YESTERDAY received an express (a.) by a small vessel from Charles town, informing me that a frigate was there, but not then able to get over the bar, with dispatches from Sir Henry Clinton, notifying to me, that Major-general Phillips had been dispatched into the Chesapeake with a considerable force, with instructions to co-operate with this army, and to put himself under my orders. This express likewise brought me the disagreeable accounts, that the upper posts of South Carolina were in the most imminent danger, from an alarming

I.

spirit

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

spirit of revolt among many of the people, and by a movement of General Greene's army. Although the expresse (b.) that I sent from Cross creek to inform Lord Rawdon of the necessity I was under of coming to this place, and to warn him of the possibility of such an attempt of the enemy, had all miscarried, yet his lordship was lucky enough to be apprized of General Greene's approach at least six days before he could possibly reach Camden; and I am therefore still induced to hope, from my opinion of his lordship's abilities, and the precautions taken by him and Lieutenant-colonel Balfour, that we shall not be so unfortunate as to lose any considerable corps.

THE distance (c.) from hence to Camden, the want of forage and subsistence on the greatest part of the road, and the difficulty of passing the Pedee when opposed by an enemy, render it utterly impossible for me to give immediate assistance, and I apprehend a possibility of the utmost hazard to this little corps, without the chance of a benefit in the attempt; for if we are so unlucky as to suffer a severe blow in South Carolina, the spirit of revolt in that province would become very general, and the numerous rebels in this province be encouraged to be more than ever active and violent. This might enable General Greene to hem me in among the great rivers, and by cutting off our subsistence, render our arms useless; and to remain here for transports to carry us off, would be a work of time, would lose our cavalry, and be otherwise as ruinous and disgraceful to Britain as most events could be. I have, therefore, under so many embarrassing circumstances, (but looking upon Charles town as safe from any immediate attack from the rebels) resolved to take advantage of General Greene's having left the back part of Virginia open, and march immediately into that province, to attempt a junction with General Phillips.

I HAVE



I HAVE more readily decided upon this measure, because if General Greene fails in the object of his march, his retreat will relieve South Carolina; and my force being very insufficient for offensive operations in this province, may be employed usefully in Virginia, in conjunction with the corps under the command of General Phillips.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE I.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated Wilmington,  
April 24, 1781.*

S I R,

I HAVE reflected very seriously on the subject of my attempt to march into Virginia, and have, in consequence, written a letter to Major-general Phillips, of which I have the honour to enclose a copy to your excellency. I have, likewise, directed Lieutenant-colonel Balfour to send transports and provisions to this post, in case I should find the junction with Major-general Phillips inexpedient or impracticable, and that I should have the mortification of seeing that there is no other method of conveying His Majesty's troops to South Carolina without the most evident danger of being lost.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

## (NOTE K.)

*Extract. — From Lord Rawdon to Earl Cornwallis. dated May 24, 1781.*

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Balfour was so good as to meet me at Nelson's. He took this measure, that he might represent his circumstances to me. He stated, that the revolt was universal, and that from the little reason to apprehend this serious invasion, the old works of Charles town had been in part levelled, to make way for new ones, which were not yet constructed; that its garrison was inadequate to oppose any force of consequence; and that the defection of the town's people shewed itself in a thousand instances. I agreed with him in the conclusion to be drawn from thence, that any misfortune happening to my corps might entail the loss of the province.

## (NOTE L.)

*Copy of Earl Cornwallis's letter to Major-general Phillips, dated Wilmington, April 24, 1781.*

DEAR PHILLIPS,

MY situation here is very distressing: Greene took the advantage of my being obliged to come to this place, and has marched to South Carolina. My expresses to Lord Rawdon, on my leaving Cross creek, warning him of the possibility of such a movement, have all failed; mountaineers and militia have poured into the back part of that province, and I much fear that Lord Rawdon's posts will be so distant from each other, and his troops so scattered, as to put him into the greatest danger

danger of being beat in detail, and that the worst of consequences may happen to most of the troops out of Charles town. By a direct move towards Camden, I cannot get time enough to relieve Lord Rawdon; and, should he have fallen, my army would be exposed to the utmost danger from the great rivers I should have to pass, the exhausted state of the country, the numerous militia, the almost-universal spirit of revolt which prevails in South Carolina, and the strength of Greene's army, whose continentals alone are at least as numerous as I am; and I could be of no use on my arrival at Charles town, there being nothing to apprehend at present for that post; I shall, therefore, immediately march up the country by Duplin court house, pointing towards Hillsborough, in hopes to withdraw Greene; if that should not succeed, I should be much tempted to form a junction with you. The attempt is exceedingly hazardous, and many unforeseen difficulties may render it totally impracticable, so that you must not take any steps that may expose your army to the danger of being ruined: I shall march to the lowest ford of the Roanoke, which, I am informed, is about twenty miles above Taylor's ferry. Send every possible intelligence to me by the cypher I enclose, and make every movement in your power to facilitate our meeting (which must be somewhere near Petersburg) with safety to your own army: I mention the lowest ford, because in a hostile country ferries cannot be depended upon; but if I should decide on the measure of endeavouring to come to you, I shall try to surprise the boats at some of the ferries, from Halifax, upwards.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

I am, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

U u

(NOTE

## (NOTE M.)

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Nabunta creek, May 5, 1781.*

DEAR TARLETON,

YOU must be sensible that, in the present instance, I put the greatest confidence in you. I trust to your discretion my honour and future happiness. I am convinced you will be on your guard against the sanguine opinions of friends and your own prejudices. Above all things, attend to dates, and distinguish between *is* and *has been*. You will read my letter. Send as many messages or notes as you can; but all conveyed in the same cautious language. I confide in the correctness of your report as to the practicability of passing, and the certainty of a speedy communication with Phillips: If it won't do, take care not to stay too long.

Yours very sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

My letters to Phillips are in the new cypher; he has not the old one.

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Nabunta creek, 5th May, 1781.*

IF Cob's mill can grind fifteen hundred weight in twenty-four hours, and if it appears by your information that General Phillips is certainly within reach of joining, you may go on to Halifax to secure a passage,

a passage, reporting to me the state of things, to direct the movements of the infantry: Forward the enclosed by different hands.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

Faithfully yours,

CORNWALLIS.

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated camp at Crowell's plantation, near Tarr river, 8th May, 1781.*

✉ DEAR TARLETON,

I CANNOT venture to pass the Roanoke without some certain information of Phillips, or of the state of things in Virginia. You will read and forward the enclosed letter: Not having been able to mount the light company of the guards, I think they would only embarrass you. You may stay two or three days at Halifax, if you think it safe: If in that time you hear any certain or favourable news of Phillips, let me know it, and I will move forward immediately; if not, return by whatever route you please, and join me near Cob's or Vivaret's (a.) mill, fixing every possible channel of intelligence at any price.

I UNDERSTAND that General Butler is at Wake court house with a few militia. Our accounts of Lord Rawdon's success continue to be confirmed. (b.)

Faithfully yours,

CORNWALLIS.

I LOOK northward, if possible.

## (NOTE N.)

Notes to the Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Major-general Phillips, dated camp on  
Fifth Tarr river, 8th May, 1781.  
Chapter.

✍ DEAR PHILLIPS,

I CAN learn no satisfactory accounts of you: Some say that you are embarked; others, that you have passed James river. I have intelligence, almost amounting to a (a.) certainty, that Lord Rawdon has beat Greene at Camden, and consequently South Carolina is safe: Still I wish to join you; but as many circumstances may happen which may prevent my staying long enough in this country to get sufficient information of you, you must take no steps with that view that may hazard the safety of your own army. Let me hear from you by every possible opportunity.

Yours sincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Crowell's plantation, May 8, 1781, eight P. M.

✍ DEAR TARLETON,

I HAVE just received yours of this date with much more satisfaction than that of yesterday. The light company of the guards (b.) shall proceed immediately; I will follow as fast as possible: You will of course secure the opposite bank when Sutherland arrives.

I am, very sincerely, yours,

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE



## (NOTE O.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Jones' plantation, May 15th, 1781, five P. M.*

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

I AM making all possible expedition, and hope to be at Nottoway on Friday evening. I would have you proceed to-morrow to the Nottoway, and remain near Simcoe's infantry. Arnold is ordered to march immediately to meet me on the Nottoway. Wayne's having joined La Fayette, makes me rather uneasy for Arnold until we join. If you should hear of any movement of the enemy in force to disturb Arnold's march, you will give him every assistance in your power.

## (NOTE P.)

*Extract. — From Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. to Lord George Germain, dated New-York, May 18th, 1781.*

MY LORD,

I AM happy in being able to congratulate your lordship on the very important success which the King's troops in Virginia have had on their late expedition to Petersburg, &c. (as described in Brigadier-general Arnold's letter) which must ultimately be productive of the very best consequences to His Majesty's service, as it is credibly reported that the greatest part of the tobacco collected there was French property, and almost their entire annual remittance.

*Extract.*

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

*Extract. — From Brigadier-general Arnold to Sir Henry Clinton.*

Petersburg, May 12, 1781.

I AM extremely sorry to inform your excellency, that Major-general Phillips is reduced so low by a fever, which seized him on the 2d instant, that he is incapable of business, and the physicians are not without fears for his safety. In this situation, I think it my duty to transmit to your excellency, by express, a detail of the proceedings of the army under the orders of Major-general Phillips, since they left Portsmouth, which his indisposition prevented him from doing as he intended.

ON the 18th of April, the light infantry, part of the 76th and 80th regiments, the Queen's rangers, yagers, and American legion, embarked at Portsmouth, and fell down to Hampton road: on the 19th, proceeded up James river to Burwell's ferry; on the 20th, Lieutenant-colonel Abercrombie, with the light infantry, proceeded up the Chickahomany in boats; Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, with a detachment, to York; Lieutenant-colonel Dundas, with another detachment, landed at the mouth of the Chickahomany; and Major-general Phillips and myself landed with part of the army at Williamsburgh, where about five hundred militia were posted, who retired upon our approach. The militia at York crossed the river before the arrival of Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, who made a few prisoners, spiked and destroyed some cannon, and next day returned to Williamsburgh.

ON the 22d, the troops marched to Chickahomany. We were met on the road, five miles from the mouth of the river, by Lieutenant-colonel Dundas with his detachment: This evening the troops, ca-

valry,

valry, artillery, &c. were re-embarked. The next morning we were joined by Lieutenant-colonel Abercrombie with the light infantry, who had been ten or twelve miles up the Chickahomany, and destroyed several armed ships, the state ship yards, warehouses, &c. &c.

At ten o'clock the fleet weighed, and proceeded up the James river within four miles of Westover.

THE 24th, weighed anchor at eleven o'clock, and run up to City points, where the troops, &c. were all landed at six o'clock in the evening.

THE 25th, marched at ten o'clock for Petersburg, where we arrived about five o'clock P. M. We were opposed about one mile from town by a body of militia, under the orders of Brigadier-general Muhlenburg, supposed to be about one thousand men, who were soon obliged to retire over the bridge with the loss of near one hundred men killed and wounded, as we have since been informed; our loss only one man killed, and ten wounded. The enemy took up the bridge, which prevented our pursuing them.

26th, DESTROYED at Petersburg four thousand hogheads of tobacco, one ship, and a number of small vessels on the stocks and in the river.

27th, MAJOR-GENERAL Phillips, with the light infantry, part of the cavalry of the Queen's rangers, and part of the yagers, marched to Chesterfield court house, where they burnt a range of barracks for two thousand men, and three hundred barrels of flour, &c.

THE

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

THE same day I marched to Osborn's, with the 76th and 80th regiments, Queen's rangers, part of the yagers, and American legion, where we arrived about noon. Finding the enemy had very considerable force of ships four miles above Osborn's, drawn up in a line to oppose us, I sent a flag to the commodore, proposing to treat with him for the surrender of his fleet, which he refused, with this answer, "That he was determined to defend it to the last extremity." I immediately ordered down two six and two three-pounders, brass field pieces, to a bank of the river, nearly level with the water, and within one hundred yards of the Tempest, a twenty-gun state ship, which began immediately to fire upon us, as did the Renown, of twenty-six guns, the Jefferson, a state brigantine of fourteen guns, and several other armed ships and brigantines; about two or three hundred militia on the opposite shore at the same time kept up a heavy fire of musketry upon us: Notwithstanding which, the fire of the artillery, under the direction of Captain Fage and Lieutenant Rogers, took such place, that the ships were soon obliged to strike their colours, and the militia drove from the opposite shore. Want of boats, and the wind blowing hard, prevented our capturing many of the seamen, who took to their boats, and escaped on shore; but not without first scuttling and setting fire to some of their ships, which could not be saved.

Two ships, three brigantines, five floops, and two schooners, loaded with tobacco, cordage, flour, &c. fell into our hands.

FOUR ships, five brigantines, and a number of small vessels, were sunk and burnt: On board the whole fleet (none of which escaped) were taken and destroyed about two thousand hogheads of tobacco, &c. &c., and very fortunately we had not a man killed or wounded this day; but have reason to believe the enemy suffered considerably.

About

About five o'clock we were joined by Major-general Phillips with the light infantry.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

28th, THE troops remained at Osborn's, waiting for boats from the fleet; part of them were employed in securing the prizes, and carrying them to Osborn's as a place of safety.

29th, THE boats having arrived, the troops were put in motion. Major-general Phillips marched with the main body; at the same time I proceeded up the river with a detachment in boats, and met him between Cary's mills and Warwick.

30th, THE troops marched to Manchester, and destroyed twelve hundred hogheads of tobacco. The Marquis de la Fayette having arrived with his army at Richmond, opposite to Manchester, the day before, and being joined by the militia drove from Petersburg and Williamsburgh, they were spectators of the conflagration without attempting to molest us. The same evening we returned to Warwick, where we destroyed a magazine of five hundred barrels of flour, and Colonel Cary's fine mills were destroyed in burning the magazine of flour. We also burnt several warehouses, with one hundred and fifty hogheads of tobacco, a large ship and a brigantine afloat, and three vessels on the stocks, a large range of public rope walks and storehouses, and some tan and bark houses full of hides and bark.

MAY 1st, marched to Osborn's, and dispatched our prizes and boats down the river; and in the evening marched to Bermuda hundreds, opposite City point.

X x

MAY

MAY 2d, embarked the troops, &c. &c.

MAY 3d, fell down the river to Westover.

MAY 4th, proceeded down to Tappahannock.

5th and 6th, PART of the fleet fell down to Hog island.

7th, MAJOR-GENERAL Phillips having received a letter from Lord Cornwallis, orders were given for the fleet to return up the river again. We arrived at Brandon about five o'clock, and most of the troops, cavalry, &c. were landed this evening, though it blew a gale of wind.

MAY 8th, remained at Brandon. Major-general Phillips being very ill, and unable to travel on horseback, a postchaise was procured for him.

MAY 9th, the light infantry, and part of the Queen's rangers, in boats, were ordered, with the Formidable and Spitfire, to proceed to City point, and land there. The rest of the army were put in motion for Petersburg, where they arrived late in the night, having marched near thirty miles this day.

ON our leaving Bermuda hundred, and going down the river, the Marquis de la Fayette with his army moved towards Williamsburgh, and, by forced marches, had crossed the Chickahomany at Long bridge, when our fleet returned to Brandon; which retrograde motion of ours occasioned him to return as rapidly, by forced marches, to Osborn's, where he arrived the 8th, and was preparing to cross the river to Petersburg when we arrived there, which was so unexpected, that we surprised



prised and took two majors, (one of them aid-de-camp to Baron Steuben, the other to General Smallwood); one captain and three lieutenants of dragoons; two lieutenants of foot; a commissary, and a surgeon: Some of these gentlemen arrived only two hours before us, with an intention of collecting the boats for the marquis to cross his army.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

ON the 10th, the marquis made his appearance on the opposite side of the river with a strong escort, and, having staid some time to reconnoitre our army, returned to his camp at Osborn's; and we are this day informed he is marched to Richmond, where it is said Wayne, with the Pennsylvania line, has arrived: This is, however, uncertain; but he is certainly expected there.

AN express passed through this place the day before our arrival here, who left Halifax on the 7th, and informed, that the advance of Lord Cornwallis' arrived there that morning: This report we have from several quarters, and I am inclined to believe it is true. Several expresses have been sent to his lordship, informing him of our being here ready to co-operate with his lordship. We are in anxious expectation of having particular intelligence from him every minute.

As soon as it is reduced to a certainty that Lord Cornwallis has crossed the Roanoke, and is on his march for this place, the army will advance one or two-days march from hence to meet his lordship, and carry a supply of provisions for his army.

A CONSIDERABLE magazine of flour and bread has fallen into our hands near this place, and the country abounds with cattle.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

MAJOR-GENERAL Phillips is so weak and low, that it will be some considerable time before he can go through the fatigue of business. In this critical situation, I am happy to have the assistance of so many good and experienced officers with me, commanding corps. If joined by Lord Cornwallis, or the reinforcement said to be coming from New York, we shall be in force to operate as we please in Virginia or Maryland.

I have the honour to be, &c.

B. ARNOLD.

---

(NOTE Q.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated Petersburg, in  
Virginia, 20th May, 1781.*

SIR,

YOU will easily conceive how sensible an affliction it was to me, on entering this province, to receive an account of the death of my friend, General Phillips, whose loss I cannot sufficiently lament, from personal or public considerations.

THE corps which I brought from North Carolina arrived here this morning. The information conveyed by your excellency to General Arnold, relative to the probable movements of the French armament, restrains me at present from any material offensive operations; but as soon as I can hear any satisfactory accounts of the two fleets, I will endeavour to make the best use in my power of the troops under my command.

command. General Arnold being of opinion that Portsmouth, with its present garrison, is secure against a coup de main, I would wish to avoid making a precipitate movement towards that place, without absolute necessity, because it would lessen our reputation in this province: But I have sent to assure the commanding officer, that I will do every thing I can to relieve him, in case the French should attack the post. La Fayette is at Wiltown, on the other side of James river, not far from Richmond: I have not heard that Wayne has yet joined him.

It is with infinite satisfaction that I enclose to your excellency copies of two letters from Lord Rawdon, which has relieved me from the most cruel anxieties. His lordship's great abilities, courage, and firmness of mind, cannot be sufficiently admired and applauded. There is now great reason to hope that we shall meet with no serious misfortune in that province; if, however, General Greene should persevere in carrying on offensive operations against it, we must, I think, abandon Camden, and probably Ninety Six, and limit our defence to the Congaree and the Santee: This will be only giving up two bad posts, which it is difficult to supply with provisions, and quitting a part of the country, which, for some months past, we have not really possessed.

I HAVE taken every means to inform Major Craig of my having passed the Roanoke; on which event, it was previously concerted between us, that he should fall down to Bald head, and from thence proceed to Charles town as soon as transports arrive to carry him.

THE legion being in the utmost distress for want of arms, cloathing, boots, and, indeed, appointments of all kinds, I must beg that  
your

Notes to the your excellency will be pleased to direct the inspector general to forward  
 Fifth  
 Chapter. a supply of every article with the greatest dispatch.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE R.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated  
 Bird's plantation, May 25, 1781.*

✉ DEAR TARLETON,

THE fwimming has fucceeded very well, notwithstanding the high wind ; the waggons are the moft tedious part of the bufinefs. I trust, however, that every thing will be ready for your paffing early to-morrow morning : In the mean time, you will patrol towards the Appa-mattox, and do every thing you can to procure intelligence. You may venture to fwim all your horfes, except the very beft. I have ordered the 43d regiment to land at Brandon's to-morrow morning, and march to Mead's to join the army : Should you hear of any thing material, you will communicate it to Major Fergufon.

Yours, very fincerely,

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE

## (NOTE S.)

*Copy.—From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated* Notes to the  
*Byrd's plantation, north of James river, 26th of May, 1781.* Fifth  
Chapter.

THE arrival of the reinforcement has made me easy about Portsmouth for the present. I have sent General Leslie thither with the 17th regiment and the two battalions of Anspach, keeping the 43d with the army. I shall now proceed to dislodge La Fayette from Richmond, and with my light troops to destroy any magazines or stores in the neighbourhood which may have been collected either for his use or for General Greene's army. From thence I purpose to move to the neck at Williamsburgh, which is represented as healthy, and where some subsistence may be procured, and keep myself unengaged from operations which might interfere with your plan for the campaign until I have the satisfaction of hearing from you; I hope I shall then have an opportunity to receive better information than has hitherto been in my power to procure, relative to a proper harbour and place of arms. At present I am inclined to think well of York. The objections to Portsmouth are, that it cannot be made strong without an army to defend it; that it is remarkably unhealthy, and can give no protection to a ship of the line. Wayne has not yet joined La Fayette; nor can I positively learn where he is, nor what is his force. Greene's cavalry are said to be coming this way; but I have no certain accounts of it.

(NOTE

## (NOTE T.)

Notes to the Fifth Chapter. *Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated camp at Jefferson's, June 9th, 1781.*

✂ DEAR TARLETON,

YOU will proceed with the detachment of cavalry and mounted infantry under your command before daybreak to-morrow morning to Old Albemarle court house, where you will destroy any stores you may find. If you then hear of no other stores of any consequence on this side the Fluvanna, and that Baron Steuben should be still on the other side, you will cross that river, and make it your principal object to strike a blow at Baron Steuben. As the corps under his command consists of part of the new levies, and is the foundation on which the body of eighteen-months men lately voted by the province in Virginia will be formed, it will be of the utmost importance to defeat and disperse it; I should therefore wish you to take every means in your power of effecting this service, if you should see a probability of success. I likewise recommend it to you, to destroy all the enemy's stores and tobacco between James river and the Dan; and if there should be a quantity of provisions or corn collected at a private house, I would have you destroy it, even although there should be no proof of its being intended for the public service, leaving enough for the support of the family; as there is the greatest reason to apprehend that such provisions will be ultimately appropriated by the enemy to the use of General Greene's army, which, from the present state of the Carolinas, must depend on this province for its supplies.

I SHALL



I SHALL proceed by easy marches to Richmond; and it will probably be a business of eight or nine days from this time before I can get up my boats to that place to receive you; so that you may very well employ that time on your expedition. As it is very probable that some of the light troops of General Greene's army may be on their march to this country, you will do all you can to procure intelligence of their route. I need not tell you of what importance it will be to intercept them, or any prisoners of ours from South Carolina.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

I WOULD have (a.) all persons of consequence, either civil or military, brought to me before they are paroled. Most sincerely wishing you success, and placing the greatest confidence in your zeal and abilities, I am, with great truth and regard,

Dear Tarleton,

Most faithfully yours,

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE V.)

*Copy of a letter from Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to Earl Cornwallis, which fell into the enemy's hands, and was published by them, dated Colonel Adam's plantation, June 13, 1781, half past four P. M.*

MY LORD,

I BELIEVE that La Fayette passed the South Anna, or Pamunkey, this morning, for the Mountain road, at Bird's ordinary. He lay at Bird's mill yesterday evening. I have been on the Three-notched road all day; I have left it for this place for the benefit of forage and communication with your lordship: I shall strike it again

Y y

to-morrow

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

to-morrow morning, and go by Napier's to Pier's mill. I cannot yet learn what water it stands on. La Fayette's design is to follow. I will immediately inform your lordship if he does not keep a proper distance; any detachment I shall strike at.

I have the honour to be, &c.

BAN. TARLETON.

*Copy of a letter from an aid-de-camp of Lieutenant-general Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated head-quarters, June 14, 1781.*

✂ DEAR TARLETON,

LORD Cornwallis proposes moving (a.) to-morrow to Westham, and desires you will take post either at the fork of Pounce's tract and the Three-notched road, or nearer to Westham, as convenient to you; that you will send out distant patrols; and that you will order Pier's mill to continue grinding, and to preserve the flour already ground, on pain of military execution, till sent for.

Yours most sincerely, &c.

H. HALDANE.

---

(NOTE U.)

*Copy. — From Major-general Le Marquis de la Fayette to Major-general Greene, dated Mr. Tyre's plantation, twenty miles from Williamsburgh, June 27, 1781.*

SIR,

MY letter of the 18th informed you of the enemy's retrograde movement to Richmond, where they made a stop. Our loss at the  
Point

Point of Fork chiefly consisted of old arms out of repair, and some cannon, most of which have been since recovered.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

ON the 18th (a.) the British army moved towards us, with a design, as I apprehend, to strike at a detached corps, commanded by General Muhlenberg. Upon this the light infantry and Pennsylvanians marched under General Wayne, when the enemy returned into the town. The day following, I was joined by General Steuben's troops, and on the night of the 20th, Richmond was evacuated.

HAVING followed the enemy, our light parties fell in with them near New-Kent court house. The army was still at a distance, and Lord Cornwallis continued his march towards Williamsburgh. His rear and right flank were followed by a large detachment under Colonel Butler; but notwithstanding the most fatiguing march, the colonel reports, that he could not have overtaken them had not Major Macpherson mounted fifty light infantry behind an equal number of dragoons, which coming up with the enemy, charged them within six miles (c.) of Williamsburgh. Such of the advanced corps as could arrive, composed of riflemen, under Major Call and Major Willis, began a smart action. Inclosed is a return of our loss; that of the enemy is sixty killed, including several officers, and one hundred wounded, a disproportion which the skill of our riflemen easily explains. I am under great obligations to Colonel Butler, and the officers, and the officers and men of the detachment, for their ardour in the pursuit, and their conduct in the action.

GENERAL Wayne, who marched to the support of Butler, sent down some troops, under Major Hamilton. The whole British (b.) army came out to save Simcoe, and on the arrival of our army on this

Y y 2 -

ground,

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter. ground, returned to Williamsburgh. The post they now occupy is strong under the protection of their shipping, but upwards of one hundred miles from the Point of Fork.

I HAD the honour to communicate these movements to the executive of the commonwealth, that the seat of government may be again re-established in the capital.

LORD Cornwallis has received a reinforcement from Portsmouth. With the greatest respect,

I have the honour to be, &c.

LA FAYETTE.

---

(NOTE W.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated Williamsburgh, June 30, 1781.*

AFTER passing James river at Westover, I moved to Hanover court house, and crossed South Anna. The Marquis de la Fayette marched to his left, keeping above at the distance of about twenty miles.

By pushing my light troops over the North Anna, I alarmed the enemy for Fredericksburgh, and for the junction with General Wayne, who was then marching through Maryland. From what I could learn of the present state of Hunter's iron manufactory, it did not appear of so much importance as the stores on the other side of the country,

country, and it was impossible to prevent the junction between the Marquis and Wayne: I therefore took advantage of the Marquis's passing the Rhappahannock, and detached Lieutenant-colonels Simcoe (b.) and Tarleton (a.) to disturb the assembly then sitting at Charlotteville, and to destroy the stores there, at Old Albemarle court house, and the Point of Fork; moving with the infantry to the mouth of Byrd creek, near the Point of Fork, to receive these detachments. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton took some members of the assembly at Charlotteville, and destroyed there, and on his return, one thousand stand of good arms, some clothing, and other stores, and five hundred barrels of powder, without opposition.

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

BARON Steuben, who commanded about eight hundred twelve-months men and militia, retired with great precipitation from the Point of Fork. Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, after using every exertion to attack his rear guard, destroyed there, and at the places adjacent, about three thousand three hundred stand of arms, most of which unserviceable, but then under repair, some salt, harness, &c., and about one hundred and fifty barrels of powder. I then moved by Richmond, and arrived at Williamsburgh on the 25th instant, having, in addition to the articles already mentioned, destroyed on this expedition at different places above two thousand hogheads of tobacco, and a great number of iron guns, and brought off four brass thirteen-inch mortars, five brass eight-inch howitzers, and four long brass nine-pounders, all French. We found near Hanover court house, ten French brass twenty-four pounders, which we could not carry, and had not time or means to destroy farther than spiking, and throwing five or six of them into the Pamunkey; and we found at Williamsburgh a considerable quantity of shot and shells, which are embarked. General Wayne joined the Marquis about the middle of the month, as did

Notes to the  
Fifth  
Chapter.

Baron Steuben soon after; and their army has generally kept about twenty miles from us, without any material attempt by detachment, except in an attack on Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, on the 26th, as he was returning with his corps and the yagers from the destruction of some boats and stores on the Chickahomany. The enemy, though much superior in numbers, were repulsed with considerable loss, three (c.) officers and twenty-eight privates were made prisoners: the rangers had three officers and thirty privates killed and wounded. Lieutenant Jones, who was killed, behaved with the greatest spirit, and is much lamented by Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe.

## CHAPTER



## CHAPTER VI.

*Earl Cornwallis moves to James river. — Affair near James island. — Earl Cornwallis marches to Portsmouth. — Hampton road not approved of as a station for the navy. — Earl Cornwallis takes possession of York town. — Portsmouth evacuated. — The French fleet enter the Chesapeake. — La Fayette takes post at Williamsburgh. — General Washington's force concentrated at Williamsburgh. — York town invested. — Two redoubts carried at York town by the French and Americans. — Sortie from York town. — Surrender of York town and Gloucester.*

**D**URING the late operations in Virginia, intelligence reached Sir Henry Clinton, which gave him some uneasiness for the posts immediately under his command. The extensive frontier of York, Staten, and Long islands, required a powerful body of troops, as well as minute circumspection and military arrangement: Strong information (a.) of the intended approach of the combined army of France and America, who could receive any supplies of men and provisions from the neighbouring populous provinces; naturally excited jealousy in the commander in chief, who had not at this period eleven thousand effectives to counteract their designs: He, therefore, whilst the storm threatened New York, and the climate rendered the King's troops inactive or sickly in the Chesapeake, required a detachment from Earl Cornwallis, if he was not engaged (b.) in any important enterprise; and

CHAP. VI.

(a.) In note A.

(b.) In note A.

CHAR. VI. recommended to him a healthy station, with an ample defensive force, till the danger was dispersed to the northward.

Earl Cornwallis moves to James river.

EARL Cornwallis, judging the call for troops positive and pressing, and that his command, after such a diminution, would not be adequate to maintain his present position, determined instantly to leave Williamsburgh, and retire to (a.) Portsmouth; whence he might send the troops specified in the requisition to New York: For the execution of this project, it was necessary to cross James river; and James island presented the most convenient situation to secure an unmolested passage to Cobham. The navy, under the direction of Captain Aplin, being prepared for such an undertaking, on the (a.) 4th of July the royal army marched by the left, and arrived the same day in the neighbourhood of James island, which is separated from the main land by a small gut of water, not two feet deep at the reflux of the tide. The advanced guard, under Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe, passed to the island, and from thence to Cobham in the evening. The legion cavalry and two companies of mounted infantry were directed to cover the right flank and rear of the British column during the march: Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton moved to a church, eighteen miles from Williamsburgh, which he understood was fortified and garrisoned by the riflemen who lay in front of the American army: By surprise he got within the abbatis, the church yard, and the church, and dislodged the enemy with some loss: He afterwards proceeded towards Tyre's plantation, when, under the advantage of a heavy rain, he drove in the pickets, and communicated a general alarm to the Marquis de la Fayette's corps. In the mean while, the British army reached their encampment near James island, to which place the cavalry slowly retired.

(a.) In note B.

(a.) In note D.

THE

THE position occupied by the King's troops was equally strong and convenient; the right was covered by ponds, the center and left by morasses, over which a few narrow causeways connected it with the country, and James island lay in the rear. On the 5th, the stores and wheel carriages began to pass, which employment would continue till the 7th, when it was imagined (b.) the boats would be ready for the troops. On the morning of the 6th, the foragers from the cavalry were ordered into the front, who reported that the enemy were advancing. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, after the party returned, gave money and encouraging promises to a negroe and a dragoon, to communicate false intelligence, under the appearance of deserters. These emissaries were directed to inform the Americans, that the British legion, with a detachment of infantry, composed the rear guard, the body of the King's troops having passed James river. In the afternoon a patrol of cavalry was beat back over one of the causeways on the left, and Lieutenant Grier, who commanded it, was wounded. Soon after, the American riflemen insulted the outposts, whilst a body of continentals advanced towards the morass: The British cavalry supported the pickets on the left, in order to contain the enemy within the woods, and to prevent their viewing the main army: Earl Cornwallis directed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to continue this manoeuvre, and he ordered the battalions and regiments to remain quiet in their camp, where they were concealed from observation. Before sunset, (c.) the Marquis de la Fayette had passed the morass on the left, with about six hundred militia, nine hundred continentals, and some cannon; bodies of riflemen attacked the other pickets; and the remainder of the American force took post at a brick house, beyond the wood and the causeway. Upon the first cannon shot from the enemy, the

(b.) In note D.

(c.) In note D.

CHAP. VI. British army formed and advanced, when the dragoons fell back through the intervals made for them by the infantry.

Affair near  
James island.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Dundas's brigade, (d.) composed of the 43d, 76th, and 80th regiments, with two six-pounders, under Captain Fage, sustained the weight of the enemy's attack. The conflict in this quarter was severe and well contested. The artillery and infantry of each army, in presence of their respective generals, were for some minutes warmly engaged not fifty yards asunder. The other part of the line, consisting of the two battalions of light infantry, Lieutenant-colonel Yorke's brigade, (1.) the brigade of guards, and the Hessians, met with little or no resistance, being opposed only by small parties of militia, who made a precipitate retreat: But on the left of the British, the action was for some time gallantly maintained by the continental infantry, under General Wayne, against the 76th, 80th, and part of 43d. The legion cavalry formed a second line behind the 80th, and the light companies, under Captain Champagne, dismounted to reinforce the 76th. The affair was not ended before dark, when the enemy abandoned their cannon, and repassed the swamp in confusion. The woods, the morasses, and the obscurity of the night, prevented the pursuit of the cavalry. The Marquis de la Fayette rallied part of the Americans to the troops posted beyond the swamp, and halted some hours at the Green Springs, to collect the fugitives. Earl Cornwallis returned to his encampment. The King's troops had five officers wounded, and about seventy men killed and wounded. The steadiness of the new regiments, who bore the brunt of the action, did honour to these corps; and the conduct of Lieutenant-colonel Dundas, who commanded them, was highly animated and meritorious. On

(d.) In note D.

(1.) Late Webster's.

the part of the Americans, near three hundred continentals and militia were killed, wounded, and taken. CHAP. VI.

THE events of this day were particularly important, and claimed more attention than they obtained. The Marquis de la Fayette had made a long march, in very sultry weather, with about fifteen hundred continentals and one thousand militia, to strike at the rear of the British before they passed to James island : Too great ardour, or false intelligence, which is most probable, for it is the only instance of this officer committing himself during a very difficult campaign, prompted him to cross a morass to attack Earl Cornwallis, who routed him, took his cannon, and must inevitably have destroyed his army, if night had not intervened. His lordship might certainly have derived more advantage from his victory. If the two battalions of light infantry, the guards, and Colonel Yorke's brigade, who had all been slightly engaged, or any other corps, and the cavalry, had been detached, without knapsacks, before dawn of day, to pursue the Americans, and push them to the utmost, the army (e.) of the Marquis de la Fayette must have been annihilated. Such an exploit would have been easy, fortunate, and glorious, and would have prevented the combination which produced the fall of York town and Gloucester. It was suggested to Earl Cornwallis, in opposition to the plan of pursuing the victory, that Sir Henry Clinton's requisition for troops was a circumstance of greater consequence, and more worthy of attention. This was allowed to be a strong and forcible reason ; but at the same time it was represented, that the exertion of half, or two thirds of the British army, in pursuit of the Americans, would not occasion delay, or in the least de-

(e.) In note D.

CHAP. VI. range the original design of proceeding to Portsmouth. Experience fully evinced and justified the propriety of this opinion.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Tarleton, with two hundred dragoons and eighty mounted infantry, was ordered to proceed after daybreak across the swamp, in pursuit of the enemy; and three companies of light infantry were directed to take post beyond it, until he returned. Some wounded men and deserters joined the British before they reached the Green Springs, where the Marquis de la Fayette had rallied his troops after the action. The dragoons then struck into the road by which, about two hours before, the Americans had retreated, and they had not advanced four miles when they met a patrol of mounted riflemen. The captain who commanded it, and several of his men were killed or taken: The remainder were pursued into the Marquis de la Fayette's army, who had been forced by extreme fatigue to repose themselves not more than six miles from the field of battle. In this situation they would have been an easy prey to a powerful detachment of the British, who could have marched into their rear by several roads, whilst the light troops amused them in front; or the infantry might have followed the route of the continentals in case they retreated, and the English dragoons and mounted infantry could have passed through the woods into their front, or on their flank, and have impeded and harassed them till the foot could force them to action. Either of these plans must have succeeded against a corps that was destitute of cavalry; that had made a forced march in very hot weather during the preceding day; that had been routed, and had retreated without refreshment or provisions. When the late defeat, the diminished force, and the bodily fatigue of the Americans, are contrasted with the recent success, the superior numbers, and the active vigour of the British, it may fairly be presumed,



presumed, that less time than twelve hours would have given, without CHAP. VI. the smallest hazard, a decisive advantage to the King's troops.

WHEN the cavalry and mounted infantry returned to camp, the army were ordered to cross to James island. On their arrival at that place, a considerable part of the baggage, bat horses, and stores, were not transported to Cobham, and the rear guard did not embark till twenty-four hours after the action ; which circumstances incontestibly prove, that a temporary pursuit of the enemy, with a powerful detachment, would not have retarded the main operation of passing James river : Or, supposing the march to Portsmouth had been put off for twenty-four hours, would not the public service have been sufficiently benefited by the destruction of La Fayette's corps, to justify the delay ? No demand of Sir Henry Clinton for troops could be deemed pressing before the dispatch Earl Cornwallis received on the 8th (C.) at Cobham ; and in his lordship's answer to that letter, he mentions, that the corps will proceed to Portsmouth, to wait the arrival (f.) of the transports ; no time, therefore, would have been lost by pursuing the enemy. In few words : Is it judicious to halt with a superior army, and not prosecute a victory ? The solution of this question leads to others relative to the mode of proceeding proper to have been followed in this instance. It would surely have been more judicious to have adopted a change of measures at this critical juncture ; to have countermanded the expedition to Portsmouth ; to have prepared to push the enemy before daybreak ; to have pursued the Marquis de la Fayette till his corps was exterminated ; and to have exercised discretionary powers for the advantage of the troops, and the benefit of the nation, by ordering the transports from Portsmouth, and the stores and bag-

(C.) Note C.

(f.) In note D.

CHAP. VI. gage from Cobham, to meet the victorious army at Williamsburgh; who, after their successes, might have detached to New York, with little or no loss of time, and have maintained their post and their reputation.

THE day after the King's forces arrived at Cobham, Earl Cornwallis sent Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton with the legion cavalry and eighty mounted infantry to Prince-Edward court house, and from thence to New London in Bedford county, and ordered him (E.) to destroy on his march, all ammunition, clothing, and stores of every kind, intended for the American service: Private corn and provisions, except such as might appear necessary for the maintenance of the possessors, were likewise to be burned, to prevent the South-Carolina army receiving benefit from such supplies. After executing these instructions, he was to endeavour to intercept any British prisoners or American light troops returning to the northwards, and then retire at his leisure to a detachment of the royal army at Suffolk.

ON the 9th of July, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton left Cobham, and proceeded upon this distant expedition by long movements in the morning and evening: By which means the heat and darkness were as much as possible avoided, and time afforded for refreshment and repose. The light troops soon reached Petersburg, advanced to Prince-Edward court house, and from thence towards the river Dan. The stores destroyed, either of a public or private nature, were not in quantity or value equivalent to the damage sustained in the skirmishes on the route, and the loss of men and horses by the excessive heat of the climate. The intelligence which occasioned this march was exceedingly imperfect:

(E.) Note E.

The

The stores, which were the principal object of the expedition, had CHAP. VI. been conveyed from Prince-Edward court house, and all that quarter of the country, to Hillsborough and General Greene's army, upwards of a month before the British light troops commenced their move. A halt of two days in Bedford county discovered that General Greene had made no detachment to the northward, but that he was engaged in the siege of Ninety Six. This information induced Tarleton to resume his march, by a different route, towards the royal army; and the dragoons and mounted infantry having completed an expedition of four hundred miles, attended with many unfavourable circumstances to the corps, who were almost destitute of necessaries and accoutrements, joined the King's troops at Suffolk fifteen days after their departure from Cobham. A detachment from the Marquis de la Fayette's army might have been transported over James river near City point, and, by posting themselves at the head of Black water, would have endangered the retreat of the British, by blocking up the pass at that place, and over which they must unavoidably return; because the banks of Black water are in other parts so marshy, that there is no approaching them, either to make use of rafts, or to cross the river by swimming. General Wayne was indeed detached to Goode's (a.) bridge above Petersburg; but in that position he could give no obstruction or embarrassment to the movements of the light troops.

UPON the junction of the legion cavalry and mounted infantry, Earl Cornwallis marched to Portsmouth: Previous to that event, he Earl Cornwallis marches to Portsmouth. had detached part of the corps intended for embarkation to that place; but before they sailed an express arrived from Sir Henry Clinton, forbidding (F.) the King's troops to pass James river, and desiring his

(a.) In note I.

(F.) Note F.

CHAP. VI. lordship to regain Williamsburgh neck, in case he had quitted it, in order to secure Old-point Comfort and Hampton road, as a station for line-of-battle ships. The commander in chief allowed his lordship to detain any part, or the whole, of the forces that were embarked, to complete this service, which was deemed important for the army, and indispensably necessary for the navy.

At Portsmouth the royal army encamped in front of the redoubts which covered the town: The garrison, composed of the 17th regiment, other British detachments, and the two Anspach battalions, continued to perform the duty within the fortifications. The infantry constructed huts as soon as they arrived on their ground, to shelter them from the scorching heat of the climate. The greatest part of the cavalry passed the ferry to Norfolk, and marched into Princess-Anne county. At this period the British legion received new clothing and appointments, which were soon properly fitted, and, for the first time, that corps was properly equipped. Whilst the dragoons were thus employed, a detachment of foot and hussars, by taking post at a bridge, secured a tract of country which supplied all the horses of the army with forage.

Hampton road not approved of as a station for the navy.

MEANWHILE, Major-general Leslie departed for Charles town, and the chief engineer and the captains of the royal navy proceeded to examine Old-point Comfort; when, not approving (G.) of the situation, as eligible either for fortification or to cover shipping, they made a report accordingly. Earl Cornwallis, on viewing the place, coincided in opinion (a.) with those officers, and embarking the two battalions of light infantry, the Queen's rangers, and some regiments of the

(G.) Note G.

(a.) In note H.

line,

line, sailed up York river. In the beginning of August, his lordship landed detachments at Gloucester and York town, and afterwards disembarked the whole force that accompanied him. Immediately after Earl Cornwallis had occupied these posts, he dispatched an express to Brigadier-general O'Hara, requiring a reinforcement of infantry from Portsmouth by the row boats of the army and fleet, and at the same time he sent directions (I.) for Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to move to Sowell's point, in order to place his regiment and the mounted infantry on board small vessels, prepared to transport them to Hampton road. The legion dragoons commenced their passage on the 6th, and the horses were unshipped the same evening, by throwing them into deep water near the shore. No accident whatever happened in consequence of this mode of debarkation, and the cavalry joined Earl Cornwallis the next morning. In the mean time, the transports which had proceeded up York river were ordered back to Portsmouth to receive Brigadier-general O'Hara's division of troops as soon as the works at that place were destroyed. This business being completed, whilst the heavy stores and cannon were conveyed into the quarter-master general's and the ordnance vessels, the rear guard embarked without molestation, and the whole Virginia army was (a.) assembled on the 22d at York town and Gloucester.

CHAP. VI.  
Earl Cornwallis takes possession of York town.

Portsmouth evacuated.

UPON the arrival of the first division of the King's troops, Earl Cornwallis gave directions to Lieutenant Sutherland, of the engineers, to trace out a chain of redoubts to cover Gloucester. This village is situated on a point of land on the north side of York river, and consisted at that time of about a dozen houses. A marshy creek extends along part of the right flank: The ground is clear and level for a mile

(I.) Note I.

(a.) In note K.

CHAP. VI. in front : At that distance stands a wood : The space which it occupies is narrowed by the river on the left, and a creek on the right : Beyond the gorge the country is open and cultivated. The 80th regiment, who were afterwards joined by the Hessian battalion of Prince Hereditaire, soon made considerable progress in the works that were to fortify this post. York river is one of the principal branches of the Chesapeake : From its mouth to Gloucester the channel is deep and broad : York town and Gloucester confine it in a narrower bed, their distance not exceeding an English mile ; when the water again extends itself, and for some leagues affords convenient anchorage to ships of any burden. York town, before the war, was a place of considerable trade : Great part of the houses form one street, on the edge of a cliff, which overlooks the river : The buildings stand within a small compass, and the environs of the town are intersected by creeks and ravines. Different roads from Williamsburgh enter York in several directions ; and the main route to Hampton passes in front of it. The ground was surveyed (b.) as soon as the redoubts on the other side of the river were found to be in a tenable condition, and works were proposed by the engineers : After some consideration, the plan was approved (c.) of, and the troops, after levelling some houses, proceeded to construct the fortifications. Working parties were ordered from all the corps, except the legion, who remained at the advanced post with some mounted infantry.

AFTER the action near James island, the Marquis de la Fayette had retired into the forks of the Pamunkey and Matapony, whence he sent General Wayne with a corps across James river. On the return of the King's troops to Williamsburgh neck, he called in his detachment, ad-

(b.) In note K.

(c.) In note K.

vanced



vanced into New-Kent county with the main body, and dispatched a party of militia to the neighbourhood of Gloucester to annoy the British foragers in that quarter. CHAP. VI.

WHILE the infantry of the line were employed in constructing the defences of York town and Gloucester, the Queen's rangers and the legion were equally active in collecting forage and cattle from the country for the use of the army. Lieutenant-colonel Simcoe managed his detachments in front of Gloucester with great dexterity, and met, in consequence, with trifling interruption. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton made several expeditions to Williamsburgh, and by such moves covered all the country for the foraging parties between that place and Hampton. One excursion was pushed farther with success: Lieutenant-colonel Abercrombie with the light infantry proceeded to Williamsburgh, whilst the legion cavalry advanced and defeated, with very little loss, about three hundred militia, at Chiswell's ordinary, on the Newcastle road. The unexpected appearance of the British dragoons struck the Americans with such astonishment, that they in general abandoned their arms without firing, and retreated with great precipitation.

NEAR the end of August, the *Guadaloupe* of twenty-eight guns, left York town, to proceed to New York with dispatches from Earl Cornwallis, and from Captain Symonds of the *Charon*, who commanded His Majesty's ships in the Chesapeake. At this period, the sea officers imagined that the British fleet from the West Indies would be discovered off the capes by the frigate, and the land officers expected that a considerable body of troops would soon arrive from New York, to strengthen the King's forces for solid operations in Virginia, and likewise to garrison the works which were constructing for the advantage and protection of both army and navy. These suppositions,

CHAP. VI. which were well grounded, diffused among the royalists general satisfaction; but their prospects of glory were suddenly obscured. On the 30th, the French fleet, of twenty-eight sail of the line, from the West Indies, under the orders of the Count de Grasse, entered the Chesapeake. The advanced guard of his squadron, consisting of the *Glorieux*, a coppered seventy-four, and the *Diligente* and *Aigrette* frigates, met the *Guadaloupe* near the capes, who, not understanding their signals, kept aloof, and afterwards, by swiftnefs, made good her retreat to York town; whilst the Loyalist, a bad twenty-gun ship, who was stationed in the bay, after a gallant struggle in the mouth of the channel, fell into the possession of the French.

The French  
fleet enter the  
Chesapeake.

THE Count de Grasse, without loss of time, blocked up York river with three large ships and some frigates, and moored the principal part of the fleet in Lynhaven bay. Upon his arrival within the capes, he dispatched information of that event to General Washington in the *Jessies*, and to the Marquis de la Fayette, who was encamped near the Chickahomany. The disembarkation of the troops brought in the line-of-battle ships from the West Indies immediately took place, and the continental army in Virginia advanced to the Green springs on the 3d of September, to form a junction with the Count de St. Simon. The Marquis de la Fayette soon after moved the French and Americans to Williamsburgh.

La Fayette  
takes post at  
Williams-  
burgh.

IN the mean time Earl Cornwallis practised (L.) various means to send intelligence to New York of the situation and force of the French fleet. Patrols of the legion cavalry were continually detached to the shores of James and York rivers, and daily reported to his lordship

(L.) Note L.

every

every occurrence worthy of attention: They informed him of the movement of the boats with troops towards the Chickahomany, and of the different manœuvres of the Count de Grasse. On the 5th, the French ships were observed to make repeated signals, and it was soon discovered that an English squadron was approaching. Notwithstanding the absence of a number of officers and seamen, employed in the disembarkation of St. Simon's brigade, and of another detachment engaged in procuring water, the French fleet got under way, and stood out of the capes.

THIS state of hope was interrupted by the arrival of Count de Barras's division in the Chesapeake from Rhode island. Intelligence soon after reached York town, that Count de Grasse had repulsed the British fleet, and was returning to the bay. Before this period accounts were brought to Earl Cornwallis that General Washington, with a large body of continentals, and Count Rochambeau, with the French army, were preparing to form a junction with La Fayette, by descending in transports from the head of Elk river in Maryland, under the convoy of the French ships. In this situation, blocked up by sea, and exposed to a powerful combination on shore, Earl Cornwallis turned his attention towards the corps already arrived at Williamsburgh.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Tarleton was desired to reconnoitre the position of La Fayette and St. Simon, and to use every expedient to obtain exact intelligence of their numbers. After several spies were sent out, the British dragoons and two companies of mounted infantry advanced towards the enemy. A picket of militia, at the mill dam on the Hampton road, was dislodged, and the cavalry were led to the left off the main route, in order to force another detachment, who commanded the shore of James river, by being posted on the cliffs which

CHAP. VI. overlooked it. This being accomplished, and a disposition being made to secure a retreat, Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton selected three officers and six men, well mounted, to proceed with him, at half speed, to the right of the encampment at Williamsburgh; whence, after discovering the situation of the enemy, who had taken ground near the college, he repaired unmolested to York town. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton's report, and a return of the French and Americans, brought in by a woman, suggested to Earl Cornwallis the feasibility of an attack. It was designed that the army should contrive their march, so as to be able to commence the action before daybreak: That time was deemed eligible, because the ground near and in Williamsburgh is cut by several ravines, and because the British column, in advancing on the long and straight road through the town, would not be so much exposed to the enemy's cannon, under cover of the night, as during the day. This plan was reasonable and judicious, and would probably have been executed with success.

ANOTHER disposition might also have been adopted. A body of two thousand infantry, with six or eight pieces of artillery, might have been embarked in the boats of the navy and army, and have been conveyed into Queen's, or Capahosack creek; where they could easily have been landed, under the protection of the galleys and armed vessels, on the flank, or in the rear of Williamsburgh; whilst Earl Cornwallis, with the principal part of his infantry and cannon, and the whole of his cavalry, approached the enemy in front. No apprehension for so powerful a detachment as two thousand men could be entertained, if the main army moved at a concerted period to the object of attack. This design was esteemed of too complex a nature. Earl Cornwallis fixed his approbation on the former plan; and was deliberating on the time he should carry it into execution, when expresses from Sir Henry Clinton,

Clinton,

Clinton, dated in the beginning of September, (M.) saying, that he would do his utmost to reinforce the army in the Chesapeake, or make every diversion in his power, and that Admiral Digby was expected on the coast; retarded the project, and finally made his lordship abandon the resolution of attacking La Fayette. CHAP. VI.

THIS change of opinion cannot be passed over without observation. When Sir Henry Clinton wrote his first letter, he was but partially acquainted with the state of affairs to the southward. He had heard that Washington was moving from the Jerseys, and that a report was circulated by the Americans, declaring their expectations of a French armament on the coast: Which rumours, with a description of the state of the British fleet, amounting to nineteen sail of the line and some fifties, he endeavoured to communicate to Earl Cornwallis by a duplicate and triplicate in cypher. At the time of writing his second letter, he had received his lordship's account of De Grasse's arrival in the Chesapeake, and a confirmation from the country of the report of Washington's movement, with at least six thousand Americans and French, towards Maryland. He then says, that the best way to relieve Earl Cornwallis is to join him as soon as possible with about four thousand men from New York; but that he cannot venture to move until the passage is open. Before these letters, which doubtless contained the whole of Sir Henry Clinton's information on the subject, reached Virginia, Earl Cornwallis, who commanded His Majesty's troops in that quarter, had explicit intelligence unfolded to him, that Count de Grasse had blocked up the Chesapeake, and that a French brigade had been conveyed from the line-of-battle ships, up York river, to join the American forces in Virginia: That Count de Grasse, on sight of the Eng-

(M.) Note M.

lish

CHAP. VI. lish fleet, had proceeded out of the capes to engage them, and that Count de Barras's division from Rhode island, in the intermediate time had arrived in the bay: That Count de Grasse had repulsed Admiral Graves, at the head of the New-York and West-India fleets, without the assistance of De Barras's (b.) squadron, or of four ships and a detachment of seventeen hundred seamen left in York and James rivers: That General Washington and Count de Rochambeau, with a large body of troops, were marching to the head of Elk in Maryland, in order to concentrate their force in Virginia: That the French fleet had (a.) returned triumphant into the Chesapeak, to assist and protect the land operations of the French and Americans: And, that the fortifications of York town were in too unfinished a state to resist a formidable attack. These events being fully known at York town, and many of them totally unknown at New York, manifested to Earl Cornwallis, that a confederacy was forming much too powerful for him to oppose, and that there existed no substantial reason to believe, that the British commander in chief would be able, either to counteract the designs of the enemy, or to give serious assistance to the King's troops in Virginia. A review, therefore, of past circumstances, and a candid construction of Sir Henry Clinton's letters, as effectually recommended an attack upon Williamsburgh before the arrival of Washington, as did either the weakness of that post, or the eagerness of the allied powers to complete their combination. That this conclusion may not be deemed premature, it is necessary to describe the strength of the troops at this time under the orders of the English and American commanders.

EARL Cornwallis, when the French and Americans took post at Williamsburgh, had near six thousand men fit for duty. The infan-

(b.) In note N.

(a.) In note N.



try were all good, most of them chosen troops; the detachment of field artillery unequalled; and the cavalry, to the amount of four hundred, in excellent order. Besides this regular force, there were sufficient numbers of marines, seamen, convalescents, and refugees, to have manned the batteries, and maintained the works at York town and Gloucester, against any attempt of the French fleet during the absence of the British army. The force of the Marquis de la Fayette did not exceed four thousand fighting men. The full complement of the battalions of Agenois, Gatinois, and Touraine, under the orders of Count de St. Simon, was eight hundred each regiment: Not more than two thousand men, the volunteers of St. Simon inclusive, were landed, who were in a very sickly state, being much debilitated by scurvy, and other complaints contracted in the West Indies. The return of La Fayette's and Wayne's brigades, and of Steuben's eighteen-months men, did not reach seventeen hundred fit for duty. The militia could not be numerous on the arrival of the French, because they were dismissed for the summer on the movement of the King's troops for Portsmouth, and the time did not yet allow a large body to be assembled.

THE vulnerable situation of Williamsburgh, the comparative state of the two armies, the slender hope of relief for one party, and the certain reinforcements which were approaching the other, undoubtedly suggested vigorous and decisive measures to the British at this juncture: An attack, therefore, upon La Fayette, as it was reasonable and judicious, might have been effectual and conclusive. Or, the knowledge Earl Cornwallis had of public affairs at this period, would have justified him to his country, in taking a more momentous step than attempting his enemies in detail. The well-grounded probability of an irresistible co-operation in the Chesapeake would have fully vindicated his abandoning York town, in order to proceed to South Carolina; and

CHAP. VI. the energy of such a resolution would have defeated the main design of the French and Americans, and have immortalized his lordship's military reputation. The first of these enterprizes might have been ventured upon any time between the 6th and 18th of September; and the latter, during the interval of De Grasse's return to the Chesapeake, and the arrival of the Baron de Viomenil with Count de Rochambeau's army: But, unfortunately, neither of them were tried; and England must lament the inactivity of the King's troops, whether it proceeded from the noble Earl's misconception, or from the suggestions of confidential attendants, who construed the commander in chief's letters into a definitive promise of relief.

IN the mean time, the detachment of the royal navy, and the masters of transports and private vessels, blocked up in York river, contributed their assistance to the garrisons of York town and Gloucester: Besides supplying the troops with cannon, ammunition, provisions, cordage, and other stores necessary for a siege, they fitted out several fire vessels, with an intention either to burn or dislodge the French ships in the mouth of the river. Captain Palmer took the command of this little squadron, and proceeded at the head of it in his own fireship, the *Vulcan*. A dark night concealed the purpose; and the weather, the tide, and the current, favoured the descent to the enemy: But the impatience, or the want of resolution of the officers and sailors of the transports, soon rendered all advantages useless. These, by placing the match to the combustibles without orders, and at a great distance, awakened the attention of the French, exposed the whole design to their view, and brought a heavy cannonade upon Captain Palmer, who would otherwise have been able to grapple a line-of-battle ship. When his crew manned the boats, and threatened to forsake him, he reluctantly quitted the *Vulcan*, who, though kindled too

soon, much disconcerted the whole, and in some degree endangered one of the French men of war. CHAP. VI.

EVERY day advanced the state of the British works, and forwarded the combination of the Americans and French. Before General Washington and Count Rochambeau, with a small train, arrived at Williamsburgh, (a.) the defences of Gloucester were nearly completed. At York, the labour of the infantry made a considerable progress, both in the fortifications of the town, and in forming field works for an outward position. The parts of the country lying between York and the American outpost, and thence to Point Comfort, were foraged by the cavalry of the legion. The pickets of militia at the mill dam, on the Hampton road to Williamsburgh, were often insulted and drove in by the British dragoons, that Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton might confer with a spy, who resided beyond them. By this means, and by sending boats in the night up York river, constant intelligence was obtained. On the 26th, Earl Cornwallis was informed that a large body of troops had arrived in James river from the head of Elk and Baltimore, and that the forces of France and America were assembling at Williamsburgh. (b.)

General  
Washington's force  
concentrated  
at Williams-  
burgh.

At this period, the labour which had been bestowed on the outward position at York town, had improved its natural advantages, and rendered it in every respect convenient for the King's troops. The right rested on the swamp which covered the right of the town: A large redoubt was constructed beyond it, close to the river road from Williamsburgh, and completed with fraizing and abbatis. The Charon, Guadaloupe, and other armed vessels, were moored opposite to the swamp;

(a.) In note Z.

(b.) In note Z.

CHAP. VI. and the town batteries commanded all the roads and causeways which approached it. On the right, at the head of the morafs, two redoubts were placed, one on each fide of the main Williamsburgh road. The center was protected by a thin wood, whose front was cut down, with the branches facing outwards. A field work, mounted with cannon, was erected on the left of the center, to command the Hampton road. A deep ravine, and a creek, which increased till it reached York river, covered the left. Trees were felled, fleches were thrown up, and batteries were constructed, at the points which were deemed most vulnerable. The distance between the heads of the swamp and creek, which embraced the flanks of the town, did not exceed half a mile. The face of the country, in front of this line, was cut near the center by a morafs, and, excepting this break, the ground was plain and open for near two thousand yards. An excellent field artillery was placed to the greatest advantage by Captain Rochefort, who commanded in that department.

IN this position Earl Cornwallis' infantry were encamped, with the legion in front of the left, when the combined army prepared to advance. A picket in front of a working party on the right, gave notice on the 28th, that the enemy were approaching. The French chasseurs and grenadiers made their appearance (c.) before noon. Lieutenant-colonel Abercrombie drew the light-infantry picket nearer to his corps. The French formed across the main Williamsburgh road with great circumspection. At four o'clock the same day, the videttes of the legion informed Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, that a body of French and Americans had passed the swamp which divided the ground in front of

(c.) In note Z.

the

the royal army, and that they were extending towards the left flank CHAP. VI. of the legion. The cavalry were immediately mounted, and formed into three squadrons in front of the British center. In this situation they watched for an opportunity of striking at any detachment who might pass the Hampton road: But the enemy were cautious, and cannonaded the legion dragoons across the morass, who retired at sunset to Moore's house, within the outward position.

THE next morning the continental infantry marched in columns to the right of the combined forces, causeways being constructed in the night over the morass. A few cannon shot were fired from the British work on the Hampton road, and some riflemen skirmished with the pickets of the Anspach battalions on the left. The two armies observed each other with cautious attention, and nothing material occurred within or without the lines till evening, when an express boat reached York town, with a letter (O.) from Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis. The commander in chief advised his lordship of the arrival of Admiral Digby with three ships from Europe, and communicated the determination of the general and flag officers at New York, to embark a considerable corps in the British fleet, which would probably sail from that place on the 5th of October towards the Chesapeake. To this letter is attributed the order for the British troops to quit (P.) the outward, and retire to the inner position, which was accomplished before daybreak.

THE works erected for the protection of York town, consisted, on the right, of redoubts and batteries, with a line of stockade in the rear, which supported a high parapet of earth. The redoubts were

(O.) Note O.

(P.) Note P.

fur-

CHAP. VI. furnished with fraizing and abbatis. A marshy ravine (2.) lay in front of the right, over which was placed a large redoubt, with a good ditch, fraizing, and abbatis: The morafs extended along the center, which was defended by a line of stockade, and by batteries that looked upon all the avenues to the swamp: On the left of the center, was a horn work, with a ditch; a row of fraize, and an abbatis: Some embrasures for cannon were at present open in this work. The left was fortified by redoubts, communications of earth, and batteries, which were all furnished with fraizing, but without stockade or abbatis. Two redoubts were advanced before the left, which were small, and not so well finished as that in front of the right. The ground in front of the left was in some parts on a level with the works, in others cut by ravines, and altogether very convenient for the besiegers. The space within the works was exceedingly narrow, not large enough for retrenchments, and, except under the cliff, exposed to enfilade.

A VIEW of the plan, as well as this description, must suggest, that the retreat to the fortifications of the town was a measure (Q.) prematurely adopted: That the ground and compass of the outward position rendered it strong, and well adapted to the nature and number of the King's troops: That an attack in it was a circumstance earnestly to be desired by the British; but would certainly not have been attempted by the allies before they received their heavy cannon, and advanced by regular approaches: That this latter assertion is verified by the cautious conduct of the French, whose design of saving men, brought with extreme difficulty from Europe, was manifested during the whole siege: That great time would have been gained by holding and dis-

(2.) Which is described in the outward position, with the Charon and Guadaloupe lying opposite to it.

(Q.) Note Q.

puting



puting the ground inch by inch, both to finish the works of York town, and to retard the operations of the combined army : That no sudden danger could be apprehended by vigilant troops, with proper precautions, and the advantageous defences constructed on the outward position ; and that the relinquishing it, to coop the troops up in the contracted and unfinished works of York town, unexpectedly hastened the surrender of the British army.

At dawn, Lieutenant Cameron of the legion was directed to make as many prisoners as he could with a small detachment of picked dragoons. He fell in with a reconnoitering party at daybreak : He charged them though superior in numbers without hesitation, and brought off Colonel Scammell, who was wounded in attempting to retreat. Immediately after sunrise, the American and French generals had notice that the British army had retired into York town. The combined forces appeared moving in several columns ; and an assault was more to be apprehended before ten o'clock that morning than at any precedent or subsequent period, till the completion of the second parallel. The unfinished state of the works, the want of abatis, the badness of the position, and the difficulty of arranging both the troops and the artillery, would have rendered the attempt not very hazardous, if General Washington had either been acquainted with these circumstances, or had reason to doubt the superiority of the French navy in the American seas. In the course of the forenoon the allies took possession of the ground abandoned by the British, and felt the redoubt in front of the right, whence they were repulsed by the 23d regiment stationed in that quarter. The works (a.) which had been constructed on the gorge, between the heads of the creeks, proved of considerable

York town  
invested.

(a.) In note R.

utility.

CHAP. VI. utility to the combined (d.) forces: The addition of one redoubt, and the closing the fleche on the Hampton road, served equally to invest the town, and to protect their own encampment.

ON the 1st and 2d of October, advanced detachments of the allies, with general officers and engineers, reconnoitered the British lines. It was soon evident, the principal attack would be directed against the left. A few cannon shot were fired from the embrazures which looked upon the works the enemy were finishing on the gorge: Large parties of infantry were employed on the magazines in the town, and at the  
2d October. outward redoubts upon the left. In the evening, the legion cavalry and mounted infantry were passed over the river to Gloucester. At daybreak in the morning, Lieutenant-colonel Dundas, who commanded that post, led out detachments from all the corps in his garrison to forage the country in front. About three miles from Gloucester the waggons and the bat horses were loaded with Indian corn, and at ten o'clock the infantry of the covering party began to return. The rear guard, composed of dragoons, formed an ambuscade for some militia horsemen who made their appearance, and who came near enough to give effect to the stratagem. The waggons and infantry had nearly reached York river before the cavalry began to retreat. When they had proceeded to the wood in front of Gloucester, Lieutenant Cameron, who had been sent with a patrol to the rear, reported, that the enemy were advancing in force. A column of dust, and afterwards some French hussars, became visible.

PART of the legion, of the 17th, and of Simcoe's dragoons, were ordered to face about in the wood, whilst Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton,

(d.) In note Z.

with

with Lieutenant Cameron's party, reconnoitered the enemy. The superiority of their horses enabled this detachment to skirmish successfully with the hussars of Lauzun. At this point of time, Brigadier-general de Choisy was moving down the road with a corps of cavalry and infantry, to sustain his people in front, and the English rear guard was forming at the edge of a wood upwards of a mile distant, in sight of the skirmish upon the intermediate plain; when a dragoon's horse of the British legion, plunged, on being struck with a spear by one of the hulans, (3.) and overthrew Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton and his horse. This circumstance happening so much nearer to the body of the French than the British cavalry, excited an apprehension in the latter for the safety of their commanding officer. Impelled by this idea, the whole of the English rear guard set out full speed from its distant situation, and arrived in such disorder, that its charge was unable to make impression upon the Duke of Lauzun's hussars, who at this period were formed upon the plain. Meanwhile Tarleton escaped the enemy, and obtained another horse, when perceiving the broken state of his cavalry, occasioned by their anxiety for his safety, and which now precluded all vigorous efforts, he ordered a retreat, to afford them opportunity of recovering from their confusion. At three hundred yards from the French squadrons he dismounted forty infantry, just come up under Captain Champagnè, and placed them in a thicket on his right: The fire of this party restrained the enemy's hussars, and the British were soon rallied. A disposition was instantly made to charge the front of the hussars with one hundred and fifty dragoons, whilst a detachment wheeled upon their flank: No shock, however, took place between the two bodies of cavalry; the French

(3.) A part of Duke de Lauzun's regiment, who were armed with spears. — The author begs leave to apologize to the reader for detailing, at this critical period of the siege, a skirmish unimportant in itself, had it not been variously related.

CHAP. VI. hussars retired behind their infantry and a numerous militia who had arrived at the edge of the plain. Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, upon receiving part of their fire from behind a rail, again ordered the retreat to be sounded. Many attempts were made afterwards to detach the French hussars from their infantry, but they were all ineffectual. The troops between whom this skirmish happened consisted of the rear guard of an English (e.) foraging party, opposed to Brigadier de Choisy, at the head of great part of the corps sent to blockade Gloucester. The British troops had one officer and eleven men killed and wounded. The French (4.) had two officers and fourteen hussars killed and wounded. The next day, General de Choisy, being reinforced by a detachment of marines, proceeded to cut off all land communications between the country and Gloucester.

At York town the King's troops worked with great industry, and they were not interrupted before the enemy opened their batteries; the British artillery, however, was constantly employed in impeding the labour of the combined army. On the night of the 6th, a large detachment of American and French troops made considerable progress in the first (a.) parallel, which extended from the high ground above the river, along the left of the British lines, as far as the ravine that approached the hornwork, occupied by the light infantry. The length of the parallel was about one thousand yards, and its distance from the place, in general, six hundred. The Americans guarded the trenches, and conducted the attack upon the right of the combined forces; the French upon the left: The emulation of the officers communicated zeal to the soldiery. Works were also commenced by the French on

(e.) In note Z.

(4.) See journal of Count de Rochambeau's operations.

(a.) In note W.

the right of the British, immediately opposite to the redoubt garrisoned by the 23d regiment. The batteries of the allies opened on the afternoon of the 9th. Two days cannonade clearly demonstrated the badness of the position of the King's troops, and the weakness of the defences. The circle within the lines presented no place of security except under the cliff, and the fortifications were soon considerably damaged by the shot and shells of the enemy.

ABOUT this period, Major (S.) Cochrane arrived with a dispatch from the commander in chief; whereby Earl Cornwallis was acquainted with the state of the British navy at New York, and the uncertainty of any move from that quarter towards the Chesapeake. Every line of Sir Henry Clinton's letter described the circumstances which might delay his progress, and expressed anxiety for the situation of Earl Cornwallis; and it concluded by requiring his lordship's opinion respecting any diversion that he could make to cover the retreat of the British forces from York town and Gloucester. The situation of the Virginia army becoming every day more critical, and all hopes of relief, which could at no time have been sanguine, having now totally vanished, there appeared no likely measure to rescue the flower of the King's troops from captivity except their own personal exertion. Soon after the arrival of Major Cochrane, it was offered as advice to Earl Cornwallis, to evacuate the miserable works of York town; where every hour both of day and night, was an hour of watching and danger to the officer and soldier; where every gun was dismounted as soon as shewn; and where a long defence, against superior numbers and superior artillery, was (T.) utterly hopeless. To abandon fortifications that were not tenable, and adopt a design, which, at this juncture, had every

(S.) Note S.

(T.) Note T.

CHAP. VI. probability of success, was equally honourable and judicious. The destruction of the royal army, if it remained in York town, was inevitable : The fate of the best part of it, in attempting to pass through the country, was doubtful. The plan proposed pointed out the facility of transporting a large body of infantry in the night to Gloucester, the vulnerable situation of Brigadier-general de Choisy's corps, and the practicability of attaining one hundred miles distance by rapid marches; when a determination might be formed, from the circumstances which then presented themselves, whether a southward or a northward route would be most advantageous for the British forces.

THE obstacles to this enterprize will be displayed, and in a great measure removed, by describing the relative situations of York town and Gloucester, the means of evacuating them, the nature of the country through which the King's forces were to pass, and the quality and number of the troops to be employed on the occasion. The bank of the river and the shape of the cliff, at York town, are concave : The points being possessed by the British, all operations on the shore were concealed from the enemy. The army had, exclusive of the navy, many boats and much small craft, which, properly manned, could transport twelve hundred infantry at a trip, and with the assistance of the navy, above two thousand. No difficulties occur, therefore, to impede great part of the troops withdrawing in the night, embarking, crossing the river, and destroying the boats after the passage. Gloucester was not besieged : Brigadier de Choisy only blockaded that post with the Duke de Lauzun's legion, (three hundred and fifty men) seven hundred marines, and twelve hundred militia ; which corps he employed in the following manner : The main body were encamped upon the plain, three miles from Gloucester, behind a flight abbatis, and a large detachment was advanced to a narrow wood, about  
a mile



a mile and a half in their front ; where, about this time, a work was commenced, which was not half finished when the capitulation was signed at York. The nature of Brigadier Choisy's position, and the mixed quality of his troops, could not threaten a very formidable resistance. The difficulty of his knowing a false from a real attack in the dark, would, in all probability, so divide his resolution and his corps, that he would be beat in detail. A supposition that the British forces selected for the movement through the country would be driven back into Gloucester, could not for a moment be entertained.

THE country between the Rappahanock and York river, was as rich and plentiful as any part of America, and had not during the whole war been invaded or destroyed : It abounded with grain, cattle, and horses : The season of the year, too, was particularly favourable, on account of provisions and forage : The Indian corn, which supplies both bread and fodder, was just collected and stored. The distance of one hundred miles being obtained, it would then be optionable for the British general, either to point his course towards Philadelphia, (a.) upon which, previous to his departure from York town, he might request the commander in chief to make an attempt, in order to form a junction, and favour his retreat : Or, to direct his march to the southward, having reached a situation high enough in the country, to pass all the rivers at their fords, and by this means acquire once more a marked superiority in South Carolina.

UPWARDS of three thousand picked infantry, and four hundred cavalry and mounted infantry, could easily be withdrawn, and might with propriety be employed in forming the retreat. Part of the foot.

(a.) In note S.

CHAP. VI. had been accustomed to long marches, bad provisions, and extreme hardships: They had traversed the southern provinces, and had surmounted almost incredible difficulties without murmuring or desertion: The other corps were equally capable and zealous, and only required a trial to gain equal glory: The light baggage of the officers might be placed upon horses, but no waggons allowed for it; all the officers would have patiently and cheerfully acquiesced in this necessary command: The troops, both infantry and cavalry, should be supplied with three days provisions at Gloucester, to carry on their backs: Twenty waggons with good horses might be provided; in three of which, boats with cordage and pioneers implements should be conveyed; a number of artificers and sailors would readily attend these useful appendages: The other waggons could be loaded with flour, salt, and ammunition. All the field artillery in Gloucester might be employed against the neighbouring post of the enemy; but after that event, the number should be limited to four or six light pieces. The cavalry had already quitted York town, and were in good order; A body of infantry could be mounted on the spare horses of the quarter-master general and artillery departments, then in Gloucester. Detachments of dragoons and mounted infantry might act advantageously together, either to guard the front or the rear of the army, to seize provisions, to secure defiles, or to move rapidly and vigorously upon any emergency. Many horses would undoubtedly fall into the possession of the British in the affair with the Brigadier de Choisy, and many hundreds might be collected from the populous counties in the vicinity of the Rappahanock. The British dragoons, who were superior in number, and much better mounted, would press the hussars of Lauzun to extremity, being fully sensible of the necessity and utility of such an event; and would afterwards employ themselves assiduously to procure all the horses within their reach: It is, therefore, not incredible

credible but that horses would be taken and found, to mount near half CHAP. VI. the British infantry, before they had proceeded fifty miles from Gloucester.

It is not unseasonable to form some reflections upon the measures the combined army would adopt, in consequence of this movement of the British. After taking possession of York town, the generals would naturally send to the French fleet for boats: This circumstance, together with councils of war, and correspondence with the admiral, would certainly consume a period of three days before any important design could be determined on for execution. A division of troops would then probably be sent to the head of the Chesapeake; another up James river, and a third would perhaps be ordered to follow the route of the British army. But notwithstanding all these preventive measures, the efforts of the enemy to harass, to stop, or to encompass the King's troops; without a superior cavalry, must prove fruitless. Many incidents, which, viewed separately, might appear trifling, would, when united, produce essential consequences, and considerably favour the retreat of the British. The likelihood of destroying the French hussars at the commencement of the expedition; the hardships to be endured upon the march, which the followers would find proportionably augmented; the want of ovens for baking bread might impede the advance of the French, though it could not affect the progress of the British: By long and repeated use, the latter had acquired the habit of dispensing with all conveniencies; the want of which the former were as unacquainted with as with the language of the country. And to these circumstances might be added, the probable division of force which would arise from a certain opposition in the plans of the two French commanders. The Count de Rochambeau would indubitably wish to follow the success of York town, whilst the Count de Grasse would be  
equally

CHAP. VI. equally solicitous to return to the West Indies, the great theatre of naval operations. This contention of opinion, if it did not weaken the French army by the removal of St. Simon's brigade, would, at least, produce perplexity, debate, and delay.

THE line of conduct most likely and advisable for General Washington to adopt, on this emergency, would be to transport the greatest part of his continentals, by Baltimore, to Pennsylvania, in order to cover Philadelphia, which might not be an easy or safe business, if the French squadron quitted the Chesapeake, and to detach the Marquis de la Fayette up James river, to oppose the return of Earl Cornwallis to the southward. But allowing the best plans to be adopted, and the execution to be equally finished, there is the strongest reason to believe that the British general would escape with the flower of his army, by abandoning, in good time, a few frigates, a train of artillery, and a number of sick: Sacrifices highly justifiable in his desperate situation: The evil and good that would have resulted from the experiment may be contrasted in a few words: If the march failed, it would certainly confound and delay the designs of the French; and if the British did fall into the hands of their enemies, they would fall later, and with increased reputation, by having used the most judicious and vigorous efforts to avert the calamity; but the tried powers and superior qualities of the King's troops, with the calculation of the favourable circumstances of time and place, demonstrated the feasibility of accomplishing a retreat, which would have enhanced the military glory, and promoted the general welfare of their country.

Two strong reasons urged an evacuation immediately after Major Cochrane's arrival: The uncertainty of the climate during the autumn, recommended the present fine weather; and the distance of the Americans

ricans and French allowed a more convenient opportunity than when CHAP. VI. they had completed their second parallel: The retreat was, however, postponed, and other events present themselves to immediate attention. On the night of (b.) the 11th the enemy commenced their second parallel: The British howitzers and small mortars were employed to interrupt their progress; but the French and Americans were greatly covered and protected, whilst at work, by their batteries, which obliged the besieged to shut up the embrasures on the left of their lines. The second parallel was considerably advanced before the first: It approached the redoubts, which were placed on the left flank of York town: The places of arms and the communications were judiciously constructed. The King's troops now began to lose men very fast, both by sickness and by the enemy's fire: To reinforce the line, Lieutenant-colonel Dundas was ordered with great part of the 80th regiment from Gloucester, and the future command of that post was intrusted to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton.

ON the evening of the 14th, General Washington directed a detachment from each army to attack, after dark, the two outward redoubts upon the left of the British lines at York. The Marquis de la Fayette commanded the assault made from the American works, and the Baron de Viomenil that which proceeded from the French trenches. The Americans, headed by a number of officers and volunteers, performed their duty with vigour and courage: The British redoubt, which had been much damaged by the fire of the batteries, was soon carried, and the commanding officer, with many of his detachment, was made prisoner. Colonels Hamilton, Lawrance, and De Gimat, distinguished themselves on this occasion. The Baron de Viomenil was not less

Two redoubts at York town carried by the French and Americans.

(b.) In note W

3 D

successful



CHAP. VI. successful in his attempt. The French chasseurs and grenadiers met with more difficulties and greater loss; but they entered with fixed bayonets, and made themselves masters of the redoubt. The Count de Deux Ponts, the Count Charles de Damas, and several other French officers of distinction, were amongst the foremost of the assailants. No trial was made by the King's troops to re-possess the redoubts; and the working party of the combined army included them within their parallel before morning. The loss of men sustained by the British was not great, or nearly so important as the loss of the ground covered by the redoubts. The enemy's works were pushed forwards with skill as well as assiduity, and, by their nearer approach to the body of the place, the situation of the besieged became every hour more disadvantageous. The batteries of the first parallel had silenced the cannon of the town, and made considerable impression on the fortifications: Those of the second parallel were nearly finished on the 15th, and soon expected to open with redoubled devastation.

Sortie from  
York town.

In this critical situation, Earl Cornwallis wrote (V.) to the commander in chief, and advised him not to run great risk with the British navy and army, in attempting to relieve him, as his condition was nearly desperate, and his defence of York town could not much longer be protracted. In order to delay the opening of the batteries upon the second parallel, his lordship planned a sortie, to be put in execution before daybreak on the 16th. The direction (c.) of the sally was given to Lieutenant-colonel Abercrombie, who divided a corps of three hundred and fifty men into two parties: He appointed Lieutenant-colonel Lake to the division, which consisted of grenadiers selected from the guards and the 80th regiment, and he placed Major Armstrong to

(V.) Note V.

(c.) In note-W.

the



the other, which was composed of light infantry. Before dawn, two batteries and the covering redoubts in the second parallel were gallantly attacked, and carried, without any considerable loss. A large body of French troops, under the Viscount de Noailles, soon moved forwards to retake the works in front, when the British retreated to their own lines, having killed and taken some officers and soldiers, and spiked eleven pieces of heavy cannon. Though this action was successful, and enhanced the reputation of the officers and troops that were engaged, the public service was not much benefited by it. The cannon, owing to the hurry of the British, or to the ingenuity of the French, were soon unspiked, and the batteries were nearly finished before evening.

A few hours cannonade from the new batteries upon York town, where the fraizings were already destroyed, the guns dismounted, many breaches effected, and the shells nearly expended, would be productive either of a capitulation, or an assault. A retreat by Gloucester was the only expedient that now presented itself to avert the mortification of a surrender, or the destruction of a storm. Though this plan appeared less practicable than when first proposed, and was adopted at this crisis, as the last resource, it yet afforded some hopes of success. In the evening, Earl Cornwallis sent Lord Chewton to Gloucester, 16th Oct. with explicit directions for Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton to prepare some artillery and other requisites from his garrison to accompany the British troops with which his lordship designed to attack Brigadier de Choisy before daybreak, and afterwards retreat through the country. The guards of cavalry and infantry at Tarleton's post were immediately augmented, and many officers were advanced as sentries, to prevent any intelligence being conveyed to the enemy. All the commanding officers of regiments were afterwards acquainted with

CHAP. VI. the intended project, that their corps might be completely assembled and equipped. The spare horses of the garrison were ordered to parade for the benefit of the infantry, and the necessary artillery and waggons were prepared. A number of sailors and soldiers were dispatched with boats from Gloucester, to assist the troops in passing the river. Earl Cornwallis sent off the first embarkation before eleven o'clock that night, consisting of the light infantry, great part of the brigade of guards, and the 23d regiment, and purposed himself to pass with the second, when he had finished a letter to General Washington, calculated to excite the humanity of that officer towards the sick, the wounded, and the detachment that would be left to capitulate. Much of the small craft had been damaged during the siege; yet it was computed, that three trips would be sufficient to convey over all the troops that were necessary for the expedition. The whole of the first division arrived before midnight, and part of the second had embarked, when a squall, attended with rain, scattered the boats, and impeded their return to Gloucester. About two o'clock in the morning the weather began to moderate, when orders were brought to the commanding officers of the corps that had passed, to re-cross the water. As the boats were all on the York side the river, in order to bring over the troops, it required some time to row them to Gloucester, to carry back the infantry of the first embarkation; but soon after daybreak they returned under the fire of the enemy's batteries to Earl Cornwallis, at Yorktown. Thus expired the last hope of the British army.

17th Oct.  
Surrender of  
York town  
and Gloucester.

In the forenoon, (d.) his lordship, by a flag, proposed a cessation of hostilities for twenty-four hours, in order to settle the terms for the

(d.) In note W.

fur-

surrender of York and Gloucester. (X.) General Washington, in answer, admitted a suspension of arms for two hours, that Earl Cornwallis might transmit in writing the offers which he intended, as the foundation of a treaty. His lordship replied, that the garrisons of York town and Gloucester should be prisoners of war, with customary honours; that the officers and soldiers, both British and German, should be sent to their respective countries, under engagement not to serve against France, America, or their allies, until released, or regularly exchanged; that all arms and public stores should be faithfully delivered; but that the usual indulgence of side arms to officers, and of retaining private property, should be granted to officers and soldiers. Earl Cornwallis likewise required some stipulations for the benefit of individuals in civil capacities, and the followers of the army. Hostilities were not renewed in the evening, or during the night; and General Washington answered the next day, that the garrisons of York and Gloucester should be received as prisoners of war; that the annexed condition of sending the British and German troops to the parts of Europe to which they respectively belonged was inadmissible; that the same honours would be granted to the surrendering army, as were granted to the garrison of Charles town; and that the shipping, boats, artillery, arms, accoutrements, and military chest, were to be delivered to the heads of departments, who would be instructed to receive them. Two hours were allowed to consider these and other proposals, and to appoint commissioners to digest the articles of capitulation; otherwise hostilities would be recommenced. Earl Cornwallis, after making some specifications, nominated Lieutenant-colonel Dundas and Major Ross, to meet the Viscount de Noailles and Colonel Lawrence, at Moore's house, in the neighbourhood of the lines.

(X.) Note X.

I.

THE

CHAP. VI. THE principal articles of (Y.) the capitulation were to the following effect. The troops to be prisoners of war to America and the naval force to France. The officers to retain their side arms and private property of every kind: Any property obviously belonging to the inhabitants of the United States, in the possession of the garrison, to be liable to claim. The soldiers to be kept in Virginia, Maryland, or Pennsylvania, and as much by regiments as possible, and to be supplied with the same rations of provisions as are allowed to soldiers in the service of America. A proportion of the officers to march into the country with the prisoners; the rest to be allowed to proceed, on parole, to any American maritime port in possession of the British, or to Europe. The Bonetta sloop of war to be permitted to sail to New York without examination, on condition that she was returned to the Count de Grasse, and the soldiers and sailors passengers accounted for on her delivery.

THE regular troops of France and America who obtained this important conquest, consisted of about seven thousand of the former, and five thousand five hundred of the latter, and they were assisted by about four thousand militia. The skill of the engineers corresponded well with the force of the artillery, amounting to upwards of one hundred pieces of ordnance. On the part of the combined army, from the first to the last period of the siege, somewhat above three hundred were killed and wounded, exclusive of officers. The only British officer of note that fell, was the honourable Major Charles Cochrane, (BB.) of the legion. The killed and wounded, officers inclusive, amounted to four hundred and seventy-seven, and seventy were taken in the redoubts on the 14th. By (CC.) the return transmitted to Congress, one lieutenant general, one brigadier general, two colonels, fourteen

(Y.) Note Y.

(BB.) Note BB.

(CC.) Note CC.

lieutenant colonels, sixteen majors, ninety-seven captains, one hundred and eighty lieutenants, fifty-five ensigns, four chaplains, six adjutants, eighteen quarter masters, eighteen surgeons, fifteen mates, three hundred and eighty-five serjeants, one hundred and seventy-nine drums and trumpets, six thousand and thirty-nine rank and file, several men belonging to departments, eighty followers of the army, many sea officers, eight hundred and forty sailors, other transport seamen, with the Guadaloupe and Fowey frigates, the Bonetta sloop, several gallies and armed vessels, seventy-five pieces of brass ordnance, sixty-nine iron ditto, the military chest, containing two thousand one hundred and sixteen pounds sterling, twenty-four regimental colours, a number of horses and waggons, and a quantity of small arms, stores, &c. &c. were surrendered by the capitulation, signed on the one part by Earl Cornwallis and Commodore Symmonds, and on the other, by General Washington, Count de Rochambeau, and Count de Barras, in his own and the name of the Count de Grasse.

It may not be improper to recapitulate the causes which were productive of this important event; and as the arms of America and France were crowned with success, they demand a primary attention. General Washington and Count de Rochambeau, early in the summer, intreated the French admiral (AA.) to embrace the first convenient opportunity of quitting the West Indies with the fleet and some land forces, to participate in their designs against the common enemy in America. The sending the Marquis de la Fayette to command in Virginia, was certainly a step well calculated to communicate to that and the neighbouring provinces a strong persuasion of French co-operation; and the movement of the combined army in June towards New

(AA.) Note AA.

York,



CHAP. VI. York, contributed greatly to conceal the point of attack. The early arrival of the French fleet in the Chesapeake, the speedy disembarkation of St. Simon's brigade, the rapid movement of the French and American troops from the northward, to form the investment of York town, exhibit strong and admirable proofs of political foresight and military arrangement. The conduct of the French and American engineers and artillery, in planning the approaches, and pointing the ordnance, during the siege, demands the highest applause: And the behaviour of the Count de Grasse, in leaving the bay, during the absence of some ships and of a number of seamen, to engage Admiral Graves, and by that means protect the Count de Barras's squadron, is no less worthy of admiration. In short, great glory necessarily proceeded from projects that were conceived with profound wisdom, combined together with singular propriety, and crowned with unvaried success.

A RETROSPECTIVE view of British operations plainly discovers, that the march from Wilmington to Petersburg was formed and executed by Earl Cornwallis without the knowledge or consent of Sir Henry Clinton: That York town and Gloucester were voluntarily occupied by his lordship, in preference to Old-point Comfort, when a post for the protection of the navy was required: That as soon as Sir Henry Clinton was apprized of the minister's wish to make a serious attempt upon Virginia, he committed as large a corps to Earl Cornwallis in that province as was compatible with the safety of New York and its dependencies, during the vicinity of the French and American army: That every intelligence which could be obtained of the enemy's movements was transmitted by the commander in chief, who made all the efforts in his power to assist and relieve his lordship, from the period that the French fleet entered the Chesapeake to the hour of the capitulation at York town: And that Earl Cornwallis may be said



to incur the imputation of misconceiving his own danger, in not destroying La Fayette's detachment after the affair near James island ; in not striking at the corps at Williamsburgh previous to the junction of Washington and Rochambeau ; in quitting so early the outward for the inner position, where he was obliged to make proposals to surrender eight days after the enemy opened their batteries ; and in not adopting sooner and more decidedly the measure of passing through the country. Some instances of oversight may, therefore, be attributed to his lordship, which precipitated, perhaps, the fate of his own army ; but the genuine cause of the great national calamity, which put a period to the continental war, must by all ranks and descriptions of men be principally ascribed to the minister in England, or the admiral in the West Indies. The arrival of De Grasse in the Chesapeake equally animated the confidence of the allies, and destroyed all the British hopes of conquest or of reconciliation in that quarter. The safety of Earl Cornwallis' army, in all human probability, would only have procrastinated the evil day ; for the past success of the campaign, and the future prospects of the King's troops, were counteracted by the formidable appearance of the French fleet. The superiority at sea proved the strength of the enemies of Great Britain, deranged the plans of her generals, disheartened the courage of her friends, and finally confirmed the independency of America.



# N O T E S

## TO THE

### S I X T H C H A P T E R.

---

#### (NOTE A.)

*Extract. — From Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York, June 11, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

**R**ESPECTING my opinions of stations in James and York rivers, I shall beg leave only to refer your lordship to my instructions to, and correspondence with, Generals Phillips and Arnold; together with the substance of conversations with the former, which your lordship will have found amongst General Phillips' papers, and to which I referred you in my last dispatch. I shall, therefore, of course, approve of any alteration your lordship may think proper to make in those stations.

THE detachments I have made from this army into Chesapeak, since General Leslie's expedition in October last, inclusive, have amounted to seven thousand seven hundred and twenty-four effectives; and at the time your lordship made the junction with the corps there, there were, under Major-general Phillips' orders, five thousand three hundred and

3 E 2

four :

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter. four: A force, I should have hoped, would be sufficient of itself to have carried on operations in any of the southern provinces of America; where, as appears by the intercepted letters of Washington and La Fayette, they are in no situation to stand against even a division of that army.

I HAVE no reason to suppose the continentals under La Fayette can exceed one thousand; and I am told by Lieutenant-colonel Hill, of the 9th regiment, that about a fortnight ago he met at Frederick town the Pennsylvania line, under Wayne, of about the same number, who were so discontented, that their officers were afraid to trust them with ammunition. This, however, may have since altered; and your lordship may possibly have opposed to you from fifteen hundred to two thousand continentals, and (as La Fayette observes) a small body of ill-armed peasantry, full as spiritless as the militia of the southern provinces, and without any service.

COMPARING, therefore, the force now under your lordship in the Chesapeake, and that of the enemy opposed to you, (and I think it clearly appears they have, for the present, no intention of sending thither reinforcements) I should have hoped you would have quite sufficient to carry on any operation in Virginia, should that have been advisable at this advanced season.

By the intercepted (a.) letters, enclosed to your lordship in my last dispatch, you will observe, that I am threatened with a siege in this post. My present effective force is only ten thousand nine hundred and thirty-one. With respect to that, the enemy may collect for such an object, it is probable they may amount to at least twenty thousand, besides reinforcement to the French, (which, from pretty good autho-

rity,

rity, I have reason to expect) and the numerous militia of the five  
 neighbouring provinces. Thus circumstanced, I am persuaded your  
 lordship will be of opinion, that the sooner I concentrate my force the  
 better. Therefore (unless your lordship, after the receipt of my letter  
 of the 29th of May, and 8th instant, should incline to agree with me  
 in opinion, and judge it right to adopt my ideas respecting the move to  
 Baltimore, or the Delaware neck, &c.) I beg leave to recommend it to  
 you, as soon as you have finished the active operations you may now be  
 (b.) engaged in, to take a defensive station, in any healthy situation  
 you chuse, (be it at Williamsburgh or York town); and I would wish,  
 in that case, that, after reserving to yourself such troops as you may  
 judge necessary for an ample defensive, and desultory movements by  
 water, for the purpose of annoying the enemy's communications, de-  
 stroying magazines, &c., the following corps may be sent to me in  
 succession as you can spare them: Two battalions of light infantry;  
 43d regiment; 76th or 80th regiment; two battalions of Anspach;  
 Queen's rangers, cavalry and infantry; remains of the detachment of  
 17th light dragoons; and such proportion of artillery as can be spared,  
 particularly men.

---

(NOTE B.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated Williams-*  
*burgh, June 30, 1781.*

LA FAYETTE's continentals, I believe, consist of about seventeen  
 or eighteen hundred men, exclusive of some twelvemonths-men col-  
 lected by Steuben. He has received considerable reinforcements of mi-  
 litia,

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

litia, and about eight hundred mountain riflemen under Campbell. He keeps with his main body about eighteen or twenty miles from us; his advanced corps about ten or twelve, probably with an intention of insulting our rear guard when we pass James river. I hope, however, to put that out of his power, by crossing at James-city island; if I can get a favourable opportunity of striking a blow at him without loss of time, I will certainly try it. I will likewise attempt water expeditions, if proper objects present themselves after my arrival at (a.) Portsmouth.

---

(NOTE C.)

*Extract. — From Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York, June 28, 1781.*

[In cypher. — Received July 8, 1781.]

HAVING, for very essential reasons, come to a resolution of endeavouring, by a rapid move, to seize the stores, &c., collected at Philadelphia, and afterwards to bring the troops employed on that service to reinforce this post, I am to request, that, if your lordship has not already embarked the reinforcement I called for in my letters of the 8th, 11th, 15th, and 19th instant, and should not be engaged in some very important move, either of your own, or in consequence of my ideas respecting operation in the Upper Chesapeake, you will be pleased, as soon as possible, to order an embarkation of the troops specified below, (1.) and of stores, &c. &c. stated in the enclosed paper, or in

(1.) Second battalion of light infantry; 43d regiment; 76th or 80th; two battalions of Anspach; Queen's rangers, cavalry and infantry; and such a proportion of artillery as can be spared, particularly men.



as full a manner as your lordship can with propriety comply ; recol- Notes to the  
lecting, that whatever may have been taken too great a proportion of, Sixth  
will be immediately returned to you the moment the expedition is over. Chapter.

---

(NOTE D.)

*Copy. — Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated Cobham,  
July 8, 1781.*

SIR,

I WAS this morning honoured with your dispatch of the 28th ult. The troops are perfectly ready, and will proceed to Portsmouth to wait the arrival (f.) of the transports. I will give immediate orders about the artillery, stores, &c.

THE transports now at Portsmouth are sufficient to carry the light infantry ; I had prepared them to receive that corps, and should have sent them to you in a few days, if your last order had not arrived. In your cyphered dispatch, the 2d battalion of light infantry only is mentioned ; but I conclude that to be a mistake, and shall keep both ready to embark. I take for granted that General Robertson will come with the transports to take the command of the expedition. General Leslie is still here ; but as it was not my intention to have sent him with the troops to New York, and as he will be the properest person to command here, in case you should approve of my returning to Charles town, I shall not send him on the expedition, unless it shall then appear to be your excellency's desire that he should accompany General Robertson.

I MUST

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

I MUST again take the liberty of calling your excellency's serious attention to the question of the utility of a defensive post in this country, which cannot have the smallest influence on the war in Carolina, and which only gives us some acres of an unhealthy swamp, and is forever liable to become a prey to a foreign enemy, with a temporary superiority at sea. Desultory expeditions in the Chesapeake may be undertaken from New York with as much ease and more safety, whenever there is reason to suppose that our naval force is likely to be superior for two or three months.

THE boats and naval assistance having been sent to me by Captain Hudson, I marched on the (a) 4th from Williamsburgh to a camp which covered a ford into the island of James town. The Queen's rangers passed the river that evening. On the 5th, I sent over all the wheel carriages, and on the 6th, the bat horses, and baggage of every kind, intending to pass (b.) with the army on the 7th. About noon, on the 6th, information was brought me of the approach of the enemy, and about four in the afternoon a large body attacked our out posts. Concluding that the enemy would not bring a considerable force within our reach, unless they supposed that nothing was left but a rear guard, I took every means to convince them of my weakness, and suffered my pickets to be insulted and driven back; nothing, however, appeared near us but riflemen and militia till near (c.) sunset, when a body of continentals, with artillery, began to form in the front of our camp. I then put the troops under arms, and ordered the army to advance in two lines. The attack was begun by the first line with great spirit. There being nothing but militia opposed to the light infantry, the action was soon over on the right: But Lieutenant-colonel Dundas' (d.) brigade, consisting of the 43d, 76th, and 80th regiments, which formed the left wing, meeting the Pennsylvania line,

and

and a detachment of the Marquis de la Fayette's continentals, with two six-pounders, a smart action ensued for some minutes, when the enemy gave way and abandoned their cannon. The cavalry were perfectly ready to pursue; but the darkness of the evening prevented my being able to make use of them. I cannot sufficiently commend the spirit and good behaviour of the officers and soldiers of the whole army; but the 76th and 80th regiments, on whom the brunt of the action fell, had an opportunity of distinguishing themselves particularly, and Lieutenant-colonel Dundas' conduct and gallantry deserve the highest praise. The force of the enemy in the field was about two thousand, and their loss, I believe, between two and three hundred. Half an hour more of daylight would have probably given us the greatest part of the corps.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

I HAVE enclosed a list of our killed and wounded. We finished our passage yesterday, which has been an operation of great labour and difficulty, as the river is three miles wide at this place. I have great obligations to Captain Aplin and the officers of the navy and seamen for their great exertions and attentions on this occasion.

I HAVE not received the letters your excellency alludes to, of the 29th of May, or 8th and 19th of June.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

*Extract of a letter from an officer of rank in the American army, dated July 11th, 1781.*

THE British officers, we are informed, are much displeased at the issue, and acknowledged they were out-generalled; otherwise they must

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter. have (e.) cut to pieces our small detachment, aided as they were by five hundred horse, and a considerable body of infantry, mounted.

WE could not possibly have extricated ourselves from the difficulties we were in, but by the manœuvre we adopted, which, though it may have the appearance of temerity to those unacquainted with circumstances, yet was founded on the truest military principles, and was one of those necessary, though daring, measures, which seldom fail of producing the desired effect, that is, confusing the enemy, and opening a way to retreat in fight of a much superior army.

---

(NOTE E.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated Cobham, July 8th, 1781.*

✂ DEAR TARLETON,

I WOULD have you begin your march to-morrow with the corps of cavalry and mounted infantry under your command to Prince-Edward court house, and from thence to New London in Bedford county, making the strictest inquiry in every part of the country through which you pass, for ammunition, cloathing, or stores of any kind, intended for the public; and as there is no pressing service for your corps in this province, I must desire you will be in no haste to return; but do every thing in your power to destroy the supplies destined for the rebel army.

ALL public stores of corn and provisions are to be burnt, and if there should be a quantity of provisions or corn collected at a private house,

house, I would have you destroy it, even although there should be no proof of its being intended for the public service, leaving enough for the support of the family, as there is the greatest reason to apprehend that such provisions will be ultimately appropriated by the enemy to the use of General Greene's army, which, from the present state of the Carolinas, must depend on this province for its supplies.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

As it is very probable that some of the light troops of General Greene's army may be on their return to this country, you will do all you can to procure intelligence of their route; I need not tell you of what importance it will be to intercept them, or any prisoners of ours from South Carolina. I would have all persons of consequence, either civil or military, brought to me before they are paroled.

I WILL leave a detachment at Suffolk to receive you on your return. Three light waggons, with good horses, and a puncheon of rum, will be delivered to you on application to the quarter-master general.

You will publish that you are the advanced guard of my army, and order, under pain of military execution, the people of the country to provide waggons, &c., to expedite the movements of my army.

Most sincerely wishing you success, and placing the greatest confidence in your zeal and abilities,

I am, with great truth and regard,

Dear Tarleton,

Most faithfully yours,

CORNWALLIS.



## (NOTE F.)

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

*Copy. — Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis, dated head quarters, New York, July 11th, 1781.*

[In cypher. — Received from Brigadier-major Bowes, July 20th, at one A. M.]

MY LORD,

I HAVE received your lordship's letter of the 30th of June, and the admiral has dispatched a frigate with his and my opinions in answer to it. I cannot be more explicit by this opportunity than to desire, that, if you have not already passed the James river, you will continue on the Williamsburgh neck until she arrives with my dispatches by Captain Stapleton. If you have passed, and find it expedient to recover that station, you will please to do it, and keep possession until you hear from me. Whatever troops may have been embarked by you for this place, are likewise to remain until farther orders; and if they should have been failed, and within your call, you will be pleased to stop them. It is the admiral's and my wish, at all events, to hold Old-point Comfort, which secures Hampton road.

H. CLINTON.

*Extract. — From Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York, July 15, 1781.*

UNTIL I had the honour to receive your lordship's letter of the 8th instant, I had flattered myself, that upon re-considering the general purport of our correspondence, and General Phillips' papers in your possession, you would, at least, have waited for a line from me, in answer to your letter of the 30th ult., before you finally determined

upon



upon so serious and mortifying a move, as the re-passing James river, and retiring with your army to Portsmouth: And I was the more induced to hope that this would have been the case, as we both seemed to agree in our opinion of the propriety of taking a healthy station on the Neck, between York and James rivers, for the purpose of covering a proper harbour for our line-of-battle ships. And I am persuaded your lordship will be sensible, that in all my letters I clearly leave you at full liberty to detain any part, or even the whole of the troops I solicited you to send me, should your lordship have determined on any solid operation of your own in Virginia, or elsewhere; or should you have adopted the one I had recommended in the Upper Chesapeake; or even should you have judged their continuance with you necessary, until the stations you might think proper to take were rendered respectably defensive.

As your lordship is again pleased to call my serious attention to the question of the utility of a defensive post in Virginia, which you say cannot have the smallest influence on the war in Carolina, and which only gives us some acres of an unhealthy swamp, I must, in answer, beg leave again to repeat to your Lordship, that it never was my intention to continue a post on Elizabeth river any longer than until the commencement of solid operations in the Chesapeake, nor to have there more troops than what might be capable of defending a small work on that river; and that all the general officers who have commanded in the Chesapeake have had my consent to change that station for one more healthy, if they judged it proper to do so: To which I will moreover add, that it ever has been, is, and ever will be, my firm and unalterable opinion, that it is of the first consequence to His Majesty's affairs on this continent, that we take possession of the Chesapeake, and that we do not afterwards relinquish it. I beg leave, also, my lord, to  
dissent:

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

diffent from the opinion you have given me of a defensive post in the Chesapeak, and that desultory expeditions there may be undertaken from New York with as much ease, and more safety ; for I cannot but suppose, that a defensive station in the Chesapeak, with a corps of at least four thousand regular troops for its protection and desultory water movements during the summer months, wherein land operations may be impracticable, would have the most beneficial effects on more distant districts, for the reasons I have already had the honour to give your lordship : Nor do I recollect, that in any of my letters to your lordship, I have suggested an idea, that there was a probability of the enemy's having a naval superiority in these seas for any length of time, much less for so long a one as two or three months. But with respect to the unhealthiness of the station at Portsmouth, my letters to General Phillips on that subject, (wherein I say, God forbid I should wish to bury the *elite* of my army in Nansemond and Princess Anne) will satisfy your lordship that we are both of one opinion.

---

(NOTE G.)

*Copy of the report of Lieutenant Sutherland, engineer, dated Billy ordnance transport, Hampton road, July 25, 1781.*

MY LORD,

AGREEABLE to your orders, I have examined the ground on Old-point Comfort with as much accuracy as I possibly could ; and for your lordship's better information, I have made a survey of the ground, upon which is laid down the width and soundings of the channel.

I BEG

I BEG leave to offer what appears to me respecting the situation of a work on that spot.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

THE ground where the ruins of fort George lay is the fittest for a work, but at the same time must be attended with many inconveniencies.

THE level of the ground there is about two feet higher than the high-water mark, which, from its very short distance to the deep water, must soon be destroyed by a naval attack.

THE great width and depth of the channel give ships the advantage of passing the fort with very little risk. I apprehend fifteen hundred yards is too great a distance for batteries to stop ships, which is the distance here. Ships that wish to pass the fire of the fort, have no occasion to approach nearer.

NOR do I imagine a fort built there could afford any great protection to an inferior and weak fleet, anchored near the fort, against a superior fleet of the enemy, which must have it in their power to make their own disposition, and place our fleet between them and the fort, the channel affording no bay for the security of ships under cover of a fort.

THE time and expence to build a fort there must be very considerable, from the low situation of the ground, which must necessarily cause the soil to be moved from a great distance to form the ramparts and parapets; and every other material must be carried there, as the timber on the peninsula is unfit for any useful purpose.

THESE

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

THESE are the remarks which have occurred to me on examining the ground and situation of a work on Old-point Comfort, for the protection of the harbour and fleet, which I humbly submit to your lordship.

I have the honour to be, &c.

ALEX. SUTHERLAND,  
Lieutenant of engineers.

*Copy of the opinions of the commanders of His Majesty's ships in the Chesapeake, relative to Old-point Comfort, dated Richmond, Hampton road, July 26, 1781.*

MY LORD,

IN consequence of a requisition that your lordship received from the commanders in chief of His Majesty's troops and ships, relative to a post being established at Old-point Comfort, for the protection and security of the King's ships that may occasionally be sent to the Chesapeake, we, whose names are hereunto subscribed, have taken as accurate a survey of that place as possible, and are unanimously of opinion, from the width of the channel and depth of water close to it, that any superior enemy's force coming in may pass any work that can be established there, with little damage, or destroy it with the ships that may be there under its protection.

We have the honour to be, &c.

CHARLES HUDSON,  
THOMAS SYMONDS,  
CHARLES EVERITT,  
RALPH DUNDASS.

(NOTE

## (NOTE H.)

*Admiral Graves to Earl Cornwallis, dated London, off Sandy Hook,  
12th July, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

MY LORD,

I HAVE the honour to acquaint your lordship, that the Solebay, Captain Everitt, carries Captain Stapleton, charged with his Excellency Sir Henry Clinton's dispatches to your lordship, and with my orders to the captains of the King's ships, to return with the troops under their convoy to the Chesapeak; and if not failed, for them to remain, and to conform to your lordship's requisitions in the disposal of them.

I NEED only say to your lordship, that there is no place for the great ships during the freezing months, on this side the Chesapeak, where the great ships will be in security, and at the same time capable of acting; and in my opinion, they had better go to the West Indies than be laid up in Halifax during the winter. If the Squadron is necessary to the operations of the army, Hampton road appears to be the place where they can be anchored with the greatest security, and at the same time be capable of acting with most effect against any attempts of the enemy. To this end, Old-point Comfort seems necessary to be occupied by us, as commanding the entrance to the road; and if York can be secured, it will give the command of the lower, or Elizabeth country, and deprive the rebels of the use of the two best settled rivers of the Chesapeak, and deter an enemy from entering the Chesapeak whilst we command the access to it, for we should have all his convoys and detachments exposed to our attempts.

I have the honour to be, &c.

THO. GRAVES.

3 G

Earl



Notes to the *Earl Cornwallis to Admiral Graves, dated Portsmouth, July 26, 1781.*  
Sixth  
Chapter.

S I R,

I WAS honoured with your letter of the 12th of July, by the Solebay, in which you mention a desire of having a harbour secured in the Chesapeak for line-of-battle ships. I immediately ordered the engineers to examine Old-point Comfort, and went thither myself with the captains of the navy on this station. You will receive a copy of the engineers' report, with a sketch of the peninsula, and the opinion of the officers of the navy relative to the occupying and fortifying of that post.

THE commander in chief having signified to me, in his letter of the 11th instant, that he thought a secure harbour for line-of-battle ships of so much importance in the Chesapeak, that he wished me to possess one, even if it should occupy all the force at present in Virginia; and as it is our unanimous opinion that Point Comfort (a.) will not answer the purpose, I shall immediately seize and fortify the posts of York and Gloucester, and shall be happy at all times to concur in any measures which may promote the convenience and advantage of His Majesty's navy.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE



## (NOTE I.)

*Copy. — From Earl Cornwallis to Lieutenant-colonel Tarleton, dated York town, August 4, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

✱ DEAR TARLETON,

WE had a passage of four days, but made good our landing without opposition on either side. I have no positive accounts of the enemy. Fayette is said to be marching towards the Pamunkey, and I am not quite easy about our post at Gloucester. Wayne had certainly advanced to Goode's (a.) bridge; but I suppose he will now be recalled. Simcoe himself is ill, and his horses, by being so long on board, are in a wretched condition. According to the present appearance of things, it will certainly be much the best way for you to land at Old-point Comfort, and march by Hampton to this place, which will nearly insure your not being above one day on board. You must in that case make your horses leap out in deep water, and swim on shore; we practised that method here without any accident. I do not at present see any thing that can endanger your march from Hampton hither; nor do I think it probable, that Fayette can come near us with a superior force before your arrival: You must, however, see, that I cannot well march out from hence, as I must leave at Gloucester and this place such a force as would render me too weak to wish to fight. They assure me that there is no carriage road from Williamsburgh to Hampton that does not pass within five miles of us: Should circumstances alter, I think I could inform you in time by an express boat. After having said this, I leave it to your discretion; and if you see difficulty and danger in joining me by the short way of Point Comfort, I would have you go round; but if you prefer the short passage,

Notes to the Sixth Chapter. it should be kept very secret. Your baggage should come round; and what you are most in want of, you may by my authority put into any of the quarter-master-general's armed vessels, and send round immediately. You will communicate the contents of this to General O'Hara, to whom I write by this opportunity.

I am, with great regard,

Dear Tarleton,

Most faithfully yours,

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE K.)

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated York, in Virginia, Aug. 12, 1781.*

I EMBARKED the 80th regiment in boats, and went myself on board the Richmond very early in the morning of the 29th; but we were so unfortunate in winds as to be four days on our passage. The 80th landed on the night of the 1st at Gloucester; and the troops which were in transports, on the morning of the 2d, at this place. I have since brought the 71st and the legion hither, and sent the regiment du Prince Héritaire to Gloucester. The works on the Gloucester side are in some forwardness, and I hope in a situation to resist a sudden attack. Brigadier-general O'Hara is hastening as much as possible the evacuation of Portsmouth: As soon as he arrives here, I will send to New York every man that I can spare, consistent with the safety and subsistence of the force in this country.

*Extract.*

*Extract. — From Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated York town, Virginia, 22d August, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

(a.) PORTSMOUTH having been completely evacuated without any interruption from the enemy, General O'Hara arrived here this day with the stores and troops; and a great number of refugees have accompanied him from the counties of Norfolk, Suffolk, and Princess Anne.

THE engineer has finished his survey (b.) and examination of this place, and has proposed his plan for fortifying it; which appearing (c.) judicious, I have approved of, and directed it to be executed.

THE works at Gloucester are now in such forwardness, that a smaller detachment than the present garrison would be in safety against a sudden attack; but I make no alteration there, as I cannot hope that the labour of the whole will complete that post in less than five or six weeks.

MY experience there of the fatigue and difficulty of constructing works in this warm season, convinces me, that all the labour that the troops here will be capable of, without ruining their health, will be required at least for six weeks to put the intended works at this place in a tolerable state of defence: And as your excellency has been pleased to communicate to me your intention of re-commencing operations in the Chesapeake about the beginning of October, I will not venture to take any step that might retard the establishing of this post; but I request that your excellency will be pleased to decide whether it is more important for your plans, that a detachment of a thousand

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

thousand or twelve hundred men, which I think I can spare from every other purpose but that of labour, should be sent to you from hence, or that the whole of the troops here should be employed in expediting the works.

---

(NOTE L.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York town, in Virginia,  
31st August, 1781.*

[In cypher.]

S I R,

A FRENCH ship of the line, with two frigates, and the *Loyalist*, which they have taken, lie at the mouth of this river.

A LIEUTENANT of the *Charon*, who went with an escort of dragoons to Old-point Comfort, reports, that there are between thirty and forty sail within the capes, mostly ships of war, and some of them very large.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York, 1st Sept. 1781.*

[Written in cypher on a Congress note.]

AN enemy's fleet within the capes, between thirty and forty ships of war, mostly large.

CORNWALLIS.

*Earl*

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York, in Virginia,*  
2d Sept. 1781.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

[In cypher.]

S I R,

COMPTE de Grasse's fleet is within the capes of the Chesapeake. Forty boats with troops went up James river yesterday, and four ships lie at the entrance of this river.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York town, Virginia,*  
4th Sept. 1781.

[In cypher.]

S I R,

COMPTE de Grasse's fleet is within the capes of the Chesapeake. Forty boats with troops went up James river on the 1st instant, which are landed, as I am informed, at James-city island; and four ships lie at the entrance of this river.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York town, in Virginia,*  
8th Sept. 1781.

[In cypher.]

S I R,

I HAVE made several attempts to inform your excellency, that the French West-India fleet, under Monsieur de Grasse, entered the capes the 29th ult. I could not exactly learn the number; they report twenty-five or twenty-six ~~fall~~ of the line. One of seventy-four

and

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

and two of sixty-four, and one frigate, lie at the mouth of this river. On the 6th, the seventy-four and frigate turned down with a contrary wind, and yesterday the two others followed. My report, dated last evening, from a point below, which commands a view of the capes and bay, says, that there were within the capes only seven ships, two of which were certainly ships of the line, and two frigates. Firing was said to be heard off the capes the night of the 4th, morning and night of the 5th, and morning of the 6th.

THE French troops landed at James town are said to be three thousand eight hundred men. Washington is said to be shortly expected; and his troops are intended to be brought by water from the head of Elk, under protection of the French ships. The Marquis de la Fayette is at or near Williamsburgh: The French troops are expected there, but were not arrived last night. As my works were not in a state of defence, I have taken a strong position out of the town. I am now working hard at the redoubts of the place. Provisions for six weeks: I will be very careful of it.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE M.)

*Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York, Sept. 2, 1781.*

[In cypher.—Triplicate.—Received 15th September.]

MY LORD,

BY intelligence which I have this day received, it would seem that Mr. Washington is moving an army to the southward, with an appearance



pearance of haste, and gives out that he expects the co-operation of a considerable French armament: Your lordship, however, may be assured, that if this should be the case, I shall either endeavour to reinforce the army under your command by all the means within the compass of my power, or make every possible diversion in your favour.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

CAPTAIN Stanhope, of His Majesty's ship the Pegasus, who has just arrived from the West Indies, says, that on Friday last, in lat. 38 deg. about sixty leagues from the coast, he was chased by eight ships of the line, which he took to be French, and that one of the victualers he had under his convoy had counted upwards of forty sail more: However, as Rear-admiral Graves, after being joined by Sir Samuel Hood with fourteen coppered ships of the line, sailed from hence on the 31st ult. with a fleet of nineteen sail, besides some fifty-gun ships, I flatter myself you will have little to apprehend from that of the French.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

P. S. WASHINGTON, it is said, was to be at Trenton this day, and means to go in vessels to Christian creek; from thence, by head of Elk, down Chesapeak, in vessels also. If that navigation is not interrupted, he should go by land from Baltimore. Your lordship can best judge what time it will require. I should suppose, at least, three weeks from Trenton. Washington has about four thousand French and two thousand rebel troops with him.

H. C.

SEPTEMBER 4.—To this triplicate, and by this very uncertain conveyance, I shall only add to your lordship, that I have had the honour

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter. to receive this morning a duplicate, and this evening a triplicate, of  
your letter of the 31st ult.

*Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York,  
Sept. 6, at noon, 1781.*

[In cypher.—Received 16th September.]

MY LORD,

AS I find by your letters that De Graffe has got into the Chesapeake, and I can have no doubt that Washington is moving with at least six thousand French and rebel troops against you, I think the best way to relieve you is to join you, as soon as possible, with all the force that can be spared from hence, which is about four thousand men. They are already embarked, and will proceed the instant I receive information from the admiral that we may venture, or that from other intelligence the commodore and I shall judge sufficient to move upon.

By accounts from Europe, we have every reason to expect Admiral Digby hourly on the coast.

COMMODORE Johnstone has beat a superior French fleet at St. Jago, and proceeded the day after for the place of his destination.

I BEG your lordship will let me know, as soon as possible, your ideas how the troops embarked for the Chesapeake may be best employed for your relief, according to the state of circumstances when you receive this letter. I shall not, however, wait to receive your answer, should I hear in the mean time that the passage is open.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

(NOTE.

## (NOTE N.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York town, in  
Virginia, 16th September, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

[In cypher.]

SIR,

I HAVE received your letters of the 2d and 6th. The enemy's fleet has (a.) returned. Two line-of-battle ships and one frigate lie at the mouth of this river, and three or four line-of-battle ships, several frigates and transports, went up the bay the 12th and 14th. I hear Washington arrived at Williamsburgh on the 14th. Some of his troops embarked at head of Elk, and the others arrived at Baltimore on the 12th.

IF I had no hopes of relief, I would rather risk an action than defend my half-finished works; but as you say Digby is hourly expected, and promise every exertion to assist me, I do not think myself justified in putting the fate of the war on so desperate an attempt. By examining the transports with care, and turning out useless mouths, my provisions will last at least six weeks from this day, if we can preserve them from accidents. The cavalry must, I fear, be all lost. I am of opinion that you can do me no effectual service but by coming directly to this place.

LIEUTENANT Conway, of the Cormorant, is just exchanged. He assures me, that, since the Rhode-island squadron has joined, they have thirty-six (b.) sail of the line. This place is in no state of defence.

3 H 2

Notes to the fence. If you cannot relieve me very soon, you must be prepared to  
 Sixth  
 Chapter. hear the worst.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE O.)

*Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York,  
 Sept. 24, 1781.*

[In cypher. — Received September 29, 1781.]

MY LORD,

I WAS honoured yesterday with your lordship's letter of the 16th and 17th instant, and, at a meeting of the general and flag officers held this day, it is determined that above five thousand men, rank and file, shall be embarked on board the King's ships, and the joint exertions of the navy and army made in a few days to relieve you, and afterwards co-operate with you.

THE fleet consists of twenty-three sail of the line, three of which are three deckers. There is every reason to hope we start from hence the 5th October. I have received your lordship's letter of the 8th instant.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

P. S. ADMIRAL Digby is this moment arrived at the Hook with three sail of the line.

At.

At a venture, without knowing whether they can be seen by us, I request, that, if all is well, upon hearing a considerable firing towards the entrance of the Chesapeake, three large separate smokes may be made parallel to it; and if you possess the post of Gloucester, four.

I SHALL send another runner soon.

H. CLINTON.

---

(NOTE P.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated York town, in Virginia,  
September 22, 1781, ten P. M.*

[In cypher.]

SIR,

I HAVE ventured these last two days to look General Washington's whole force in the face in the position on the outside of my works, and I have the pleasure to assure your excellency, that there was but one wish throughout the whole army, which was, that the enemy would advance.

I HAVE this evening received your letter of the 24th, which has given me the greatest satisfaction. I shall retire this night within the works, and have no doubt, if relief arrives in any reasonable time, York and Gloucester will be both in the possession of His Majesty's troops.

I BELIEVE

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

I BELIEVE your excellency must depend more on the found of our cannon than the signal of smokes for information ; however, I will attempt it on the Gloucester side. — Medicines are wanted.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE Q.)

*Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York, September 25,  
1781.*

[ Duplicate. — In cypher. — Received October 2. ]

MY LORD,

MY letter of yesterday will have informed your lordship of the number of ships and troops we can bring with us. It is supposed the necessary repairs of the fleet will detain us here to the 5th of October; and your lordship must be sensible that unforeseen accidents may lengthen it out a day or two longer ; I therefore entreat you to lose no time in letting me know by the bearer your real situation, and your opinion how, upon our arrival, we can best act to form a junction with you, together with the exact strength of the enemy's fleet, and what part of the Chesapeak they appear to be most jealous of.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

P. S. As your lordship must have better intelligence than we can possibly have, I request you will send a trusty person to each of the  
capes,



capas, about the 7th of next month, with every information respecting the force and situation of the enemy you may judge necessary, and directions to continue there until our arrival, when small vessels will be sent to bring off any person they may find there.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

---

(NOTE R.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, dated York town, Virginia,  
October 3, 1781.*

[In cypher.]

SIR,

I RECEIVED your letter of the 25th of September last night. The enemy are encamped about two miles from us. On the night of the 30th of September they broke ground, and made two redoubts about eleven hundred yards from our works, which, with some (a) works that had been constructed to secure our exterior position, occupy a gorge between two creeks which nearly embrace this post. They have finished these redoubts, and I expect they will go on with their works this night. From the time that the enemy have given us, and the uncommon exertions of the troops, our works are in a better state of defence than we had reason to hope.

I CAN see no means of forming a junction with me but by York river; and I do not think that any diversion would be of use to us. Our accounts of the strength of the French fleet have in general been, that they were thirty-five or thirty-six sail of the line; they have frequently changed their position; two ships of the line and one frigate lie

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

lie at the mouth of this river; and our last accounts were, that the body of the fleet lay between the tail of the Horseshoe and York spit: And it is likewise said, that four line-of-battle ships lay a few days ago in Hampton road. I see little chance of my being able to send persons to wait for you at the capes; but I will, if possible.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE S.)

*Sir Henry Clinton to Earl Cornwallis, dated New York, September 30, 1781.*

[Duplicate. — In cypher. — Received, October 10, from Major Cockran.]

MY LORD,

YOUR lordship may be assured that I am doing every thing in my power to relieve you by a direct move, and I have reason to hope, from the assurances given me this day by Admiral Graves, that we may pass the bar by the 12th of October, if the winds permit, and no unforeseen accident happens; this, however, is subject to disappointment; wherefore, if I hear from you, your wishes will of course direct me, and I shall persist in my idea of a direct move even to the middle of November, should it be your lordship's opinion that you can hold out so long; but if, when I hear from you, you tell me that you cannot, and I am without hopes of arriving in time to succour you by a direct move, I will immediately make an attempt upon Philadelphia (a.) by land, giving you notice, if possible, of my intention. If this should draw any part of Washington's force from you, it may possibly give  
you

you an opportunity of doing something to save your army; of which, however, you can best judge, from being upon the spot.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

I have the honour to be, &c.

H. CLINTON.

---

(NOTE T.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York town, Virginia,  
October 11, 1781, twelve M.*

[In cypher.]

S I R,

COCHRANE arrived yesterday. I have only to repeat what I said in my letter of the 3d, that nothing but a direct move to York river, which includes a successful naval action, can save me. The enemy made their first parallel on the night of the 6th, at the distance of six hundred yards, and have perfected it, and constructed places of arms and batteries with great regularity and caution. On the evening of the 9th their batteries opened, and have since continued firing without intermission, with about forty pieces of cannon, mostly heavy, and sixteen mortars, from eight to sixteen inches. We have lost about seventy men, and many of our works are considerably damaged: With such works on disadvantageous ground, against so powerful an attack, we cannot hope to make a very long resistance.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

P. S. OCT. 11, five P. M. — Since my last letter was written we have lost thirty men.

OCT. 12, seven P. M. — Last night the enemy made their second parallel at the distance of three hundred yards. We continue to lose men very fast.

---

(NOTE V.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York town,  
October 15, 1781.*

[In cypher.]

S I R,

LAST evening the enemy carried two advanced redoubts on the left by storm, and during the night have included them in their second parallel, which they are at present busy in perfecting. My situation now becomes very critical; we dare not shew a gun to their old batteries, and I expect that their new ones will open to-morrow morning: Experience has shewn, that our fresh earthen works do not resist their powerful artillery; so that we shall soon be exposed to an assault in ruined works, in a bad position, and with weakened numbers. The safety of the place is, therefore, so precarious, that I cannot recommend that the fleet and army should run great risk in endeavouring to save us.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE

## (NOTE W.)

*Earl Cornwallis to Sir Henry Clinton, K. B. dated York town, Virginia,* Notes to the  
October 20, 1781. Sixth  
Chapter.

SIR,

I HAVE the mortification to inform your excellency, that I have been forced to give up the posts of York and Gloucester, and to surrender the troops under my command, by capitulation on the 19th instant, as prisoners of war to the combined forces of America and France.

I NEVER saw this post in a very favourable light: But when I found I was to be attacked in it in so unprepared a state, by so powerful an army and artillery, nothing but the hopes of relief would have induced me to attempt its defence; for I would either have endeavoured to escape to New York by rapid marches from the Gloucester side, immediately on the arrival of General Washington's troops at Williamsburgh, or I would, notwithstanding the disparity of numbers, have attacked them in the open field, where it might have been just possible that fortune would have favoured the gallantry of the handful of troops under my command: But being assured by your excellency's letters, that every possible means would be tried by the navy and army to relieve us, I could not think myself at liberty to venture upon either of those desperate attempts; therefore, after remaining for two days in a strong position, in front of this place, in hopes of being attacked, upon observing that the enemy were taking measure which could not fail of turning my left flank in a short time, and receiving on the second evening your letter of the 24th of Septem-

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

ber, informing me that the relief would fail about the 5th of October, I withdrew within the works on the night of the 29th of September, hoping by the labour and firmness of the soldiers to protract the defence until you could arrive. Every thing was to be expected from the spirit of the troops; but every disadvantage attended their labour, as the work was to be continued under the enemy's fire, and our stock of intrenching tools, which did not much exceed four hundred when we began to work in the latter end of August, was now much diminished.

THE enemy broke ground on the night of the 30th, and constructed on that night, and the two following days and nights, two redoubts, which, with some works that had belonged to our outward position, occupied a gorge between two creeks or ravines, which came from the river on each side of the town. On the night of the 6th (a.) of October they made their first parallel, extending from its right on the river to a deep ravine on the left, nearly opposite to the center of this place, and embracing our whole left, at the distance of six hundred yards. Having perfected this parallel, their batteries opened on the evening of the 9th, against our left; and other batteries fired at the same time against a redoubt over a creek upon our right, and defended by about one hundred and twenty men of the 23d regiment and marines, who maintained that post with uncommon gallantry. The fire continued incessant from heavy cannon, and from mortars and howitzers, throwing shells from eight to sixteen inches, until all our guns on the left were silenced, our work much damaged, and our loss of men considerable. On the night of the 11th (b.) they began their second parallel, about three hundred yards nearer to us. The troops being much weakened by sickness, as well as by the fire of the besiegers, and observing that the enemy had not only secured their flanks, but proceeded



ceeded in every respect with the utmost regularity and caution, I could not venture so large forties, as to hope from them any considerable effect; but otherwise, I did every thing in my power to interrupt their work, by opening new embrasures for guns, and keeping up a constant fire with all the howitzers and small mortars that we could man. On the evening of the 14th, they assaulted and carried two redoubts, that had been advanced about three hundred yards for the purpose of delaying their approaches, and covering our left flank, and during the night included them in their second parallel, on which they continued to work with the utmost exertion. Being perfectly sensible that our works could not stand many hours after the opening of the batteries of that parallel, we not only continued a constant fire with all our mortars, and every gun that could be brought to bear upon it, but a little before daybreak, on the morning of the 10th, I ordered a fortie of about three hundred and fifty men, under the direction (c.) of Lieutenant-colonel Abercrombie, to attack two batteries which appeared to be in the greatest forwardness, and to spike the guns. A detachment of guards, with the 80th company of grenadiers, under the command of Lieutenant-colonel Lake, attacked the one; and one of light infantry, under the command of Major Armstrong, attacked the other; and both succeeded, by forcing the redoubts that covered them, spiking eleven guns, and killing or wounding about one hundred of the French troops who had the guard of that part of the trenches, and with little loss on our side. The action, though extremely honourable to the officers and soldiers who executed it, proved of little public advantage; for the cannon having been spiked in a hurry, were soon rendered fit for service again; and before dark the whole parallel and batteries appeared to be nearly complete. At this time we knew that there was no part of the whole front attacked on which we could show a single gun, and our shells were nearly expended: I therefore

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

had only to chuse between preparing to surrender next day, or endeavouring to get off with the greatest part of the troops; and I determined to attempt the latter, reflecting, that though it should prove unsuccessful in its immediate object, it might, at least, delay the enemy in the prosecution of farther enterprizes. Sixteen large boats were prepared, and upon other pretexts were ordered to be in readiness to receive troops precisely at ten o'clock: With these I hoped to pass the infantry during the night; abandoning our baggage, and leaving a detachment to capitulate for the town's people, and the sick and wounded; on which subject a letter was ready to be delivered to General Washington. After making my arrangements with the utmost secrecy, the light infantry, greatest part of the guards, and part of the 23d regiment, landed at Gloucester; but at this critical moment, the weather, from being moderate and calm, changed to a violent storm of wind and rain, and drove all the boats, some of which had troops on board, down the river. It was soon evident, that the intended passage was impracticable; and the absence of the boats rendered it equally impossible to bring back the troops that had passed, which I had ordered about two in the morning. In this situation, with my little force divided, the enemy's batteries opened at daybreak: The passage between this place and Gloucester was much exposed, but the boats having now returned, they were ordered to bring back the troops that had passed during the night, and they joined in the forenoon without much loss. Our works in the mean time were going to ruin; and not having been able to strengthen them by abbatiss, nor in any other manner than by a slight fraizing, which the enemy's artillery were demolishing wherever they fired, my opinion entirely coincided with that of the engineer and principal officers of the army, that they were in many places affailable in the forenoon, and that by the continuance of the same fire for a few hours longer, they would be in such a state as

to render it desperate, with our numbers, to attempt to maintain them. We at that time could not fire a single gun ; only one eight-inch and little more than a hundred cohorn shells remained ; a diversion by the French ships of war that lay at the mouth of York river was to be expected. Our numbers had been diminished by the enemy's fire, but particularly by sickness ; and the strength and spirits of those in the works were much exhausted by the fatigue of constant watching and unremitting duty. Under all these circumstances, I thought it would have been wanton and inhuman to the last degree to sacrifice the lives of this small body of gallant soldiers, who had ever behaved with so much fidelity and courage, by exposing them to an assault, which, from the numbers and precaution of the enemy, could not fail to succeed. I therefore proposed to (d.) capitulate, and I have the honour to inclose to your excellency the copy of the correspondence between General Washington and me on that subject, and the terms of the capitulation agreed upon. I sincerely lament that better could not be obtained ; but I have neglected nothing in my power to alleviate the misfortune and distress of both officers and soldiers. The men are well clothed and provided with necessaries, and I trust will be regularly supplied by the means of the officers that are permitted to remain with them. The treatment, in general, that we have received from the enemy since our surrender, has been perfectly good and proper : But the kindness and attention that has been shewed to us by the French officers in particular, their delicate sensibility of our situation, their generous and pressing offer of money, both public and private, to any amount, has really gone beyond what I can possibly describe, and will, I hope, make an impression on the breast of every officer, whenever the fortune of war should put any of them into our power.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

ALTHOUGH

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

ALTHOUGH the event has been so unfortunate, the patience of the soldiers in bearing the greatest fatigues, and their firmness and intrepidity under a persevering fire of shot and shells, that I believe has not often been exceeded, deserved the highest admiration and praise: A successful defence, however, in our situation was, perhaps, impossible; for the place could only be reckoned an intrenched camp, subject in most places to enfilade, and the ground, in general, so disadvantageous, that nothing but the necessity of fortifying it as a post to protect the navy, could have induced any person to erect works upon it. Our force diminished daily by sickness and other losses, and was reduced when we offered to capitulate, on this side, to little more than three thousand two hundred rank and file fit for duty, including officers' servants and artificers; and at Gloucester, about six hundred, including cavalry. The enemy's army consisted of upwards of eight thousand French, nearly as many continentals, and five thousand militia. They brought an immense train of heavy artillery, most amply furnished with ammunition, and perfectly well manned.

THE constant and universal cheerfulness and spirit of the officers in all hardships and dangers deserve my warmest acknowledgements; and I have been particularly indebted to Brigadier-general O'Hara and Lieutenant-colonel Abercrombie, the former commanding on the right, and the latter on the left, for their attention and exertion on every occasion. The detachment of the 23d regiment and of the marines, in the redoubt on the right, commanded by Captain Apthorpe, and the subsequent detachments, commanded by Lieutenant-colonel Johnson, deserve particular commendation. Captain Rochfort, who commanded the artillery, and, indeed, every officer and soldier of that distinguished corps, and Lieutenant Sutherland, the commanding engineer, have merited in every respect my highest approbation: And I cannot sufficiently

ficiently acknowledge my obligations to Captain Symonds, who com-  
manded His Majesty's ships, and to the other officers and seamen of  
the navy, for their active and zealous co-operation.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

I TRANSMIT returns of our killed and wounded; the loss of seamen  
and town's people was likewise considerable.

I TRUST your excellency will please to hasten the return of the Bo-  
netta, after landing her passengers, in compliance with the article of  
capitulation.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Abercrombie will have the honour to deli-  
ver this dispatch, and is well qualified to explain to your excellency  
every particular relating to our past and present situation.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

---

(NOTE X.)

*Copy of Earl Cornwallis' letter to General Washington, dated York, in  
Virginia, October 17th, 1781.*

S I R,

I PROPOSE a cessation of hostilities for twenty-four hours, and  
that two officers may be appointed by each side, to meet at Mr.  
Moore's house, to settle terms for the surrender of the posts of York  
and Gloucester.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

3 K

*Copy*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

*Copy of General Washington's letter to Earl Cornwallis, dated camp before York, 17th October, 1781.*

MY LORD,

I HAVE had the honour of receiving your lordship's letter of this date.

AN ardent desire to save the effusion of human blood will readily incline me to listen to such terms, for the surrender of your posts and garrisons at York and Gloucester, as are admissible.

I WISH, previous to the meeting of the commissioners, that your lordship's proposals, in writing, may be sent to the American lines; for which purpose, a suspension of hostilities during two hours from the delivery of this letter will be granted.

I have the honour to be, &c.

G. WASHINGTON.

*Copy of Earl Cornwallis's letter to General Washington, dated York, in Virginia, 17th October, 1781, half past four, P. M.*

S I R,

I HAVE this moment been honoured with your excellency's letter, dated this day.

THE time limited for sending my answer will not admit of entering into the detail of articles; but the basis of my proposals will be, that the garrisons of York and Gloucester shall be prisoners of war, with



with the customary honours ; and, for the conveniency of the individuals which I have the honour to command, that the British shall be sent to Britain, and the Germans to Germany, under engagement not to serve against France, America, or their allies, until released, or regularly exchanged : That all arms and public stores shall be delivered up to you ; but that the usual indulgence of side arms to officers, and of retaining private property, shall be granted to officers and soldiers : And that the interest of several individuals, in civil capacities and connected with us, shall be attended to.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

If your excellency thinks that a continuance of the suspension of hostilities will be necessary to transmit your answer, I shall have no objection to the hour that you may propose.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

*Copy of General Washington's letter to Earl Cornwallis, dated camp before York, 18th October, 1781.*

MY LORD,

TO avoid unnecessary discussions and delays, I shall at once, in answer to your lordship's letter of yesterday, declare the general basis upon which a definitive treaty of capitulation may take place.

THE garrisons of York and Gloucester, including the seamen, as you propose, shall be received prisoners of war. The condition annexed, of sending the British and German troops to the parts of Europe to which they respectively belong, is inadmissible : Instead of this, they will be marched to such parts of the country as can most con-

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter. conveniently provide for their subsistence; and the benevolent treatment of the prisoners, which is invariably observed by the Americans, will be extended to them. The same honours will be granted to the surrendering army as were granted to the garrison of Charles town.

THE shipping and boats in the two harbours, with all their guns, stores, tackling, furniture, and apparel, shall be delivered in their present state to an officer of the navy appointed to take possession of them.

THE artillery, arms, accoutrements, military chest, and public stores of every denomination, shall be delivered, unimpaired, to the heads of the departments to which they respectively belong.

THE officers shall be indulged in retaining their side arms; and the officers and soldiers may preserve their baggage and effects, with this reserve, that property taken in the country will be reclaimed.

WITH regard to the individuals in civil capacities, whose interest your lordship wishes may be attended to, until they are more particularly described, nothing definitive can be settled.

I HAVE to add, that I expect the sick and wounded will be supplied with their own hospital stores, and be attended by British surgeons, particularly charged with the care of them.

YOUR lordship will be pleased to signify your determination, either to accept or reject the proposals now offered, in the course of two hours from the delivery of this letter, that commissioners may be appointed to digest the articles of capitulation, or a renewal of hostilities may take place.

I have the honour to be, &c.

G. WASHINGTON:

*Copy*

*Copy of Earl Cornwallis' letter to General Washington, dated York, in Virginia, 18th October, 1781.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

SIR,

I AGREE to open a treaty of capitulation upon the basis of the garrisons of York and Gloucester, including seamen, being prisoners of war, without annexing the condition of their being sent to Europe; but I expect to receive a compensation in the articles of capitulation for the surrender of Gloucester in its present state of defence.

I SHALL in particular desire, that the Bonetta sloop of war may be left entirely at my disposal, from the hour that the capitulation is signed, to receive an aid de camp to carry my dispatches to Sir Henry Clinton. Such soldiers as I may think proper to send as passengers in her, to be manned with fifty men of her own crew, and to be permitted to sail, without examination, when my dispatches are ready; engaging, on my part, that the ship shall be brought back and delivered to you, if she escapes the dangers of the sea; that the crew and soldiers shall be accounted for in future exchanges; that she shall carry off no officer without your consent, nor public property of any kind; and I shall likewise desire, that the traders and inhabitants may preserve their property, and that no person may be punished or molested for having joined the British troops.

If you chuse to proceed to negotiation on these grounds, I shall appoint two field officers of my army to meet two officers from you, at any time and place that you think proper, to digest the articles of capitulation.

I have the honour to be, &c.

CORNWALLIS.

(NOTE

## (NOTE Y.)

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

*Copy of the articles of capitulation, settled between His Excellency General Washington, commander in chief of the combined forces of America and France; His Excellency the Count de Rochambeau, lieutenant general of the armies of the King of France, great cross of the royal and military order of St. Louis, commanding the auxiliary troops of His Most Christian Majesty in America; and His Excellency the Count de Grasse, lieutenant general of the naval armies of His Most Christian Majesty, commander of the order of St. Louis, commander in chief of the naval army of France in the Chesapeake, on the one part: And the Right Honourable Earl Cornwallis, lieutenant general of His Britannic Majesty's forces, commanding the garrisons of York and Gloucester; and Thomas Symonds, Esquire, commanding His Britannic Majesty's naval forces in York river, in Virginia, on the other part.*

ART. I. THE garrisons of York and Gloucester, including the officers and seamen of His Britannic Majesty's ships, as well as other mariners, to surrender themselves prisoners of war to the combined forces of America and France. The land troops to remain prisoners to the United States; the navy to the naval army of His Most Christian Majesty.

GRANTED.

ART. II. The artillery, arms, accoutrements, military chest, and public stores of every denomination, shall be delivered, unimpaired, to the heads of departments appointed to receive them.

GRANTED.

ART.

ART. III. At twelve o'clock this day the two redoubts on the left flank of York to be delivered ; the one to a detachment of American infantry ; the other to a detachment of French grenadiers.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

GRANTED.

THE garrison of York will march out to a place to be appointed in front of the posts, at two o'clock precisely, with shouldered arms, colours cased, and drums beating a British or German march. They are then to ground their arms, and return to their encampments, where they will remain until they are dispatched to the places of their destination. Two works on the Gloucester side will be delivered at one o'clock to a detachment of French and American troops appointed to possess them. The garrison will march out at three o'clock in the afternoon ; the cavalry, with their swords drawn, trumpets sounding ; and the infantry in the manner prescribed for the garrison of York. They are likewise to return to their encampments until they can be finally marched off.

ART. IV. Officers are to retain their side arms. Both officers and soldiers to keep their private property of every kind, and no part of their baggage or papers to be at any time subject to search or inspection. The baggage and papers of officers and soldiers taken during the siege to be likewise preserved for them.

GRANTED.

IT is understood, that any property, obviously belonging to the inhabitants of these states, in the possession of the garrison, shall be subject to be reclaimed.

ART. V. The soldiers to be kept in Virginia, Maryland, or Pennsylvania, and as much by regiments as possible, and supplied with the same.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter. same rations of provisions as are allowed to soldiers in the service of America. A field officer from each nation, to wit, British, Anspach, and Hessian, and other officers on parole, in the proportion of one to fifty men, to be allowed to reside near their respective regiments, to visit them frequently, and be witnesses of their treatment; and that their officers may receive and deliver cloathing and other necessaries for them; for which passports are to be granted when applied for.

GRANTED.

ART. VI. The general, staff, and other officers, not employed as mentioned in the above articles, and who chuse it, to be permitted to go on parole to Europe, to New York, or any other American maritime ports at present in the possession of the British forces, at their own option, and proper vessels to be granted by the Count de Grasse to carry them under flags of truce to New York within ten days from this date, if possible, and they to reside in a district, to be agreed upon hereafter, until they embark.

THE officers of the civil department of the army and navy to be included in this article. Passports to go by land to be granted to those to whom vessels cannot be furnished.

GRANTED.

ART. VII. Officers to be allowed to keep soldiers as servants, according to the common practice of the service. Servants, not soldiers, are not to be considered as prisoners, and are to be allowed to attend their masters.

GRANTED.

ART. VIII. The Bonetta sloop of war to be equipped, and navigated by its present captain and crew; and left entirely at the disposal



of Lord Cornwallis from the hour that the capitulation is signed, to receive an aid-de-camp to carry dispatches to Sir Henry Clinton ; and such soldiers as he may think proper to send to New York, to be permitted to sail without examination, when his dispatches are ready. His lordship engages, on his part, that the ship shall be delivered to the order of the Count de Grasse, if she escapes the dangers of the sea ; that she shall not carry off any public stores. Any part of the crew that may be deficient on her return, and the soldiers passengers, to be accounted for on her delivery.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

ART. IX. The traders are to preserve their property, and to be allowed three months to dispose of or remove them ; and those traders are not to be considered as prisoners of war.

THE traders will be allowed to dispose of their effects, the allied army having the right of pre-emption. The traders to be considered as prisoners of war upon parole.

ART. X. Natives or inhabitants of different parts of this country, at present in York or Gloucester, are not to be punished on account of having joined the British army.

THIS article cannot be assented to, being altogether of civil resort.

ART. XI. Proper hospitals to be furnished for the sick and wounded. They are to be attended by their own surgeons on parole ; and they are to be furnished with medicines and stores from the American hospitals.

THE hospital stores now in York and Gloucester shall be delivered for the use of the British sick and wounded. Passports will be granted for procuring them farther supplies from New York, as occasion may require ; and proper hospitals will be furnished for the reception of the sick and wounded of the two garrisons.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

ART. XII. Waggon to be furnished to carry the baggage of the officers attending the foldiers, and to furgeons when travelling on account of the fick, attending the hospitals at public expence.

THEY are to be furnished if poffible.

ART. XIII. The fhipping and boats in the two harbours, with all their ftores, guns, tackling, and apparel, fhall be delivered up in their prefent ftate to an officer of the navy appointed to take poffeffion of them, previoufly unloading the private property, part of which had been on board for fecurity during the fieve.

GRANTED.

ART. XIV. No article of capitulation to be infringed on pretence of reprifals; and if there be any doubtful expreffions in it, they are to be interpreted according to the common meaning and acceptation of the words.

GRANTED.

Done at York town, in Virginia, October 19, 1781.

CORNWALLIS.

THOMAS SYMONDS.

Done in the trenches before York town, in Virginia, October 19, 1781.

G. WASHINGTON.

Le Comte de ROCHAMBEAU.

Le Comte de BARRAS, en mon  
nom & celui du Comte de Graffe.

(NOTE

## (NOTE Z.)

*Extracts. — From the journal of the operations of the French corps under the command of the Count de Rochambeau.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

ON the 14th of (a.) September, General Washington, myself, and the Chevalier de Chatteaux, arrived at Williamsburgh, where we found the Marquis de la Fayette, in conjunction with the Count de St. Simon, who had taken an excellent position, waiting for us. After all the most inquieting news we had received on the route, of the appearance of the enemy's fleet, the departure of that of Count de Grasse, of an engagement on the 5th of September, the appearance of two English frigates in the bay, we at length received, on the night of the 14th, by a letter from Count de Grasse, a circumstantial account of the following facts: Admiral Hood had joined, on the 28th of August, Admiral Graves' squadron before New York; they both sailed the 31st to Chesapeake bay, at the instant our movement by land towards Philadelphia had been discovered. The English squadron, consisting of twenty ships, arrived the 5th at Cape Charles, intending to get the start of Count de Grasse; the latter, having then fifteen hundred men in his chaloups, which had debarked the troops of Count de St. Simon, and were not returned, without hesitation cut his cables, and went to engage the enemy with twenty-four ships, leaving the rest to blockade Lord Cornwallis in the rivers York and James: The Count de Grasse having pursued some time, returned on the 11th into the bay, where he found the squadron of Count de Barras, which sailed the 25th of August from Newport, with ten transports, having on board our siege artillery, and entered the bay on the 10th of September in good condition. The two English frigates, being between the two squadrons,

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

were taken. Immediately the ten transports of the Count de Barras, the frigates, and the prizes of Count de Grasse, were detached to carry our troops to Annapolis, under the orders of the Sieur de Willebrune, commander of the *Romulus*, who, with the Baron Viomenil, used such expedition, that they arrived on the 25th in Williamsburgh (b.) creek, where they disembarked the army on the 26th and 27th. On the 28th (c.) the allied army marched from Williamsburgh at break of day for York town, and the French corps of seven thousand men began the investment from the head of York river to the morasses near Colonel Nelson's house, taking advantage of the woods, creeks, &c., in such a manner, as to block up the enemy within pistol shot of their works; the three French brigades marked out the ground, and encamped securely from the enemy's cannon. The Baron de Viomenil commanded the grenadiers and chaffeurs of the army as the van guard. On the 29th the American army passed the morasses, and the investment of York town became complete, and was quite blocked up. The infantry of Lauzun being debarked on the 23d, marched under the Duke de Lauzun to rejoin their cavalry, which had marched by land into Gloucester county, under Brigadier-general de Wieden, who commanded there a body of twelve hundred American militia. The whole legion was joined there on the 28th, the day of the investment of York town. On the night between the 29th and 30th, the enemy, fearing to be insulted in the confined position which they had fortified, abandoned all their posts.

WE employed the 30th in lodging ourselves in the abandoned works, which enabled us to block up the enemy in a circle of very little extent, and gave us great (d.) advantage. On the 3d of October the Sieur de Choisy marched to block up Gloucester, and take a position at three miles distance from that place.

(NOTE

## (NOTE AA.)

*Extracts.—From the journal of the operations of the fleet under Count de* Notes to the  
*Graffe.* Sixth  
 Chapter.

THE 5th of August the fleet weighed anchor from St. Domingo, and on the 30th arrived in the bay of Chesapeake. The dispatches of Generals Washington and Rochambeau, received by the Count de Graffe, informed him of the situation of their army, and the success which the British arms had obtained in Virginia and Maryland. The frigate Concorde, by which this intelligence had been conveyed, was sent back to acquaint the above generals that the French fleet was arrived off Cape Henry.

---

 (NOTE BB.)

*Return of the killed, wounded, and missing, of the following corps, from the 28th of September to the 19th of October, 1781.*

ROYAL artillery. 24 rank and file killed; 21 ditto wounded; 2 ditto missing.

Guards. 1 serjeant, 3 rank and file, killed; 1 serjeant, 21 rank and file, wounded.

Light infantry. 1 lieutenant, 3 serjeants, 24 rank and file, killed; 3 lieutenants, 2 serjeants, 1 drummer, 51 rank and file, wounded.

17th regiment. 1 drummer killed; 1 serjeant, 6 rank and file, wounded.

23d regi-

1

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

23d regiment. 2 lieutenants, 1 serjeant, 8 rank and file, killed ; 3 serjeants, 2 drummers, 15 rank and file, wounded.

33d regiment. 1 captain, 7 rank and file, killed ; 1 lieutenant, 1 serjeant, 10 rank and file, wounded ; 1 subaltern, 7 rank and file, missing.

43d regiment. 1 serjeant, 9 rank and file, killed ; 1 serjeant, 1 drummer, 16 rank and file, wounded ; 1 captain, 11 rank and file, missing.

71st regiment. 1 lieutenant, 9 rank and file, killed ; 3 drummers, 19 rank and file, wounded ; 1 major, 10 rank and file, missing.

76th regiment. 1 drummer, 5 rank and file, killed ; 1 lieutenant, 4 rank and file, wounded.

80th regiment. 1 rank and file killed ; 11 ditto wounded ; 1 captain, 9 rank and file, missing.

Two battalions Anspach. 1 serjeant, 11 rank and file, killed ; 4 serjeants, 30 rank and file, wounded.

Prince Hereditaire. 2 serjeants, 2 drummers, 19 rank and file, killed ; 7 serjeants, 1 drummer, 49 rank and file, wounded ; 2 serjeants, 14 rank and file, missing.

Regiment de Bose. 1 captain, 4 serjeants, 13 rank and file, killed ; 1 ensign, 4 serjeants, 3 drummers, 32 rank and file, wounded ; 1 serjeant, 10 rank and file, missing.

Total. 2 captains, 4 lieutenants, 13 serjeants, 4 drummers, 133 rank and file, killed ; 5 lieutenants, 1 ensign, 24 serjeants, 11 drummers, 285 rank and file, wounded ; 1 major, 2 captains, 1 subaltern, 3 serjeants, 63 rank and file, missing.

*Rank and names of officers in the above return.*

HON. Major Cochrane, acting aid-de-camp to Earl Cornwallis, killed.



Light infantry. Lieutenant Campbell, 74th company, killed ; Lieutenant Lyfter, 63d ditto, wounded, since dead ; Lieutenant Dunn, 63d ditto, wounded, since dead ; Lieutenant Lightburne, 37th ditto, wounded.

23d regiment. Lieutenants Mair and Guyon killed.

33d regiment. Captain Kerr killed, Lieutenant Carson wounded.

71st regiment. Lieutenant Frazer killed.

76th regiment. Lieutenant Robertson wounded.

Captain Rall killed, Ensign Sprangenberg wounded.

Commissary Perkins killed.

J. D E S H A R D,  
Dep. Adj. Gen.

---

( N O T E   C C . )

*Extract of a letter from General Washington, dated head quarters, near York, October 27, 1781.*

S I R,

I DO myself the honour to enclose to your excellency, copies of returns of prisoners, artillery, arms, ordnance, and other stores, surrendered by the enemy in their posts of York and Gloucester, on the 19th instant, which were not completed at the time of my last dispatches, and but this moment handed to me : A draft of these posts, with the plan of attack and defence, is also transmitted ; and twenty-four standards, taken at the same time, are ready to be laid before Congress.

My

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

My present dispatches being important, I have committed them to the care of Colonel Humphry, one of my aid-de-camps, whom, for his attention, fidelity, and good services, I beg leave to recommend to Congress, and to your excellency.

*General return of officers and privates surrendered prisoners of war, the 19th of October, 1781, to the allied army, under the command of General Washington, taken from the original muster rolls.*

GENERAL and staff. 1 lieutenant general, 1 brigadier general, 1 lieutenant colonel, and 2 majors, 5 captains, 2 lieutenants, 2 chaplains, 1 town major, 1 commissary of prisoners, 1 assistant quarter master, 1 surgeon and field inspector, 3 surgeons, 10 mates, 2 purveyors, 4 stewards, 2 ward masters, 19 assistants, 2 carpenters, 5 deputy commissaries, 1 deputy commissary of forage, 5 assistant commissaries, 3 issuers, 2 coopers, 1 labourer. Total, 79.

Artillery. 2 captains, 9 lieutenants, 1 surgeon, 1 mate, 1 serjeant, 4 drums, 193 rank and file, 1 commissary of military stores, 9 conductors, 5 conductors of horse, 16 artificers. Total, 232.

Guards. 3 lieutenant colonels, 12 captains, 1 ensign, 2 adjutants, 1 quarter master, 1 surgeon, 3 mates, 25 serjeants, 12 drums, 467 rank and file. Total, 527.

Light infantry. 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 10 captains, 16 lieutenants, 1 ensign, 2 surgeons, 33 serjeants, 13 drums, 594 rank and file. Total, 671.

17th regiment. 1 lieutenant colonel, 3 captains, 8 lieutenants, 4 ensigns, 1 surgeon, 9 serjeants, 13 drums, 205 rank and file. Total, 245.

23d regiment. 3 captains, 6 lieutenants, 1 adjutant, 1 surgeon, 1 mate, 16 serjeants, 205 rank and file. Total, 233.

33d regiment. 1 lieutenant colonel, 3 captains, 5 lieutenants, 1 ensign, 1 surgeon, 25 serjeants, 9 drums, 225 rank and file. Total, 260. Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

43d regiment. 1 major, 3 captains, 5 lieutenants, 3 ensigns, 1 quarter master, 1 surgeon, 22 serjeants, 16 drums, 307 rank and file. Total, 359.

71st regiment. 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 1 captain, 11 lieutenants, 4 ensigns, 1 adjutant, 1 quarter master, 1 surgeon, 1 mate, 28 serjeants, 2 drums, 242 rank and file. Total, 300.

76th regiment. 1 major, 6 captains, 16 lieutenants, 4 ensigns, 1 adjutant, 1 quarter master, 1 surgeon, 1 mate, 38 serjeants, 18 drums, 628 rank and file. Total, 715.

80th regiment. 1 lieutenant colonel, 2 majors, 5 captains, 17 lieutenants, 3 ensigns, 1 adjutant, 1 quarter master, 1 surgeon, 1 mate, 49 serjeants, 20 drums, 588 rank and file. Total, 689.

Two battalions of Anspach. 2 colonels, 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 8 captains, 32 lieutenants, 1 chaplain, 2 quarter masters, 2 surgeons, 20 mates, 32 serjeants, 25 drums, 948 rank and file, 1 waggon master, 8 waggoners, 2 provosts marshal, 1 assistant. Total, 1077.

Prince Hereditary. 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 5 captains, 5 lieutenants, 4 ensigns, 1 chaplain, 1 quarter master, 4 surgeon's mates, 19 serjeants, 11 drums, 425 rank and file, 6 waggoners, 1 provost marshal. Total, 484.

Regiment de Bose. 2 majors, 5 lieutenants, 2 ensigns, 1 adjutant, 1 quarter master, 1 surgeon, 3 mates, 46 serjeants, 16 drums, 271 rank and file, 1 provost marshal. Total, 349.

Yagers. 1 captain, 3 lieutenants, 1 surgeon, 1 trumpet, 68 rank and file. Total, 74.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

British legion. 1 lieutenant colonel, 6 captains, 8 lieutenants, 3 cornets, 6 quarter masters, 1 surgeon, 17 serjeants, 7 trumpeters, 192 rank and file. Total, 241.

Queen's rangers. 1 lieutenant colonel, 1 major, 10 captains, 15 lieutenants, 11 cornets, 3 quarter masters, 2 surgeons, 24 serjeants, 5 trumpeters, 248 rank and file. Total, 320.

North-Carolina volunteers. 1 lieutenant colonel, 5 captains, 7 lieutenants, 8 ensigns, 7 serjeants, 114 rank and file. Total 142.

Pioneers. 2 captains, 3 lieutenants, 4 serjeants, 33 rank and file. Total, 44.

Engineers. 2 lieutenants. — Loyal foresters. 2 captains, 1 lieutenant, 2 rank and file. — Third New-Jersey volunteers. 1 captain, 1 lieutenant, 2 rank and file. — New-York volunteers. 1 captain, 1 ensign, 1 rank and file. — Virginia volunteers. 1 captain, 1 rank and file. — King's American regiment. 1 lieutenant, 1 rank and file. — General Delancey's battalion. 2 ensigns, 2 rank and file. — North-Carolina independent company. 1 ensign, 1 rank and file. Total, 23.

Taken on the 14th and 16th of October. 1 lieutenant colonel, 2 majors, 2 captains, 1 ensign, 2 serjeants, 70 rank and file. Total, 84.

Total. 1 lieutenant general, 1 brigadier general, 2 colonels, 14 lieutenant colonels, 16 majors, 97 captains, 180 lieutenants, 55 ensigns, 4 chaplains, 6 adjutants, 18 quarter masters, 18 surgeons, 15 mates, 385 serjeants, 179 drums and trumpets, 6039 rank and file, 1 town major, 1 commissary of prisoners, 1 assistant quarter master. — Hospital department. 1 surgeon and field inspector, 3 surgeons, 10 mates, 2 purveyors, 4 stewards, 2 ward masters, 19 assistants, 2 carpenters. — Commissary department. 5 deputy commissaries, 1 deputy commissary of forage, 5 assistant commissaries, 2 clerks, 3 issuers, 2 coopers, 1 labourer, 1 commissary of military stores, 9 conductors, 5 conductors of horse, 16 artificers, 1 waggon master, 15 waggons, 5 provost

provost masters and assistants, 80 followers of the army. Amounting in the whole to 7247 men.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

N. B. By an estimate collected by the adjutant general, the killed during the siege, including officers, amount, at least, to 309, and the deserters to 44.

(Signed) THOMAS DURICK,  
Dep. Com. Prof.

Military chest, £.2113. 6s. sterling, dollars at 4s. 8d.

*Return of ordnance and military stores taken at York and Gloucester, in Virginia, by the surrender of the British army, on the 19th of October, 1781.*

Brass ordnance. Cannon on travelling carriages; 2 amufettes, 12 three-pounders, 1 of four, 12 of six, 1 of nine. — Garrison carriages. 4 twelve-pounders, 3 of four, 3 of nine.

Howitzers on travelling carriages. 6 of five one-fifth inches, 3 of eight ditto; not mounted, 6 of eight inches.

Mortars. Mounted, 11 of four two-fifth inches, 7 of five one-half, 1 of sixteen; not mounted, 1 of four two-fifths, 3 of thirteen. Total, 75.

Iron ordnance. Cannon on garrison or ship carriages; 1 one-pounder, 3 of three, 8 of four, 30 of six, 42 of nine, 18 of twelve, 27 of eighteen; on travelling carriages, 1 of twenty-four. — Carronades on ship carriages; 4 of seven, 27 of eighteen. — Swivels, 6. Total, 69.

Cartridges. Flannel filled, for cannon; 20 for four-pounders, 278 for six, 18 for nine, 40 for twelve, 226 for twenty-four-pounders. —

3 M 2

Mortars;

Notes to the Sixth Chapter. Mortars; 341 for four two-fifths inch, 386 for five one-half ditto, 33 for eight ditto. — Howitzers; 87 for five one-half inch.

Paper filled, for cannon; 417 for three-pounders, 236 for four, 836 for six, 696 for nine, 870 for twelve, 900 for eighteen, 28 for twenty-four-pounders. — Swivels, (howitzers) 185.

Flannel empty, for cannon; 193 for six-pounders, 260 for nine, 10 for twelve, 502 for eighteen, 7 for twenty-four-pounders. — Howitzers; 93 for five one-half inch, 175 for eight ditto.

Paper empty, for cannon; 425 for four-pounders, 702 for six, 136 for nine, 502 for twelve, 53 for eighteen, 250 for twenty-four-pounders. — Swivels, 2810.

Cylinders, nine-pounders, 380.

Shot. Round. Loose; 50 for three-pounders, 251 for four, 3965 for six, 1671 for nine, 1635 for twelve, 2927 for eighteen, 750 for twenty-four-pounders; fixed with flannel for cartridges, 676 for three, 530 for six-pounders; strapped without cartridges, 676 for three-pounders, 520 for six, 782 for twelve; 226 for twenty-four-pounders.

Cafe. Fixed with flannel cartridges, 278 for three-pounders, 83 for six ditto; without cartridges, 177 for three-pounders, 255 for five, 399 for nine, 817 for twelve, 48 for eighteen, 106 for twenty-four; howitzers, 315 for four two-fifths inch, 90 for five one-half ditto, 97 for eight ditto.

Bar; 17 for three-pounders, 33 for four, 24 for six, 100 for nine, 82 for eighteen, 86 for twenty-four.

Grape. Round. 51 for three-pounders, 52 for four, 220 for six, 212 for nine, 80 for eighteen, 86 for twenty-four; boxes of loose grape, 26; barrels of ditto, 1; rounds of langrel, 24.

Wads for cannon; 230 for four-pounders, 670 for six, 734 for nine, 635 for eighteen-pounders.

Shells.



Shells. Fixed; 213 for four two-fifth inch; unfixed, 77 for five one-half inch, 150 for eight ditto, 25 for thirteen ditto. — Carcases, eight-inch, 6. fixed; hand grenades fixed, 602.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

Fuzes, fixed; 514 for five one-half inch, 20 for eight ditto.

Spunges, ladles, and wad hooks; 8 for one-pounder, 35 for three, 8 for four, 69 for six, 25 for nine, 33 for twelve, 23 for eighteen, 2 for twenty-four. Different sizes, without staves, 58.

Fire arms, &c. Muskets, with bayonets, 5743; without bayonets, 915; 1136 damaged; carbines, 31; fuzes, 32; pistols, 137; brass blunderbusses, 11; iron ditto, 9; bayonets, 688; bayonet scabbards, 1140; bayonet belts, 1777; cartridge boxes, 6444; tin cannisters, 800; pouches for yagers, 350; gres. match pipes, 86; musket cartridges, fixed with ball, 266,274; 83 barrels, and 89 half-barrels of powder; sabres, 1925; ditto damaged, 100; horseman's swords, 273; halberts, 32; ditto damaged, 14; pikes, 210.

Regiments standards. German, 18; British, 6; British union flags, 4.

Camp colours. German, 32; British, 41.

Drums, good, 32; damaged, 19; drum slings, 18; fife cases, 10; fife slings, 7; trumpet, 1; bugle horns, 18; French horns, 5.

Musket balls, 29 boxes, 100lb. each; lead in pieces, 130lb.; musket flints, 34,200.

Slow match, 4245lb.; fire balls, 28; fire rings, 12; sulphur, 50lb.; saltpetre, 50lb.; flax, 7lb.; spelter, 2lb.; emery, 4lb; kitt, 32lb.; meal powder, 3lb; junk, 600lb.; of one-inch rope, 1 coil; two-inch, ditto 2; two-and-half, ditto 3; three-inch, 2; four and eight-inch, 1 coil each.

8 Lanterns, viz. 3 tin, 1 horn, and 4 dark.

Signal rockets, 36; tubes of sizes, 6705; tube boxes, 62; port-fires, 787; port-fire stocks, 28; lint stocks, 16; lead aprons, 90; steel

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

steel spikes, 80; powder horns, 260; shell scrapers, 8; kitt brushes, 5; hand bellows, 2; sets for fuzes, 7; kitt ladles, 6; fuze engines, 2; cannon haversacks, 30; powder bags, 23; oil cloths, 7; hair cloth, 1; budge barrels, punches for cannon, 12; large brass calipers, 2; shot gauges, 2 sets; elevating screws, 2; priming wires, 26.

Apparatus for hot shot, 1; sets of brass scales and weights, 3; copper funnels, 4; powder flasks, 4; copper powder measures, 29 sets; 21 reams of musket cartridge paper, 11 hanks of marline, catgut, and twine, 21 hammers, 1 pair of pincers, 33 tenant, hand, whip, and cross-cut saws, 4 mallets, 5 rasps, 3 paring and drawing knives, 1 cooper's adze, 2 drifts, 15 axes, 4 pickaxes, 29 hatchets, 26 tomahawks, 12 spades, 63 crow bars, 143 hand spikes, 2 shears for iron, 2 gins, with falls and blocks complete; 6 brass shears for tackle blocks, 44 tackle falls and blocks, 2 casks of nails, 36 bars of steel, 7 sheets of iron, 921 brass hoops, 22 sets of drag ropes, 50 sets of men's harness, 60 dressed calf's skins, 22 hides of tanned leather, 2 boxes of combustibles for fire ships, 2 kegs of tallow, 9 ammunition waggons, 4 powder carts, 39 cart saddles, 200 collars, 234 hems, 215 bridles, 123 pair of trace chains, 33 bridle bands, 73 cruppers, 10 laboratory chests.

4 Chests with tools for saddlers, carpenters, coopers, and blacksmiths.

(Signed)

H. K. N. O X,

Commanding the artillery of  
the United States.

Return

*Return of waggons, horses, and stores, delivered by the quarter master,  
and found in York and Gloucester.*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

FORTY-THREE waggons, with horses and harness, 40 ditto, without harness, broken, 260 horses, 339 saddles, 88 blind bridles, 15 collars, 30 breech bands, 18 back bands, 18 belly bands, 18 sides harness, 4 calf skins, 2 dozen of bridle bits, 3 pair of smith's bellows, 3 sets of collar and harness-maker's tools.

4 Anvils, and tools for 3 blacksmiths.

4 Sets of carpenter's tools, old and rusty, 57 French saddles, 40 French bridles, 150lb. tent cord, 14 balls spun yarn, 3 pieces girt web, 1 hemp hackel, 1 cask tent pins and hatchets, 60 cross-cut saws, and some carpenters' and coopers' adzes, 20 files, 20 chisels, 20 small hammers, 5lb. lamp black, 100 waggon boxes, 100lb. twine, a ton of oakum, 3 ton hemp, 9 bolts sail duck, 29 casks nails assorted, 3 tons iron, a quantity of sails and rigging, 1 barrel turpentine, 2 and half barrels tar, 4 grinding stones, 9 kegs paint, 3 jars oil, 2 boxes window glass, about 1000 sand bags, 4 tons coals, and a few planks, 500 bushels corn, 62 ditto meal, 23 boxes candles, 400 sheets, 68 pillow cases, 300 bed cases, 70 old blankets, 2 old rugs, 3 stoves, 182 narrow axes, 4 iron pots, 100 knapsacks and haversacks, 150 soldiers coats, 100 pair of breeches, 70 pair trousers, 70 sailors jackets, 613 groce buttons, 5lb. thread, 15 pair shoes, 1 marquee, 450 soldiers tents, 200 shovels, spades, and picks.

(Signed)

T. PICKERING, Q. M. G.

*A return*

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

*A return of clothing taken in the towns of York and Gloucester, the 19th of October, 1781.*

ONE hundred and eighty-seven coats, 126 woollen breeches, 16 pair shoes, 116 hats, 70 blankets, 170 linen overalls, 153 Scotch bonnets, 108 leather stocks, 279 bed cases, 154 pillow cases, 436 sheets, 150 failors jackets.

*Clothing received from Captain Girlock, October 26, 1781, and acknowledged to be British clothing, subject to the articles of capitulation.*

TWO hundred and eight-three coats, 241 breeches, 25 hats, 19 caps, 12 yards buff cloth, 20 yards red cloth, 71 and half yards ozenbrigs, 24 packing sheets.

*Clothing received from Captain Girlock, deputy quarter master, October 26, 1781, who was in a cartel vessel in York river, and whose effects, in consequence of his violation of the right of flags, were adjudged to be forfeited, and were consequently seized for the public use.*

SEVENTY-SEVEN uniforms for non-commissioned officers, 17 ditto drummers, 420 ditto privates, 62 ditto servants, 537 pieces linen, 27 ditto ribband, 899 and half ells blue cloth, 436 ditto white cloth, 763 ditto red flannel, 1860 ditto ribband, 170 hats, 7 caps, 35 woollen breeches, 1100 pair hose, 1348 pair shoes, 68 shirts, 1030 black stocks, 55 pair leather gloves, 171 and half dozen buttons, 40 pounds thread, 10 and a half hides tanned leather; 3 chests, contents unknown; 2 bales sole leather, 1 bale red flannel.

(Signed)

D. A M E R M A N,  
A. to the C. G.

*Return*

*Return of the provisions and stores in the ports of York and Gloucester.*

TWO hundred and sixty-seven barrels of flour, weight 73,280 lb.; 520 bags of bread, 59,600 lb.; 96 barrels of beef, 20,190 lb.; 365 barrels of pork, 75,750 lb.; 361 firkins of butter, 19,870 lb.; 5 casks of oatmeal, 1190 lb.; 597 barrels pease, quantity 29,895 bushels; 13 casks liquors, 1250 gallons; 16 bags coffee, 2500 lb.; 20 bags cocoa, 3000 lb.; 50 bushels salt; 3 hogheads sugar, 3000 lb.; 5 casks vinegar, 300 gallons; 3 jars oil, 9 gallons; 29 barrels rice, 1500 lb.; 1 cask raisins.

(Signed)

THO. JONES, D. C. issues.

JACOB WEED, A. C. issues.

AD. DOLMAGE, A. C. Br. army.

*A list of vessels taken and destroyed at York, in Virginia.*

VESSELS of war.—The Charon, 44 guns; Guadaloupe, 28; and Fowey. Bonetta, 24; Vulcan fire ship, 24.

Transports.—Mackerel, Succes; Providence, Captain Hunter, and Providence, Captain Barriman; Favourite, Harmony, Concord, Edborough, Selina, Ocean, Elizabeth, Diana, Emerald, Fidelity, Lord Mulgrave, Robert, Racehorse, Houston, Sally, Two Brothers, Present Succession, Shipwright, Horsington, Neptune, Lord Howe, Belona, Andrews, General Reidesfel, Tartar.

Vessels belonging to the army.—Defiance, Formidable, Rambler, Spitfire, a considerable number of small sloops and schooners, and 12 or 15 gallies.

Notes to the  
Sixth  
Chapter.

Private vessels.—The Cochran, North Briton, Sufanna, Arno ; Ene-  
dert and Mathews, two Dutch prizes.

A privateer of 20 guns, quite new.

Besides many other vessels sunk, and a great number of shallops and  
schooners.

The naval prisoners, exclusive of those belonging to the private  
transports and other vessels, are 840.

Published by order of Congress,

CHARLES THOMPSON, Sec:

APPENDIX.



## A P P E N D I X.

*Action near Camden. — Surrender of fort Watson. — Camden evacuated. — Ninety-six invested. — Surrender of Augusta. — General Greene repulsed with loss at Ninety-six. — Lord Rawdon forces Greene to retreat. — Ninety-six evacuated. — Action at Eutaws.*

ALTHOUGH the events that occurred in Carolina are highly APPENDIX. interesting, they could not be productive of such important consequences to Great Britain as the operations in Virginia; for which reason the narrative was not interrupted to relate them: But in order to render this work complete, to the fall of York town, the different affairs, sieges, and actions, between the King's troops and the Americans to the southward, are here given from the best authorities, and as frequently as possible in the language of the respective commanders.

THE (1.) departure of Earl Cornwallis to Wilmington having left South Carolina open, General Greene did not neglect the opportunity of directing his views to that province. An experiment upon an untried enemy was satisfactory in the design, and afforded room for hope

(1.) See Annual Register, page 80, year 1780.

APPENDIX. in the execution ; at the worst, he could not reasonably apprehend falling into rougher hands than those he had so recently encountered : But it was also, in reality, that vulnerable part, to which a judicious commander must necessarily have directed his operations. He had, however, still a vigorous enemy to encounter, from whom no advantage could be cheaply purchased.

THE communications were so entirely cut off, that Lord Rawdon had no manner of knowledge of the movements of the British army after the battle of Guildford ; much less could he have the most distant idea of the hard necessity which compelled Earl Cornwallis to fly from the arms of victory, abandon the line of operation, and, by a difficult march of two hundred miles, retire out of the way to Wilmington : He could not, therefore, but be astonished at receiving the intelligence, that Greene, whom he looked upon as ruined, or, at least, as having fled to Virginia, was in full march to South Carolina, with a view of attacking him at Camden. He was likewise informed, about the same time, that Colonel Lee had passed the Pedee and joined Marion on the Black creek, or river, with an apparent view of entering the province on the eastern border. Lord Rawdon judiciously conceived, that this movement was only feint, subservient to the principal design ; intending thereby, to induce him to divide his small force, and to draw him away from Camden, whilst Greene should, in the mean time, by forced marches through a deserted country, from whence no intelligence of his approach could be received, surprise that weakened post in his absence. From this right conception of the design, the measure produced a direct contrary effect to that which was intended ; for instead of Lord Rawdon's going himself, or detaching, to resist the diversion on that side, it occasioned his immediately recalling Lieutenant-colonel Watson, who had been long employed,

employed, with a considerable detachment, for the protection of the eastern frontier. APPENDIX.

IN the mean time, the doubtful reports which had before reached him were now confirmed, and he received clear information of Greene's approach; and, though he was totally ignorant of his force, yet, being equally in the dark with respect to Earl Cornwallis' situation, and having no particular instructions for his guidance, he thought it his duty, at all events, to maintain his post. In these circumstances it was highly vexatious, that although some of the militia shewed great zeal and fidelity, in coming from considerable distances to offer their services, yet the scanty state of provisions prevented him from being able to benefit by their assistance, excepting only those whose particular situation exposed them to suffer from the enemy, and who were on that account received within the post. At length, General Greene appeared in full view. The paucity of troops, and the extensiveness of the posts which they had to defend, were sufficient motives with the British commander for not risking the loss of men, by any attempt to harass the enemy in their approach. The same causes had obliged him to abandon the ferry on the Wateree, although the South-Carolina regiment was on its way to join him from Ninety-six, and that was its direct course: He had, however, taken his measures so well, as to secure the passage of that regiment upon its arrival three days after. In these circumstances he received a letter from Colonel Balfour, at Charles town, acquainting him of Earl Cornwallis' situation; and likewise signifying to him, that the commander-in-chief, being fully sensible of the danger to which he would be exposed in his present position, wished that he might abandon Camden, and retire for security within the cover of the great river Santee. The necessity of the measure

APPENDIX. measure was, upon this information, sufficiently obvious, but the accomplishment of it was not now within his power.

THE efforts made by the enemy to examine the British works, and particularly an attempt to destroy their mill, necessarily brought on some skirmishes. By the prisoners taken in these excursions, Lord Rawdon had the satisfaction to learn, that General Greene's army was not by any means so numerous as he had apprehended, but that considerable reinforcements were daily expected. To balance this, he received the unfavourable intelligence, that Marion had taken such a position, as rendered it impracticable for Colonel Watson to join him, whose arrival he had till that time impatiently expected.

IN this state of things, it seemed that some immediate and decisive effort was become little less than absolutely necessary, in order to evade much greater, and not far distant, evil and danger. Greene himself had the fortune to make an opening for the operation of this necessity, in a manner which was, in appearance, far from being consistent with his conduct. With a view of a general assault upon the British posts, he had sent off his artillery and baggage, a day's march in the rear of the army; but soon after he abandoned that resolution, and detached all his militia to bring back the artillery. Such irresolution, or indecision of mind, can never be displayed under the eye of a vigilant enemy, without great, if not certain danger.

Action near  
Camden.

LORD Rawdon's intelligence was tardy; but he instantly perceived the importance of the occasion, and determined as instantly, if possible, to seize it. By arming the musicians, drummers, and every being in the army that was able to carry a firelock, he mustered above nine hundred for the field, including sixty dragoons. April 25th. With  
this

this force, and two six-pounders, he boldly marched to attack the as- APPENDIX. failing army in their camp, in open daylight; at ten o'clock in the morning; committing the redoubts, and every thing at Camden, to the custody of the militia, and a few sick soldiers. The enemy were posted about two miles in front of the British lines, upon a very strong and difficult ridge, called Hobkirk's hill. By filing close to the swamps on their right, the British columns got into the woods unperceived, and by taking an extensive circuit, came down on the enemy's left flank, thus depriving them of the principal advantage of their situation. They were so fortunate, and the enemy so shamefully remiss and inattentive, that they were not in all this course discovered, until the flank companies of the volunteers of Ireland, which led the column, suddenly poured in upon their pickets: These, though supported, were almost suddenly driven in, and pushed to their camp.

ALTHOUGH the enemy were in much visible confusion, yet they formed with expedition, and received the British column bravely. As if it had been in some measure to countervail the disadvantages incident to their surprise, they were cheered, early in the action, by the arrival of three six-pounders; a circumstance, which showers of grape shot soon announced to the British troops. The attack on that side was led with great spirit by Lieutenant-colonel Campbell, at the head of the 63d, and of the King's American regiment; but the extent of the enemy's line soon obliged the commander in chief to push forward the volunteers of Ireland from the reserve. These three corps pushed the enemy with such resolution, that they drove them to the summit of the hill; and having made room for the rest of the troops to come into action, their rout was then quickly decided. They pursued them about three miles; but the enemy's cavalry being superior to the British, their dragoons could not risk much; and Lord Rawdon, duly

con-



APPENDIX, considering his inferiority in number, would not suffer the infantry to break their order, for any benefit that might be expected from the pursuit of the fugitives.

DURING the pursuit, a part of the enemy's cavalry, under Colonel Washington, either by design, or through ignorance of the state of the action, came round to the rear, and exacted paroles from several of the British officers who lay wounded in the field; they likewise carried off several wounded men. The enemy's killed and wounded were scattered over such an extent of ground, that their loss could not be ascertained; Lord Rawdon thinks the estimate would be low if it were rated at five hundred; Greene's account makes it too low to be credited. About an hundred prisoners were taken; besides that, a number of their men, finding their retreat cut off, went into Camden, and claimed protection, under pretence of being deserters. The enemy's cannon escaped by great fortune: Being run down a steep hill, among some thick brush wood, they were easily passed without notice, in the warmth of the pursuit, by the British troops, and before their return they were carried clean off by Washington's cavalry.

THE (2.) loss on the British side, however moderate in other respects, was much greater than they could afford, and exceeded one fourth of their whole number: It amounted, in killed, wounded, and missing, to two hundred and fifty-eight: Of these, only thirty-eight were slain; but the wounded were equally a detraction from immediate strength, and, in the present circumstances, a very heavy incumbrance. Only one officer fell; but twelve were wounded, and most of them

(2.) Vide Annual Register, page 83, year 1780.

were



were discharged upon parole. The spirit and judgement shewn by the young commander of the British forces, deserves great commendation. He was most gallantly seconded by his officers and troops.

ANOTHER (3.) account of the action is contained in a letter from Lieutenant-colonel Balfour to Lord George Germain, dated Charles town, May 1, 1781.

MY LORD,

BY Lord Cornwallis's dispatches, which are herewith transmitted, your lordship will be informed, that after the action at Guildford, General Greene, being obliged to retire from before the King's army, turned his views towards this province, as the more vulnerable point, in the absence of Lord Cornwallis.

WITH this idea, on the 9th ultimo, he came before Camden, having with him near fifteen hundred continentals, and several corps of militia; Lord Rawdon having charge of that post, and about eight hundred British and provincial troops to sustain it.

FOR some days General Greene kept varying his position, waiting, as is supposed, to be reinforced by the corps under Brigadier Marion and Colonel Lee, which were on their way, being ordered to join him.

JUDGING it necessary to strike a blow before this junction could take place, and learning that General Greene had detached to bring up his baggage and provisions, Lord Rawdon, with the most marked decision,

(3.) Vide Remembrancer, page 27, 2d part, year 1781.

APPENDIX. ON the morning of the 25th, marched with the greater part of his force to meet him, and about ten o'clock attacked the rebels in their camp at Hobkirk's with that spirit, which, prevailing over superior numbers and an obstinate resistance, compelled them to give way, and the pursuit was continued for three miles. To accident only they were indebted for saving their guns, which being drawn into a hollow, out of the road, were overlooked by our troops in the flush of victory and pursuit, so that their cavalry, in which they greatly exceeded us, had an opportunity of taking them off.

My Lord Rawdon states the loss of the enemy on this occasion as upwards of one hundred made prisoners, and four hundred killed and wounded; his own not exceeding one hundred, in which is included one officer killed and eleven wounded.

AFTER this defeat, General Greene retired to Rugeley's mills, twelve miles from Camden, in order to call in his troops, and receive the reinforcements; but as Lieutenant-colonel Watson, of the guards, who had been for some time detached by Lord Rawdon, with a corps of five hundred men, to cover the eastern frontiers of the province, is directed by me to join his lordship, I am in hopes he will be able speedily to accomplish this.

It is to several letters, which Lord Rawdon has been so good to transmit me, that I am indebted for the detail I have now the honour to present your lordship, and which, I trust, his lordship will hereafter conclude in the most satisfactory manner.

*The following is the account, published by order of Congress, of the action APPENDIX.  
between General Greene and Lord Rawdon, on the 25th of April, 1781.*

*To SAMUEL HUNTINGDON, Esquire.*

SIR,

(4.) I HAD the honour to write to your excellency the 2d instant, April, to inform you that we were encamped before Camden, having found it impossible to attempt to storm the town with any hopes of success; and having no other alternative, but to take such a position as should induce the enemy to fall from their works. To this end, we posted ourselves on an eminence about a mile from the town, near the high road leading to Wacsaus: It was covered with woods, and flanked on the left by an impassable swamp. The ground between this place and the town is covered by a thick wood and shrubbery. In this situation we remained constantly on the watch, and ready for action at a moment's warning.

ON the morning of the 25th, about eleven o'clock, our advanced pickets received the first fire from the enemy, and returned it warmly. The line was formed in an instant. General Huger's brigade to the right; Colonel Williams's Maryland brigade to the left; the artillery in the center; Colonel Read, with some militia, formed a kind of second line; Captain Kirkwood, with the light infantry, was posted in our front, and when the enemy advanced, he was soon engaged with them, and both he and his men behaved with a great deal of bravery; nor did the pickets under Captains Morgan and Benson act with less courage or regularity. Observing that the enemy advanced with but

(4.) Vide Remembrancer, page 126, 2d part, 1781.

APPENDIX. few men abreast, I ordered Lieutenant-colonel Ford, with the 2d Maryland regiment, to flank them on the left, while Lieutenant-colonel Campbell was to do the same on the right. Colonel Gunby, with the 1st Maryland regiment, and Lieutenant-colonel Hawes, with the 2d Virginia regiment, received orders at the same time to descend from the eminence, and attack in front; and I sent Lieutenant-colonel Washington at the same time to double the right flank, and attack the rear of the enemy. The whole line was soon in action in the midst of a very smart fire, as well from our small arms as from our artillery, which, under the command of Colonel Harrison, kept playing upon the front of the enemy, who began to give way on all sides, and their left absolutely to retreat; when, unfortunately, two companies on the right of the 1st Maryland regiment were entirely thrown into disorder; and, by another stroke of fortune, Colonel Gunby ordered the rest of the regiment, which was advancing, to take a new position towards the rear, where the two companies were rallying. This movement gave the whole regiment an idea of a retreat, which soon spread through the 2d regiment, which retreated accordingly; they both rallied afterwards; but it was too late; the enemy had gained the eminence, silenced the artillery, and obliged us to draw it off. The 2d Virginia regiment having descended the eminence a little, and having its flank left naked by the retreat of the Marylanders, the enemy immediately doubled upon them, and attacked them both on the flank and in front. Colonel Campbell's regiment was thrown into confusion, and had retreated a little; I therefore thought it necessary for Colonel Hawes to retreat also. The troops rallied more than once; but the disorder was too general, and had struck too deep for one to think of recovering the fortune of the day, which promised us at the onset the most complete victory; for Colonel Washington, on his way to double and attack in the rear, found the enemy, both horse and foot, retreating with precipitation.

pitiation towards the town, and made upwards of two hundred of them APPENDIX. prisoners, together with ten or fifteen officers, before he perceived that our troops had abandoned the field of battle. The colonel, upon this occasion, and indeed his whole corps, acquired no inconsiderable share of honour. We then retreated two or three miles from the scene of action, without any loss of artillery, waggons, or provisions, having taken the precaution to send away our baggage at the beginning of the action. The enemy have suffered very considerably; our forces were nearly equal in number; but such were the dispositions that I had made, that, if we had succeeded, the whole of the enemy's army must have fallen into our hands, as well as the town of Camden. I herewith enclose a list of the killed and wounded; among the first is Captain Beatty, of the Maryland line, one of the best of officers, and an ornament to his profession. Our army is full of spirits; and this little check will not by any means derange or alter our general plan of operations.

Your excellency will find enclosed also, the articles of capitulation of Fort Watson, which, I trust, will be followed by many other surrenders.

I have the honour to be, &c.

NATH. GREENE.

P. S. THE cavalry and a part of the infantry charged the enemy in the dusk of the evening, and made them fly with precipitation into the town.

*List!*

## APPENDIX.

*List of the officers killed, wounded, and taken prisoners, in the action before Camden, the 25th of April, 1781.*

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Ford, Maryland, dangerously wounded in the elbow; Lieutenant-colonel Campbell, Virginia, a slight contusion on the thigh.

CAPTAIN William Beatry, Maryland, killed; Captain J. Smith, 3d Maryland, taken prisoner; Captain Dunholm, Virginia, slight contusion; Captain-lieutenant Bruff, Maryland, wounded in both ankles, and prisoner on his parole; Lieutenant M. Gallaway, Maryland, wounded slightly; Lieutenant Ball, Virginia, ditto dangerously in the leg.

NON-COMMISSIONED officers and soldiers killed, wounded, and missing. 1 serjeant, 17 rank and file, killed; 7 serjeants, 101 rank and file, wounded; 3 serjeants, 133 rank and file, missing. The greatest part of those who are missing had not well understood the order to rally at Saunder's creek; some were killed; 47 of them were wounded, and are in the enemy's hospital; we have tidings of about one third of the remaining number, and hope they will be able to join us.

(Signed)

O. H. WILLIAMS,  
Deputy adjutant general.

*Brigadier.*



*Brigadier-general Marion's letter to General Greene.*

APPENDIX.

Fort Watson, April 23, 1781.

S I R,

(5.) LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Lee joined me on the Santee the 14th instant, after a rapid march from Ramsey's mills on Deep river, which he finished in eight days. The 15th we marched to this place, and invested it: Our chief hope was to cut off the water: Some riflemen and continentals were, for this purpose, posted between the fort and the lake. The fort lies on a rising ground, about forty feet high, surrounded by three rows of abatis. There were no trees near enough to cover us from the enemy's fire. The third day after we had begun the siege, we perceived that the enemy had dug a well near the abatis without meeting with any opposition from us, which was for want of several very necessary implements, without which we could not make trenches in order to make our approach to the fort; we therefore resolved immediately to erect a work as high as the fort, and it was finished this morning by Major Maham; we then made a lodgement on the side of the eminence near the abatis; this was accomplished with great spirit and address by Ensign Robinson and Mr. R. Lee, a volunteer in Colonel Lee's regiment, who, surmounting every difficulty, got up to the abatis, and pulled it away: By this the commander of the fort found himself obliged to hoist a white flag. I enclose the capitulation, which I hope will meet with your approbation. Our loss was only two militiamen killed, and three continentals wounded. I shall demolish the fort without loss of time, and then pro-

Surrender of  
fort Watson.

(5.) Vide Remembrancer, page 127, 2d part, 1781.

APPENDIX. proceed to the heights of Santee, and shall halt at Captain Richardson's plantation to wait for farther orders.

I am, Sir, &c.

(Signed) FRANCIS MARION, B. G.

*Articles of capitulation proposed by Lieutenant M'Kay, commandant at Fort Watson.*

ART. I. THE officers to be allowed their parole; to wear their swords, and shall have their private baggage secured to them.

GRANTED.

ART. II. The British officers shall be permitted to march to Charlestown, where they shall remain, without entering into any active service, till they shall have been exchanged; till which time they shall be bound to surrender themselves, whenever called upon by the commander in chief of the American southern army.

GRANTED.

ART. III. The irregulars shall be treated as prisoners of war.

GRANTED.

ART. IV. All public stores shall be surrendered to the quartermaster general of the legion, and the fort to Captain Oldham, who shall take possession this evening with a detachment of the Maryland division.

I AGREE

I AGREE to this capitulation, such as it is at present, in consideration of the bravery with which the fort was defended. APPENDIX.

(Signed) PATRICK CARNS,  
Captain of foot, belonging to the  
legion.

April 23, 1781.

J A S. M'KAY, Lieutenant.

*List of prisoners taken in Fort Watson.*

TWO lieutenants, 2 ensigns, 1 surgeon, 73 rank and file, (British) and 36 Tories. Total, 5 officers, 109 rank and file.

SOME of the events subsequent to the action at Camden are related by Major-general Greene, and by Lord Rawdon, in the following letters:

To SAMUEL HUNTINGDON, Esquire.

(6.) Camp, at M'Cord's ferry, on the Congaree,  
May 14, 1781.

SIR,

I HAD the honour to send dispatches to your excellency on the 5th from near Camden, by Captain O'Hara. On the 8th the place was evacuated by the enemy with the utmost precipitation; Lord Rawdon burnt the greatest part of his baggage, stores, and even the effects belonging to the inhabitants; he set fire also to the prison, mill, and several other buildings, and left the town little better than a heap of ruins: He left behind him our people who had been wounded in the action of the 25th of April, and had been taken prisoners; they are

(6.) Vide Remembrancer, page 197, 2d part, 1781.

APPENDIX. thirty-one in number. His lordship left also fifty-eight of his own people, with three officers, who were so badly wounded, that they could not bear a carriage. Several of the inhabitants assert it as a fact, that, in the last action, the loss of the enemy, in killed and wounded, was not less than three hundred men.

As soon as the enemy left Camden we took possession of it, and are now employed in razing all the works; a plan of which I enclose for your excellency. Had the Virginia militia joined us in time, the garrison must have fallen into our hands, as we should then have been able to invest the town on all sides; and the garrison was in too great want of provisions and military stores to be able to stand out a siege. The detachments under General Marion and Lieutenant-colonel Lee, in the lower districts of the country, had cut off the enemy's provisions, and particularly salt, with which they were totally unprovided. On the 9th our army began their march towards this place. On the 11th the post of Orangeburgh, defended by eighty men, under the command of a colonel and other officers, surrendered to General Sumpter, who, by his skill in the disposition of his artillery and troops, so intimidated the garrison, that the place soon submitted. We thus got possession of a very strong post, without loss either of men or time: A great quantity of provisions and other stores were found in it. The 12th, Mott's fort submitted to General Marion; the garrison consisted of upwards of one hundred and forty men; one hundred and twenty were British or Hessians, with seven or eight officers. The place had been invested the 8th; nor did it surrender till our troops had made their approaches regularly up to the abatis; the redoubt was very strong, and commanded by Lieutenant M'Pherson, a very brave officer. Great praise is due to General Marion, and the handful of militia that remained with him till the reduction of the fort. Lieutenant-colonel Lee's legion,

and the detachments under Major Eaton, the artillery under Captain APPENDIX. Finlay, and the corps of infantry under Captains Oldham and Smith, were indefatigable in carrying on the siege. There were found in the fort one carronade, one hundred and forty muskets, a quantity of salt provisions, and other stores.

WHEN we marched from Deep river towards Camden, I wrote to General Pickens to assemble all the militia he could muster, to lay siege to Augusta and Ninety Six: These two places are actually invested, and the fort at Friday's ferry will be invested to-morrow morning, as Lieutenant-colonel Lee set out for that purpose last night, with his legion, and the several detachments which serve under him: The whole army began their march this morning for the same place. The last intelligence I received informed me, that Lord Rawdon was near Nelson's ferry, where the enemy have a post; but they were sending away their stores from it, which sufficiently indicates that they intend shortly to evacuate it. Generals Sumpter and Marion narrowly watch all his lordship's motions.

I am, &c.

NATH. GREENE.

*Extract of a letter from Lord Rawdon to Earl Cornwallis, dated camp at Monk's corner, May 24, 1781. (7.)*

THE situation of affairs in this province has made me judge it necessary, for a time, to withdraw my force from the back country, and to assemble what troops I can collect at this point. I hope a recital of

(7.) Vide Remembrancer, page 151, 2d part, 1781.



APPENDIX. the circumstances which have led to this determination will satisfy your lordship as to the expediency of the measure.

AFTER the action of the 25th of April, (an account (8.) of which I had the honour of transmitting to your lordship) Major-general Greene remained for some days behind the farthest branch of Granny's-quarter creek. A second attempt upon his army could not, in that situation, be undertaken upon the principles which advised the former. In the first instance, I made so short an excursion from my works, that I could venture, without hazard, to leave them very slightly guarded; and I had the confidence, that, had fortune proved unfavourable, we should easily have made good our retreat, and our loss, in all probability, would not have disabled us from the farther defence of the place. To get at General Greene in his retired situation, I must have made a very extensive circuit, in order to head the creek, which would have presented to him the fairest opportunity of slipping by me to Camden; and he was still so superior to me in numbers, that, had I left such a garrison at my post as might enable it to stand an assault, my force in the field would have been totally unequal to cope with the enemy's army. I had much to hope from the arrival of reinforcements to me, and little to fear from any probable addition to my antagonist's force.

WHILST, upon that principle, I waited for my expected succours, General Greene retired from our front, and, crossing the Wateree, took a position behind Twenty-five-mile creek. On the 7th of May Lieutenant-colonel Watson joined me with his detachment, much reduced in number through casualties, sickness, and a reinforcement which he had left to strengthen the garrison at George town. He had crossed

(8.) The author regrets that he cannot insert this account, as it is not to be found in any of the public prints.



the Santee near its mouth, and had re-crossed it a little below the entrance of the Congaree. APPENDIX.

ON the night of the 7th I crossed the Wateree at Camden ferry, proposing to turn the flank and attack the rear of Greene's army, where the ground was not strong, though it was very much so in front.

THE troops had scarcely crossed the river, when I received notice that Greene had moved early in the evening, upon getting information of my being reinforced; I followed him by the direct road, and found him posted behind Sawney's creek.

HAVING driven in his pickets, I examined every point of his situation; I found it every where so strong, that I could not hope to force it without suffering such loss as must have crippled my force for any future enterprise; and the retreat lay so open for him, I could not hope that victory would give us any advantage sufficiently decisive to counterbalance the loss.

THE creek (though slightly marked in the maps) runs very high into the country. Had I attempted to get round him, he would have evaded me with ease; for, as his numbers still exceeded mine, I could not separate my force to fix him in any point, and time (at this juncture most important to me) would have been thus unprofitably wasted. I therefore returned to Camden the same afternoon, after having in vain attempted to decoy the enemy into action, by affecting to conceal our retreat.

ON the 9th I published to the troops, and to the militia, my design of evacuating Camden, offering to such of the latter as chose to accompany Camden evacuated.

APPENDIX. company me every assistance that we could afford them. During the ensuing night I sent off all our baggage, &c., under a strong escort, and destroyed the works remaining at Camden, with the rest of the troops, till ten o'clock the next day, in order to cover the march.

ON the night of the 13th I began to pass the river at Nelson's ferry, and by the evening of the 14th every thing was safely across. Some mounted militia had attempted to harass our rear guard on the march; but a party of them having fallen into an ambuscade, the rest of them gave us no farther trouble. We brought off all the sick and wounded, excepting about thirty, who were too ill to be moved, and for them I left an equal number of continental prisoners in exchange. We brought off all the stores of any kind of value, destroying the rest; and we brought off not only the militia who had been with us at Camden, but also all the well-affected neighbours on our route, together with the wives, children, negroes, and baggage, of almost all of them.

My first news, upon landing at Nelson's, was, that the post at Motte's house had fallen. It was a simple redoubt, and had been attacked formally by sap. Lieutenant M'Pherson had maintained it gallantly till the house in the center of it was set in flames by fire arrows, which obliged his men to throw themselves into the ditch, and surrender at discretion.

BUT as Major M'Arthur had joined me with near three hundred foot and eighty dragoons, I conceived I might, without hazarding too far, endeavour to check the enemy's operations on the Congaree. On the 14th, at night, I marched from Nelson's, and on the evening of the 15th I reached the point where the roads from Congarees and  
M'Coard's

M'Coard's ferry unite. Various information was brought to me this APPENDIX.  
ther, that Greene had passed the Congaree, at M'Coard's ferry, and  
had pushed down the Orangeburgh road. The accounts, though none  
of them positive or singly satisfactory, corresponded so much, that I  
was led to believe them, and the matter was of such moment, that it  
would not admit of my pausing for more certain information; there-  
fore, after giving the troops a little rest, I moved back to Eutaws the  
same night, but hearing nothing there, I pursued my march hither.

By my present situation, I cover those districts from which Charles  
town draws its present supplies. I am in readiness to improve any  
favourable occurrence, and guard against any untoward event.

It is a secondary, but not a trifling advantage, that I have been  
able to supply the troops with necessaries; for the want of which,  
occasioned by the long interruption of our communication, they suf-  
fered serious distress.

I AM using every effort to augment our cavalry, in hopes that the  
arrival of some force will speedily enable us to adopt a more active  
conduct.

*Extract (9.) of a letter from Lord Rawdon to Lieutenant-general Earl  
Cornwallis, dated Charles town, June 5, 1781.*

GENERAL Greene invested Ninety Six on the 22d of May. To  
my great satisfaction, however, I learned, by messages which I have  
found means to interchange with Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, that the

(9.) Vide Remembrancer, page 153, 2d part, 1781.

APPENDIX. new works were completed before the enemy's approach. The garrison is ample for the extent, and the fire of the enemy had no effect. Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, therefore, only apprehends, that relief may not arrive before his provisions are expended.

FORTUNATELY we are now in a condition to undertake succouring him, without exposing a more valuable stake; and from the report of his provisions which he sent to me, I trust we shall be fully in time.

AUGUSTA is likewise besieged; but I hope in little danger. Sir James Wright represented so strongly the want of troops at Savannah, that I thought it necessary to send the King's American regiment thither with all dispatch.

ON the 3d instant the fleet from Ireland arrived, having aboard the 3d, 19th, and 30th regiments, a detachment from the guards, and a considerable body of recruits; the whole under the command of Colonel Gould, of the 30th. Lieutenant-colonel Balfour and I immediately made known to Colonel Gould the power which your lordship had given to us, for detaining such part of the expected reinforcement as we might conceive the service required: And it has been settled, that the three regiments shall all remain here until your lordship signifies your pleasure respecting them. I shall march on the 7th towards Ninety Six, having been reinforced by the flank companies of the three new regiments.

I AM happy in mentioning to your lordship a handsome testimony of zeal for His Majesty's interests, which has occurred here: Considerable difficulty having arisen in the formation of cavalry, some of the principal inhabitants of this town made a subscription, amounting

to

to near three thousand guineas; which sum they requested I would APPENDIX. apply to the purpose of equipping a corps of dragoons in the manner I should judge most expedient. As I had no means of forming such a corps but by drafts from the infantry, I thought your lordship would be pleased that a compliment should be paid to the loyalty of the gentlemen above mentioned, by fixing upon men connected with the province; I have therefore ordered the South-Carolina regiment to be converted into cavalry, and I have the prospect of their being mounted and completely appointed in a few days.

JUNE 6. I have just had the satisfaction to learn, that the King's American regiment arrived safe at Savannah.

*Extract (10.) of a letter from Colonel Lord Rawdon to Sir Henry Clinton, dated Charles town, June 6th, 1781.*

I CANNOT in any manner give your excellency a more explicit account of what has passed in this province, and of the present state of our affairs, than by enclosing to your excellency, copies of the letters which I have, at different periods, written to Lord Cornwallis. The situation of the province has been critical; yet I am well convinced, that numbers have joined the enemy merely to shield themselves from the atrocious barbarity of the rebel militia, which has been beyond what I have ever heard of among the most savage nations. Should we be successful in our present enterprize, it will probably be found necessary to make the Santee and Congaree the boundaries of our posts, and to invite the friends of government to settle upon the estates of revoltors within the claim of our stations. The back parts of the pro-

(10.) Vide Remembrancer, page 154, 2d part, year 1781.



APPENDIX. vince must necessarily depend upon the country enclosed by those rivers, as long as we keep possession of the Chesapeake.

IT is in some measure necessary to connect the foregoing letters by a citation from a periodical work.

ON (11.) the night of the 13th, the army began to pass the river at Nelson's ferry, and by the following evening every thing was safely landed on the other side. The first intelligence Lord Rawdon received on passing the Santee, was the unwelcome news, that the post at Motte's house, after a gallant defence, had already fallen into the hands of the enemy. This was a heavy stroke, as that place had been made a deposit for all the provisions that were intended for the supply of Camden: Things were, however, worse than he yet knew, for the strong post at Orangeburgh was already taken, and fort Granby not long after. Thus the British force in the province was exceedingly weakened, by the number of brave officers and soldiers who fell into the hands of the enemy, through this sudden and unexpected attack upon their detached posts in every part of the country.

LORD Rawdon was met at Nelson's by Lieutenant-colonel Balfour, the commandant of Charles town; who came thither to represent to him, and to consult upon, the state and circumstances of that city, as well as of the province in general. He stated, that the revolt was universal; that from the little room there had been to apprehend so serious and alarming a turn of affairs, the old works of Charles town had been in part levelled, to make way for new ones, which were not yet constructed; that he had full conviction of the disaffection, in ge-

(11.) Vide Annual Register, page 85, year 1781.

neral,



neral, of the inhabitants; and that, under these circumstances, his APPENDIX. garrison was inadequate to its defence, against any force of consequence that might attempt that city.

THE conclusions drawn from a full consideration of this untoward state of affairs were, that if any misfortune happened to the corps under Lord Rawdon, the probable consequence would be, the total loss of the province, including the capital; but that, although the highest degree of prudence and caution were upon that account indispensably necessary, yet, as he was just joined by Major M'Arthur, with about three hundred foot and eighty dragoons, he conceived he might, without hazarding too much, endeavour to check the operations of the enemy on the Congaree.

A SIGNAL instance now occurred of the general, if not universal, disaffection of the country. For five days after Lord Rawdon had passed the Santee, not a single person of any sort whatever, whether with intelligence, or upon any other account, came near the army, although he had advanced directly from Nelson's ferry, that night and the following day's march into the country, to a certain point where the roads from Nelson's and M'Cord's ferry meet; nor could the emissaries and spies which he detached on all hands procure him any true intelligence, as to the situation of the enemy, or the state of the country: A number of reports, however, which were contradictory in other respects, seemed to concur in one point, which was, that Greene had passed the Congaree river, and was pressing down the Orangeburgh road with a strong force. This intelligence was of too great moment to be slighted; and not only obliged the British commander to relinquish his design of advancing to the Congaree, but laid him under a necessity of falling back to the Eutaws, and afterwards of

APPENDIX. moving to Monk's corner, for the protection of Charles town, and of the rich intervening country.

As the dereliction of the upper country left the post at Ninety Six entirely exposed to the enemy, Lord Rawdon was under great anxiety for the safety of that garrison. The objects now at stake were, however, too great to be hazarded, for the purpose of protecting that place, or even of extricating the troops: But if no such restraint had been laid upon his activity, it still would have been a question of great doubt, whether, in the present state of things, the design would have been practicable; for, besides the growing force of the enemy, and their possession of the posts on all hands, there were no magazines, no deposits of provisions of any kind, for the support of the army on the way; and to trust to the uncertain gleanings of a wasted and hostile country on a march, surrounded on every side by swarms of light troops, and of militia on horseback, with an enemy much superior in number still to encounter, would have been hazardous in the extreme. Thus circumstanced, he dispatched several messengers by different routes, and, to guard as much as possible against mischance, applied to Colonel Balfour to send others from Charles town, with instructions to Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, who commanded at Ninety Six, to abandon that place, and to remove, with all the garrison, as speedily as possible, to Augusta, upon the Savannah, which was the nearest post of Georgia.

So bad was the intelligence, and so difficult to be obtained, that it was not until after the arrival of the troops at Monk's corner, that Lord Rawdon discovered, that it was not General Greene, but Sumpter, who had taken possession of Orangeburgh; the former being then occupied in taking a British post at the Congarees. While the troops

were

were employed in covering the districts from which Charles town APPENDIX drew its supplies of provision, Lord Rawdon was preparing for more active service, by unceasing efforts for the augmentation of his cavalry.

(12.) WHILST the important post at Ninety Six was closely invested, <sup>Ninety Six</sup> and held to be in the utmost danger, it seemed ominous, but such was <sup>invested.</sup> the hostile state of the country, that none of the messengers which Lord Rawdon and Colonel Balfour had dispatched to Colonel Cruger, with orders for abandoning that place, had been able to reach him: The fort was, however, in a better state of defence than had been expected; the works were completed, and strong; and the garrison amounted to near four hundred regular troops, besides militia. In these circumstances, Greene found himself obliged to sit down before it in form, on the 22d of May; the garrison made a gallant defence, and the failure of provisions afforded the principal cause of apprehension.

THE fortunate arrival of three regiments from Ireland, under the conduct of Colonel Gould, afforded an opportunity for the relief of this garrison, which would otherwise have been desperate; for though they were destined to join Earl Cornwallis, the good disposition and promptness of the commander to concur in the immediate defence of the province, as a more urgent service than any other in view, prevented those difficulties which must otherwise have arisen. These circumstances suddenly changed the face of affairs, and enabled Lord Rawdon to undertake the relief of Ninety Six.

(12.) Vide Annual Register, page 91, year 1781.

AUGUST

APPENDIX. AUGUSTA had also been for some time besieged; and the whole province of Georgia was deemed to be in such imminent danger, that Lord Rawdon found himself under a necessity, even in that state of weakness which preceded the arrival of the troops from Ireland, to part with the King's American regiment, and to commit it to the hazard of passing in such small craft as were at hand, and without convoy, from Charles town, in order to reinforce Sir James Wright, at the town of Savannah.

LORD Rawdon marched from Charles town with something more than one thousand seven hundred foot and one hundred and fifty horse, for the relief of Ninety Six, in four days after the arrival of the troops from Ireland. He was joined on the way by Colonel Doyle, with the troops which he had left at Monk's corner, (13.) and he pressed his march with all the rapidity which the excessive heat of the weather would permit. To prevent the enemy's detachments on the Congaree, and other parts on the eastern side, from reinforcing Greene, while he was pushing forwards, he deviated from the course which he otherwise would have taken, and keeping considerably more to the right, passed the little Saluda near its junction with the greater river of that name. This route, however, enabled a Colonel Middleton, who was on his way from the Congarees with about three hundred cavalry and

(13.) There appears to be an error in this statement of the force marched from Charles town. Lord Rawdon, in his letter of the 5th to Earl Cornwallis, says, he should move on the 7th of June towards Ninety Six, with the troops at Monk's corner, and the flank companies of the three regiments lately arrived: Therefore it seems more probable that Lord Rawdon's whole force did not exceed two thousand men; viz. the garrison withdrawn from Camden, Lieutenant-colonel Watson's corps, Major M'Arthur's reinforcement, and the flank companies of Colonel Gould's brigade: But perhaps the 3d and 19th regiments might move from Charles town, towards Dorchester or Monk's corner, at the same time that Lord Rawdon left it, though not intended for the expedition to Ninety Six.

mounted

mounted militia, to endeavour to harass his rear, and particularly to obstruct the parties which were necessarily engaged in collecting cattle for the support of the army. After giving some trouble of this nature, Middleton being trained into a well-laid ambush, was spiritedly charged by Major Coffin, at the head of the royal cavalry, and his party was so completely routed and dispersed, as never again to appear during the march.

BEFORE he approached General Greene, Lord Rawdon had intelligence of the fall of Augusta. Surrender of Augusta.

THE following is General Pickens and Lieutenant-colonel Lee's report of the capitulation of fort Cornwallis.

(14.) No. I.

S I R,

Augusta, May 31, 1781.

THE usage of war renders it necessary that we present you with an opportunity of avoiding the destruction which impends your garrison.

WE have deferred our summons to this late date, to preclude the necessity of much correspondence on the occasion. You see the strength of the investing forces; the progress of our works; and you may inform yourself of the situation of the two armies, by inquiries from Captain Armstrong, of the legion, who has the honour to bear this.

We have the honour to be, &c.

ANDREW PICKENS,

B. G. militia.

HENRY LEE, junior,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding continental troops.

Lieutenant-colonel Brown.

[(14.) Vide Remembrancer, page 289, 2d part of 1781.

No.



## APPENDIX.

## No. II.

GENTLEMEN,

WHAT progress you have made in your works I am no stranger to. It is my duty and inclination to defend this post to the last extremity.

I have the honour to be, &c.

THOMAS BROWN,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
King's troops at Augusta.

Brig. gen. Pickens and Lieut. col. Lee.

## No. III.

S I R,

IT is not our disposition to press the unfortunate.

To prevent the effusion of blood which must follow perseverance in your fruitless resistance, we inform you, that we are willing, though in the grasp of victory, to grant such terms as a comparative view of our respective situations can warrant.

Your determination will be concluded as conclusive, and will regulate our conduct.

We have the honour to be, &c.

ANDREW PICKENS,

B. G. militia.

HENRY LEE, junior,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding continental troops.

Lieutenant-colonel Brown.

No.



## No. IV.

Fort Cornwallis, June 3.

GENTLEMEN,

I HAVE the honour to acknowledge the receipt of your summons APPENDIX. of this day, and to assure you, that as it is my duty, it is likewise my inclination to defend the post to the last extremity.

I have the honour to be, &amp;c.

THOMAS BROWN,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
King's troops at Augusta.

Brig. gen. Pickens and Lieut. col. Lee.

## No. V.

Head quarters, June 4, 1781.

S I R,

WE beg leave to propose, that the prisoners in your possession may be sent out of the fort, and that they may be considered yours or ours as the siege may terminate.

CONFIDENT that you cannot oppose the dictate of humanity and custom of war, we have only to say, that any request from you of a similar nature will meet our assent.

We have the honour to be, &amp;c.

ANDREW PICKENS,

B. G. militia.

HENRY LEE, junior,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
continental troops.

Lieutenant-colonel Brown.

## No. VI.

GENTLEMEN,

APPENDIX. **THOUGH** motives of humanity, and a feeling for the distresses of individuals, incline me to accede to what you have proposed concerning the prisoners with us, yet many reasons, to which you cannot be strangers, forbid my complying with this requisition — such attention as I can; consistent with good policy and my duty, shall be shewn them.

I have the honour to be, &amp;c.

THOMAS BROWN,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
King's troops at Augusta.

Brig. gen. Pickens and Lieut. col. Lee.

## No. VII.

GENTLEMEN,

**IN** your summons of the 3d instant no particular conditions were specified; I postponed the consideration of it to this day.

**FROM** a desire to lessen the distresses of war to individuals, I am inclined to propose to you my acceptance of the enclosed terms, which being pretty similar to those granted to the commanding officers of the American troops and garrison in Charles town, I imagine will be honourable to both parties.

I have the honour to be, &amp;c.

THOMAS BROWN,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
King's troops at Augusta.

Brig. gen. Pickens and Lieut. col. Lee.

No.

## No. VIII.

S I R,

THERE was a time when your propofals of this date ought to APPENDIX.  
have been accepted. That period is now paffed. You have every notice from us, and muft have known the futility of your farther opposition.

ALTHOUGH we fhould be juftified by the military of both armies to demand unconditional fubmiffion, our fympathy for the unfortunate and gallant of our profeffion has induced us to grant the honourable terms which we herewith tranfmit.

We have the honour to be, &c.

ANDREW PICKENS,

B. G. militia.

HENRY LEE, junior,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
continental troops.

## No. IX.

Fort Cornwallis, June 5, 1781.

GENTLEMEN,

YOUR proposition relative to the officers of the King's troops and militia being admitted to their paroles, and the exclusion of the men, is a matter I cannot accede to.

THE conditions I have to propofe to you are, that fuch of the different claffes of men who compofe this garrifon, be permitted to march

APPENDIX. to Savannah, or continue in the country, as to them may be most eligible, until exchanged.

I have the honour to be, &c.

THOMAS BROWN,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
King's troops at Augusta.

Brig. gen. Pickens and Lieut. col. Lee.

No. X.

Fort Augusta, June 5, 1781.

SIR,

IN our answer of this morning we granted the most generous terms in our power to give, which we beg leave to refer to as final on our part.

We have the honour to be, &c.

ANDREW PICKENS,

B. G. militia.

HENRY LEE, junior,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding continental troops.

Lieutenant-colonel Brown.

No. XI.

Fort Cornwallis, June 5, 1781.

GENTLEMEN,

AS some of the articles proposed by you are generally expressed, I have taken the liberty of deputing three gentlemen to wait upon you for a particular explanation of the respective articles.

I have the honour to be, &c.

THOMAS BROWN,

Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
King's troops at Augusta.

*Articles*

*Articles of capitulation proposed by Lieutenant-colonel Brown, and answered APPENDIX.  
by General Pickens and Lieutenant-colonel Lee.*

ART. I. THAT all acts of hostilities and works shall cease between the besiegers and besieged until the articles of capitulation shall be agreed on, signed, and executed, or collectively rejected.

ANSWER. Hostilities shall cease for one hour; other operations to continue.

ART. II. That the fort shall be surrendered to the commanding officer of the American corps, such as it now stands. That the King's troops, three days after signing the articles of capitulation, shall be conducted to Savannah, with their baggage, where they will remain prisoners of war until they are exchanged; that proper conveyances shall be provided by the commanding officer of the American troops for that purpose, together with a sufficient quantity of good and wholesome provisions till their arrival at Savannah.

ANSWER. Inadmissible. The prisoners to surrender field prisoners of war: The officers to be indulged with their paroles; the soldiers to be conducted to such place as the commander in chief shall direct.

ART. III. The militia now in garrison shall be permitted to return to their respective homes, and be secured in their persons and properties.

ANSWER. Answered by the second article, the militia making part of the garrison.



APPENDIX. ART. IV. The sick and wounded shall be under the care of their own surgeons, and be supplied with such medicines and necessaries as are allowed to the British hospitals.

AGREED.

ART. V. The officers of the garrison, and citizens who have borne arms during the siege, shall keep their side arms, pistols, and baggage, which shall not be searched, and retain their servants.

ANSWER. The officers and citizens who have borne arms during the siege shall be permitted their side arms, private baggage, and servants; their side arms not to be worn; and the baggage to be searched by a person appointed for that purpose.

ART. VI. The garrison, at an hour appointed, shall march out, with shouldered arms and drums beating, to a place to be agreed on, where they will pile their arms.

ANSWER. Agreed. The judicious and gallant defence made by the garrison, entitles them to every mark of military respect. The fort to be delivered up to Captain Rudolph at twelve o'clock, who will take possession with a detachment of the legion infantry.

ART. VII. That the citizens shall be protected in their persons and properties.

ANSWER. Inadmissible.

ART. VIII. That twelve months shall be allowed to all such as do not chuse to reside in this country, to dispose of their effects, real and personal, in this province, without any molestation whatever, or to remove to any part thereof as they may chuse, as well themselves as families.

ANSWER. Inadmissible.

ART.



ART. IX. That the Indian families now in garrison shall accompany the King's troops to Savannah, where they will remain prisoners of war until exchanged for an equal number of prisoners in the Creek or Cherokee nations.

ANSWER. Answered in the second article.

ART. X. That an express be permitted to go to Savannah with the commanding officer's dispatches, which are not to be opened.

ANSWER. Agreed.

ART. XI. Additional. The particular attention of Colonel Brown is expected towards the just delivery of all public stores, monies, &c.; and that no loans be permitted to defeat the spirit of this article.

Signed at head quarters, Augusta, June 5, 1781, by

ANDREW PICKENS,

B. G. militia.

HENRY LEE, junior,  
Lieutenant colonel, commandant.

THOMAS BROWN,  
Lieutenant colonel, commanding the  
King's troops at Augusta.

(15.) AS soon as Augusta fell, the troops employed in the reduction of that place joined General Greene, who formed a resolution, rather than give up his point at Ninety Six, to stand an action with the British troops that were advancing to its relief: But, upon deliberation afterwards, that commander did not think himself in condition to

(15.) Vide Annual Register, page 92, year 1781.

hazard

APPENDIX. hazard the encounter of so formidable a foe from without, while his hands were fully occupied by the exertions of an enemy within, who had from the beginning given constant proofs of their determined courage and resolution; and still much less could his force admit of such a division as would enable him, with any prospect of success, to encounter Lord Rawdon on his way, and at the same time to leave such a strength behind as would be necessary for guarding the works, and overawing the garrison. He was likewise disappointed by Sumpter, to whom he had sent instructions to join him with all the force that could be collected on the side of the Congaree, with a view of fighting the British army on its way; but whether it proceeded from some slowness in his movements, or from unavoidable delay, the junction was not effected in time; and the route taken by Lord Rawdon for the purpose, rendered it afterwards impracticable.

BUT, exclusive of these causes, he was not now to learn the great superiority of his enemy in all field or general engagements: Nor, in fact, was his force very considerable in respect even to number; and it was still much less so in point of estimation. His continental or regular troops formed but a diminutive part of the whole; and the others, whatever service they might be of in their own way, were of very little in regular (16.) action. On the other hand, he knew that the troops that were marching against him were fresh, excellent, and that those who were newly arrived were particularly full of ardour for an opportunity to signalize themselves.

(16.) This is rather an erroneous remark, as the British generally found themselves considerably annoyed by the militia during all actions, when their officers distributed them on the flanks of the assailants, or composed the front line of these irregular troops.

HE,

HE, however, saw that something must necessarily be attempted, and that even the running of some risk, which would not be too decisive in its worst consequences, could scarcely, in the present circumstances, be construed into imprudence. He had already pushed his sap very close to the principal redoubt of the fort at Ninety Six, and had nearly completed a subterraneous passage into the ditch; but his artillery had failed in their effect, and the works of the fort had yet suffered little. The nearness of Lord Rawdon left no time for proceeding farther by regular approach; and as he could not venture an engagement, he must either abandon the place shamefully without an attempt, or hazard a premature assault.

GENERAL Greene determined upon the latter. The attack was made on the 19th before day; and the Americans who were appointed to storm the redoubt displayed an undaunted courage. The garrison received them with equal gallantry. Scarcely an officer or private man who entered the ditch but was either killed or wounded; and yet, though the impracticability of the attempt soon became as obvious to all as its danger, no one betrayed by a single movement the smallest indication of quitting his ground. The commander, seeing so many brave men fruitlessly fall, and that fortune or chance, which so often befriended bold enterprize, shewed no disposition at all of acting in their favour, put an end to the combat, before it became more ruinous, by calling off the remainder soon after daylight.

As Greene scarcely less than expected what now really happened, he had accordingly provided for the event. All the baggage and incumbrances of the camp had been previously dispatched across the Saluda; whither, immediately upon this repulse, he also retired with his whole force. Though the Americans lost some valuable officers, and not a

General Greene repulsed with loss at Ninety Six.

APPENDIX. few private men, in this attack, yet the number actually slain (as frequently happens in such cases) was much below what might have been expected. Nothing could exceed the conduct and firmness of the governor and garrison, whether in the assault, or during every previous part of the siege.

Lord Rawdon forces Greene to retreat.

LORD Rawdon arrived at Ninety Six on the 21st of June; and having received intelligence that Greene had halted in a strong position behind Bush river, at about sixteen miles distance, and that he was likewise still incumbered with some waggons and baggage, that active commander put his fatigued troops again in motion, and crossed the Saluda on the following night in his pursuit, every kind of baggage, even the men's packs, being left behind at Ninety Six. Greene was, however, so well acquainted now with the character of his enemy, and so well guarded against surprise, that the British troops had scarcely passed the Saluda, when he moved with the greatest expedition from Bush river. Lord Rawdon pursued him with the utmost rapidity, and arrived at the fords of the Ennoree, forty miles from Ninety Six, within two hours of the time that Greene's army had passed them. The troops were so spent with fatigue, and overcome by the heat, that it was impossible to do more; but Greene was so apprehensive of his enemies, that he continued his retreat, or rather flight, without ceasing, until he had passed both the Tyger and the Broad rivers.

THE American account was published by order of Congress in the following extract of a letter from Major-general Greene, dated at Little river, near Ninety Six, June 20, 1781:

IN my last letter of the 9th, I informed your excellency, that the enemy had received a considerable reinforcement at Charles town, and  
that

that I was apprehensive they would march and interrupt our operations. APPENDIX. On the 11th I got intelligence they were advancing; I immediately advanced all the cavalry, with orders to General Sumpter to collect all the force he could, and keep in their front, and by every means in his power to retard their march. The enemy passed him at Congaree before he got his troops in motion; afterwards he found it impracticable to gain their front. It was my intention to have fought them before they arrived at Ninety Six, could I have collected a force sufficient for the purpose.

WE had pushed on our approaches very near to the enemy's work; our third parallel was formed round their abbatis; a mine and two approaches were within a few feet of the ditch. These approaches were directed against the Star fort, which stands upon the left of the town as we approached it from the Saluda. On the right our approaches were very near the enemy's redoubt: This was a strong stockade fort, with two block houses in it. These two works flanked the town, which is picketed in with strong pickets, a ditch round the whole, and a bank raised near the height of a common parapet. Besides these fortifications, were several little flèches in different parts of the town; and all the works communicated with each other by covered ways. We had raised several batteries for cannon; one upwards of twenty feet high, within one hundred and forty yards of the Star fort, to command the works, and a rifle battery also within thirty yards, to prevent the enemy from annoying our workmen. For the last ten days not a man could shew his head but he was immediately shot down; and the firing was almost incessant day and night. In this state of the approaches, I found the enemy so near us, that it would be impossible to reduce the place without hazarding a storm. This, from the peculiar strength of the place, could only be warranted by the success of a



APPENDIX. partial attempt to make a lodgement on one of the curtains of the Star redoubt, and a vigorous push to carry the right-hand work.

THE disposition was accordingly formed, and the attack made; Lieutenant-colonel Lee, with his legion infantry, and Captain Kirkwood's light infantry, made the attack on the right; and Lieutenant-colonel Campbell, with the 1st Maryland and the 1st Virginia regiments, was to have stormed the Star redoubt, which is their principal work, and stands upon the left; the parapet of this work is near twelve feet high, and raised with sand bags near three feet more. Lieutenant Duvall of the Maryland line, and Lieutenant Selden, of the Virginia line led on the forlorn hope, followed by a party with hooks to pull down the sand bags, the better to enable them to make the lodgement. A furious cannonade preluded the attack. On the right the enemy were driven out of their works, and our people took possession: On the left never was greater bravery exhibited than by the parties led on by Duval and Selden; but they were not so successful. They entered the enemy's ditch, and made every exertion to get down the sand bags, which from the depth of the ditch, height of the parapet, and under a galling fire, was rendered difficult. Finding the enemy defended their works with great obstinacy, and seeing but little prospect of succeeding without heavy loss, I ordered the attack to be pushed no farther.

THE behaviour of the troops on this occasion deserves the highest commendations; both the officers that entered the ditch were wounded, and the greater part of their men were either killed or wounded. I have only to lament that such brave men fell in an unsuccessful attempt.

CAPTAIN



CAPTAIN Armstrong, of the 1st Maryland regiment, was killed, APPENDIX. and Captain Benson, who commanded the regiment, was wounded at the head of the trenches. In both attacks we had upwards of forty men killed and wounded; the loss was principally at the Star fort and in the enemy's ditch, the other parties being all under cover. The attack was continued three quarters of an hour, as the enemy were greatly exposed to the fire of the rifle battery and artillery; they must have suffered greatly. Our artillery was well served, and I believe did great execution.

THE troops have undergone incredible hardships during the siege; and though the issue was not successful, I hope their exertions will merit the approbation of Congress.

WE continued the siege until the enemy got within a few miles of us, having previously sent off all our sick, wounded, and spare stores.

ENCLOSED is a list of our killed and wounded during the siege.

*Return of the killed, wounded, and missing, during the siege of Ninety Six, in South Carolina.*

VIRGINIA brigade. Killed, 41; wounded, 33; missing, 16.—Maryland brigade. Killed, 12; wounded, 24; missing, 3.—Light infantry. Killed, 1; wounded, 9; missing, 1.—Legion infantry. Killed, 2; wounded, 2.—Virginia militia. Killed, 1; wounded, 2.—Total. Killed, 57; wounded, 70; missing, 20.—Captain Armstrong, of the Maryland line, killed; Captain Benson and Lieutenant Duvall wounded. Captain Bentley, of the Virginia line, prisoner; Lieutenants

APPENDIX. nants Evans, Miller, and Selden, wounded. Colonel Koscuilzko, chief engineer, was slightly wounded.

O. H. WILLIAMS,  
Deputy adjutant general.

Published by order of Congress.

CHARLES THOMPSON, Sec.

Ninety Six-  
evacuated.

(17.) THE British commander found it necessary to abandon the post of Ninety Six; but as he would not omit any mark of attention to the loyalists of that country, much less have it imagined that they were abandoned, he ordered that the principals should be convened, and proposals made to them: That if they would keep together, and undertake the defence of the district against their own disaffected inhabitants, a small party should be left to keep them in countenance, with the farther encouragement, that detachments from the Congarees should at all times be sent to their support, equivalent to any force which Greene might dispatch to invade their territory; and that, on the other hand, care should be taken to provide for the removal of such families as should prefer to be fixed upon the abandoned plantations within the new frontier, which was now intended to be established. The result was, that the loyalists determined, for the security and preservation of their families, to bring them away under the protection of the army; with the farther view, when they were settled within the assigned limits, that the men should be embodied, in order to make incursions into the disaffected settlements.

(17.) Vide Annual Register, page 94, year 1781.

As

As Lord Rawdon's impatience to prosecute the business of the campaign would not admit of his waiting for this determination, he left Colonel Cruger behind with much the greater part of his force, for the purpose of carrying it into execution, while he marched himself, with eight hundred infantry and sixty horse, for the Congarees.

He had previously written, when on his way to Ninety Six, to Colonel Balfour, stating the expediency of sending a strong corps from Charles town to Orangeburgh, as a provision against any sinister event that might possibly happen. Upon Balfour's application to Colonel Gould, he immediately granted a battalion of his corps for that purpose; and Lord Rawdon, before his departure from Ninety Six, had, in consequence, received advice from the commandant of Charles town, not only of Gould's compliance, but that the 3d regiment was under orders to arrive at Orangeburgh by a specified day, and there to wait his instructions; and, as if it were to remove every possibility of doubt, he received a succeeding letter from Colonel Stuart, who commanded that regiment, with information that he was already considerably advanced on his way to Orangeburgh. This information, and a full confidence in the expected support, were the grounds upon which Lord Rawdon founded his immediate plan of operation, and were particularly the cause of his leaving so great a part of his force behind, and advancing with rather an unequal corps to the Congarees. In the same persuasion he dispatched a number of messengers by different routes to meet Colonel Stuart at Orangeburgh, and appointing their junction at the Congarees on the 3d of July.

(18.) THROUGH some error or misapprehension, which has not been explained, Colonel Stuart was not only stopped on his march by orders

(18.) Vide Annual Register, page 95, year 1781.

APPENDIX. from Charles town, but was so far recalled, that he fell back to Dorchester on his return to that place. It may be observed, that the expectation and apprehension of a French fleet and army on the coast, in order to co-operate with Greene, and to put a final end to the war in that quarter, by the reduction of Charles town, had a great influence on the operations of this campaign, and on the conduct and movements of the commanders on both sides; it may not, therefore, be unreasonable to suppose, that this apprehension, perhaps revived by some new report, occasioned the recall of Colonel Stuart. But however that may be, it certainly was a measure which, under other circumstances, might have proved fatal in the event to Lord Rawdon, and which was attended with no small danger even in the present instance.

GREENE had early information of the state of force in which the British commander marched from Ninety Six, and had the fortune likewise to intercept a letter from Colonel Stuart, signifying the change that had been made in his instructions, and the consequent impossibility of meeting him at the time and place appointed. These circumstances led him to the design of surrounding Lord Rawdon so effectually, that he could not extricate himself, while he continued lingering in the vain expectation of a reinforcement which was not to arrive.

LORD Rawdon, by forced marches, in order to surprize a body of militia, of which he had received some intelligence, arrived at the Congarees on the 1st of July, two days before the appointed time; a rapidity of movement which probably had no small effect upon the issue of Greene's scheme. He soon discovered that the enemy's light troops were in the neighbourhood, and took the necessary precautions.

on.

on that account; but his cavalry, regardless of express orders to the contrary, went out by themselves to forage on the morning of the very day upon which Colonel Stuart was expected: They were soon surrounded by Lee's legion; and two officers, with forty dragoons, and their horses, were all taken without a blow. This, which in other circumstances would not have been much thought of, was, in the present, a most grievous stroke; and more particularly so, as the means of procuring intelligence in this crisis of so much danger was thereby cut off almost entirely. This loss, with the unexpected assemblage of the enemy, which had already been discovered in the neighbourhood, and the unexpected failure on Stuart's side, happily laid open at once to Lord Rawdon, all the danger of his own situation: He accordingly determined instantly to begin his march towards Orangeburgh, and to meet, or find Stuart wherever he was.

THE route lay across Congaree creek, at about three miles distance; a broad piece of water, in most parts deep, and enclosed by difficult banks. Colonel Lee, who had been appointed to the guard of this passage, having destroyed the bridge, and felled trees to render the ford impracticable, had then posted himself behind the creek, with a considerable body of cavalry, and some infantry of his legion. The intense heat of the sun about noon, which seemed almost to disable every sort of motion, and in every species of animal, had thrown the Americans off their guard; and the unexpected arrival of the British forces in that critical period, served much to facilitate the passage. After the exchange of only a few ineffectual shots, a body of infantry were thrown over, who having dispersed the enemy without trouble, the troops soon cleared the fords, and passed them without interruption.

APPENDIX. LORD Rawdon was joined on the day after his arrival at Orangeburgh by Colonel Stuart, with his own regiment; but was greatly disappointed at finding that he was unaccompanied by a body of cavalry which had been promised, and which were so particularly wanted. At the same time advice was received, that Greene had passed the Congaree, and was in full march to attack the British army. That commander having missed what he little less than considered as a certain prey, had collected all the force which the country afforded, and seemed determined, before they were farther strengthened, to try his fortune in the field: He accordingly, on the 10th of July, led his army within four miles of the British camp, and in the evening, at the head of his cavalry, closely reconnoitered their position. As their situation had but little of strength in it, excepting that the winding of the river which lay in their rear would in some measure remedy the total want of cavalry, by serving as a cover to their flanks, and reducing the enemy to a direct attack, Lord Rawdon flattered himself, that Greene's superiority of numbers would in the morning have tempted him to the trial.

WHILE the British forces were impatient for the wished event, their disposition and countenance had produced a direct contrary effect; for Greene had abandoned his camp, and retired with such precipitation in the night, and his movement was so long and effectually covered by his numerous light troops, that he secured his passage back across the Congaree before Lord Rawdon had received notice of his retreat. An unsuccessful attempt made by Sumpter, Lee, and Marion, upon the 19th regiment, at Monk's corner, along with this retreat of Greene, closed the campaign in South Carolina; the intemperateness of the climate, for a season, overcoming the violence of man. Greene being joined by Marion and the rest, took post on the high hills of Santee,



Santee, to the eastward of that river. The Santee, the Congaree, and the Edisto, were the established boundaries on the British side. APPENDIX.

(19.) It is impossible to do justice to the spirit, patience, and invincible fortitude, displayed by the commanders, officers, and soldiers, during these dreadful campaigns in the two Carolinas. They had not only to contend with men, and these by no means deficient in bravery and enterprize, but they encountered and surmounted difficulties and fatigues from the climate and the country, which would appear insuperable in theory, and almost incredible in the relation. They displayed military, and, we may add, moral virtues, far above all praise. During renewed successions of forced marches, under the rage of a burning sun, and in a climate, at that season, peculiarly inimical to man, they were frequently, when sinking under the most excessive fatigue, not only destitute of every comfort, but almost of every necessary which seems essential to his existence. During the greater part of the time, they were totally destitute of bread, and the country afforded no vegetables for a substitute. Salt at length failed; and their only resources were water, and the wild cattle which they found in the woods. Above fifty men, in this last expedition, sunk under the vigour of their exertions, and perished through mere fatigue. We must not, however, confine the praise entirely to the British troops, as a detachment of Hessians, which had been lent upon the occasion by General de Bose, deservedly came in for their proper share. The same justice requires, that the Americans should not be deprived of their share of this fatal glory. They had the same difficulties to encounter, joined to a fortune in the field generally adverse: Yet, on the whole, the campaign terminated in their favour; General Greene:

(19.) Vide Annual Register, page 97, year 1781.

APPENDIX. having recovered the far greater part of Georgia and of the two Carolinas.

THE two following letters will explain the operations in South Carolina to the middle of September, and close this appendix.

*Extract of a letter from Lieutenant-colonel Stewart to Earl Cornwallis, dated Eutaw, September 9, 1781.*

(20.) WITH particular satisfaction I have the honour to inform your lordship, that on the 8th instant I was attacked by the rebel General Greene, with all the force he could collect in this province and North Carolina, and after an obstinate engagement, which lasted near two hours, I totally defeated him, and took two six-pounders.

Soon after I had the honour of writing your lordship from Thompson's, I received information of Greene's having moved with the rebel army towards Camden, and crossed the Wateree near that place, and, from the best intelligence I could collect, was on his march to Friday's ferry, on the Congarees.

THE army under my command being much in want of necessaries, and there being at the same time a convoy with provisions on the march from Charles town, which would have necessarily obliged me to make a detachment of, at least, four hundred men (which at that time I could ill afford, the army being much weakened by sickness) to meet the convoy at Martin's, fifty-six miles from the camp: The

(20.) Vide Remembrancer, page 152, 1st part, year 1782,

distance

distance being so great, a smaller escort was liable to fall by the ene- APPENDIX.  
my's cavalry, which are very numerous.

I THEREFORE thought it adviseable to retire by slow marches to the Eutaws, where I might have an opportunity of receiving my supplies, and disencumber myself from the sick, without risking my escorts, or suffer myself to be attacked at a disadvantage, should the enemy have crossed the Congaree.

NOTWITHSTANDING every exertion being made to gain intelligence of the enemy's situation, they rendered it impossible, by way-laying the bye paths and passes through the different swamps; and even detained different flags of truce which I had sent on public business on both sides.

ABOUT six o'clock in the morning I received intelligence by two deserters, who left General Greene's camp the preceding evening, about seven miles from this place; and from their report, the rebel army consisted of near four thousand men, with a numerous body of cavalry, and four pieces of cannon.

IN the mean time I received information by Major Coffin, whom I had previously detached with one hundred and forty infantry and fifty cavalry, in order to gain intelligence of the enemy, that they appeared in force in his front, then about four miles from my camp.

FINDING the enemy in force so near me, I determined to fight them, <sup>Action at Eutaws.</sup>  
as from their numerous cavalry, seemed to me to be attended with dangerous consequences. I immediately formed the line of battle,

APPENDIX. with the right of the army to Eutaw branch, and its left crossing the road leading to Roache's plantation, leaving a corps on a commanding situation to cover the Charles-town road, and to act occasionally as a reserve. About nine o'clock the action began on the right, and soon after became general.

KNOWING that the enemy were much superior in numbers, and at the same time finding that they attacked with their militia in front, induced me not to alter my position, unless I saw a certain advantage to be gained by it; for by moving forwards, I exposed both flanks of the army to the enemy's cavalry, which I saw ready formed to take that advantage, particularly on the left, which obliged me to move the reserve to support it.

By an unknown mistake, the left of the line advanced, and drove their militia and North Carolinians before them; but unexpectedly finding the Virginian and Maryland lines ready formed, and at the same time receiving a heavy fire, occasioned some confusion: It was therefore necessary to retire a little distance to an open field, in order to form, which was instantly done, under cover of a heavy well-directed fire from a detachment of New-York volunteers, under command of Major Sheridan, whom I had previously ordered to take post in the house, to check the enemy, should they attempt to pass it.

THE action was renewed with great spirit; but I was sorry to find that a three-pounder, posted on the road leading to Roache's, had been disabled, and could not be brought off when the left of the line retired.

THE right wing of the army being composed of the flank battalion, APPENDIX. under the command of Major Majoribanks, having repulsed and drove every thing that attacked them, made a rapid move to their left, and attacked the enemy in flank: Upon which they gave way in all quarters, leaving behind them two brass six-pounders, and upwards of two hundred killed on the field of action, and sixty taken prisoners, amongst which is Colonel Washington, and from every information, about eight hundred wounded, although they contrived to carry them off during the action. The enemy retired with great precipitation to a strong situation, about seven miles from the field of action, leaving their cavalry to cover their retreat. The glory of the day would have been more complete, had not the want of cavalry prevented me from taking the advantage which the gallantry of my infantry threw in my way. I omitted to inform your lordship, in its proper place, of the army's having for some time been much in want of bread, there being no old corn or mills near me: I was therefore under the necessity of sending out rooting parties from each corps, under an officer, to collect potatoes, every morning at daybreak; and unfortunately, that of the flank battalion and buffs having gone too far in front, fell into the enemy's hands before the action began, which not only weakened my line, but increased their number of prisoners.

SINCE the action, our time has been employed in taking care of the wounded; and finding that the enemy have no intention to make a second attack, I have determined to cover the wounded as far as Monk's corner with the army.

My particular thanks are due to Lieutenant-colonel Cruger, who commanded the front line, for his conduct and gallantry during the action; and Lieutenant-colonel Allen, Majors Dawson, Stewart, Sheridan,

APPENDIX. ridan, and Coffin, and to Captains Kelly and Campbell, commanding the different corps and detachments; and every other officer and soldier fulfilled the separate duties of their stations with great gallantry: But to Major Majoribanks, and the flank battalion under his command, I think the honour of the day is greatly due. My warmest praise is due to Captain Barry, deputy adjutant general, Major-brigade Coxon, Lieutenant Ranken, assistant quarter-master general, and to acting Major-of-brigade Roorback, for the great assistance they rendered me during the day.

I HOPE, my lord, when it is considered such a handful of men, attacked by the united force of Generals Greene, Sumpter, Marion, Sumner, and Pickens, and the legions of Colonels Lee and Washington, driving them from the field of battle, and taking the only two six-pounders they had, deserve some merit.

INCLOSED is the returns of the killed, wounded, and missing of His Majesty's troops. From the number of corps and detachments which appear to have been engaged, it may be supposed our force is great; but your lordship will please to observe, that the army was much reduced by sickness and otherwise. I hope your lordship will excuse any inaccuracy that may be in this letter, as I have been a good deal indisposed by a wound which I received in my left elbow, which, though slight, from its situation is troublesome. It will give me most singular pleasure, if my conduct meets with the approbation of His Majesty, that of your lordship, and my country.

*Return*



*Return of killed, wounded, and missing.*

APPENDIX.

THREE commissioned officers, 6 serjeants, 1 drummer, 75 rank and file, killed; 16 commissioned officers, 20 serjeants, 2 drummers, 313 rank and file, wounded; 10 commissioned officers, 15 serjeants, 8 drummers, 224 rank and file, missing.

*Copy of a letter from General Greene to the President of Congress, from his head quarters, at Martin's tavern, near Ferguson's swamp, in South Carolina, Sept. 11, 1781.*

(21.) IN my dispatches of the 25th of August, I informed your excellency, that we were on the march to Friday's ferry, with the intent of forming a junction with the troops of the state and a corps of militia that were there assembled, and to attack the English army, encamped near M'Leod's ferry.

ON the 27th, upon our arrival there, I received advice that the enemy had retired. We passed the river at Howell's ferry, and our first post was Mothe's plantation, where I learnt that the enemy had stopped at Eutaw's spring, about forty miles from us, where they had received a reinforcement, and they prepared to establish a post there. To dislodge them, I determined to hazard an engagement, although we were considerably inferior in number.

WE began to march on the 5th of September; and we advanced by small marches, as well to disguise our intention, as to give time to

(21.) Vide Remembrancer, page 175, 1st part, 1781.

3. U

General

APPENDIX. General Marion, who had been detached, to rejoin us ; so that it was the 7th when we came to Bendell's plantations, within seventeen miles of the enemy.

WE marched to attack the enemy at four o'clock in the morning of the 8th. Our front line was composed of four small battalions of militia, two of North and two of South Carolina ; our second line consisted of three small brigades of continental troops, one of North Carolina, one of Virginia, and one of Maryland ; Lieutenant-colonel Lee, with his legion, covered our right flank ; and Lieutenant-colonel Henderson, with the state troops, our left. Lieutenant-colonel Washington, with his cavalry and the Delaware troops, formed the body of reserve. Two three-pounders were in the front of our line, and two six-pounders with the second line. The legion and the state troops formed our advanced guard, and were to retreat on our flanks when the enemy should form. We marched in this order to the attack. The legion and state troops met with a part of the enemy's horse and foot, about four miles from their camp, and put them to flight with fixed bayonets, having killed and wounded many. As we thought this was the van of the enemy, our first line was ordered to form, and the legion and state troops to take post on our flanks. From the place of action to Eutaw springs, the whole country is covered with wood. The firing began at three miles from the English camp. The militia advanced firing, and the advanced posts of the enemy were routed. The fire redoubled ; our officers behaved with the greatest bravery, and the militia gained much honour by their firmness : But the fire of the enemy, who continued to advance, being superior to our's, the militia were obliged to retreat.

THE Carolina brigade, under General Sumner, were ordered to support them, and, though not above three months raised, behaved nobly. In this moment of action, the Virginians, under Colonel Campbell, and the Marylanders, under Colonel Williams, advanced in the face of the enemy's fire; a terrible cannonade, and a shower of bullets, overturned all that presented, and the enemy were put to the rout.

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL Lee turned his left flank to the enemy, and charged them in the rear, while the troops of Maryland and Virginia charged them in the front. Colonel Hampton, who commanded the troops of the state, charged one part, of whom he made one hundred prisoners. Colonel Washington advanced with a corps de reserve upon the left, where the enemy appeared to prepare again to make resistance, and charged them so impetuously with his cavalry, and a body of infantry, that they had not time to rally.

WE continued to pursue the enemy, after having broken them, until we attained their camp. A great number of prisoners fell into our hands, and some hundreds of fugitives escaped towards Charles town: But a party having got into a brick house, three stories high, and others took post in a pallisadoed garden, their rear being covered by springs and hollow ways, the enemy renewed the fight. Lieutenant-colonel Washington did his utmost to dislodge them from a thick wood, but found it impossible; his horse was killed under him, and himself wounded, and taken prisoner. Four cannon were advanced against the house, but the fire from it was so brisk, that it was impossible to force it, or even to bring on the cannon, when the troops were ordered to retreat, and the greatest part of the officers and men who served those cannon were either killed or wounded.

APPENDIX. WASHINGTON having failed in his attack on the left, the legion could not succeed on the right; and seeing our foot roughly handled by the enemy's fire, and our ammunition almost expended, I thought it my duty to shelter them from the fire from the house, being persuaded that the enemy could not maintain their posts but a few hours, and that we should have better play on their retreat, than to obstinately persist in dislodging them, which would expose us to a considerable loss.

WE collected all our wounded, except those who were too forward under the fire of the house, and we returned to the bank, which we occupied in the morning, not finding water any where nearer, and our troops having great need of refreshment, after a fight which had continued four hours. I left upon the field of battle a strong picket.

I SHALL send Colonel Lee and General Marion early to-morrow morning between Eutaw's and Charles town, to prevent the reinforcements which may come to succour the enemy, or to retard their march, if they attempt to retreat, and give room to the army to attack their rear guard, and complete our success. We lost two pieces of artillery to the enemy, and we have taken one of theirs.

THE night of the 9th the enemy retired, leaving more than seventy of their wounded behind them, and more than a thousand arms, which they had broken and concealed in the springs of the Eutaw's; they flaved twenty or thirty barrels of rum, and destroyed a large quantity of provisions, which they could not carry with them.

WE pursued them as soon as we had notice of their retreat, but they joined Major M'Arthur, General Marion and Colonel Lee not having  
troops

troops enough to hinder them. At our approach they retired to APPENDIX Charles town. We took five hundred prisoners, including the wounded they had left behind; and I reckon they had not less than six hundred killed and wounded. The fugitives spread such an alarm, that the enemy burnt their provisions at Dorchester, and quitted their post at Fair lawn. A great number of negroes and others have been employed to throw down trees across the roads at some miles from Charles town. Nothing but the brick house, and their strong post at Eutaw's, hindered the remains of the British army from falling into our hands.

WE have pursued them to the Eutaw's, but could not overtake them. We shall rest here one or two days, and then retake our old position near the heights of Santee.

I THINK I owe the victory which I have gained to the brisk use the Virginians and Marylanders, and one party of the infantry, made of the bayonet. I cannot forbear praising the conduct and courage of all my troops.

(Signed) NATH. GREENE.

*State of the continental troops.*

KILLED. 1 lieutenant colonel, 6 captains, 5 subalterns, 4 serjeants, 98 rank and file. — Wounded. 2 lieutenant colonels, 7 captains, 20 lieutenants, 24 serjeants, 209 rank and file. — Total, 408 men.

*State*

*State of the continental troops of the state and militia.*

KILLED. 1 major, 4 fubalterns, 4 ferjeants, 16 foldiers. —  
Wounded. 3 lieutenant colonels, 6 captains, 5 fubalterns, 8 ferjeants,  
91 foldiers. — Miffing, 8 foldiers. — Total, 146 men.

TOTAL of the killed, wounded, and miffing, of the continental  
troops of the state and militia, 554 men.

Published by order of Congrefs.

CHARLES THOMPSON, Sec.

THE END.



BOOKS printed for, and Sold by, T. CADELL,  
in the STRAND; 1787.

QUARTO.

THE HISTORY of ENGLAND, from the Invasion of Julius Cæsar to the Revolution. A new Edition, printed on fine Paper, with many Corrections and Additions; and a complete Index. 8 Vols. Royal Paper. 7l. 7s.

\* \* \* Another Edition on small Paper. 4l. 10s.

\* \* \* Another Edition in 8 Vols. 2l. 8s.

The HISTORY of SCOTLAND, during the Reigns of Queen Mary and of King James VI., till his Accession to the Crown of England; with a Review of the Scottish History previous to that Period; and an Appendix, containing Original Papers. 2 Vols. By *William Robertson*, D. D. The 5th Edition. 1l. 10s.

\* \* \* Another Edition in 2 Vols. 14s.

The HISTORY of the REIGN of the Emperor CHARLES V.; with a View of the Progress of Society in Europe, from the Subversion of the Roman Empire to the Beginning of the Sixteenth Century. By *William Robertson*, D. D. Embellished with 4 Plates elegantly engraved. 3 Vols. 3l. 3s.

\* \* \* Another Edition in 4 Vols. 1l. 4s.

The HISTORY of AMERICA, Vol. I. and II. By the same Author. Illustrated with Maps. 2l. 2s.

\* \* \* Another Edition in 3 Vols. 18s.

The HISTORY of the REIGN of PHILIP the Second, King of SPAIN. By *Robert Watson*, LL. D., Professor of Philosophy and Rhetoric at the University of St. Andrew. 2d Edition. 2 Vols. 2l. 2s.

\* \* \* Another Edition in 3 Vols. 18s.

The HISTORY of the Decline and Fall of the ROMAN EMPIRE. By *Edward Gibbon*, Esq., which completes a Period of History from the Age of Trajan and the Antonines to the total Destruction of the Roman Empire in the West; adorned with the Head of the Author, and Maps adapted to the Work. 3 Vols. 3l. 15s.

††† The second and third Volumes may be had separate to complete Sets. 2l. 2s. in Boards.

\* \* \* Another Edition in 6 Vols. 1l. 16s.

The HISTORY of ANCIENT GREECE, its Colonies, and Conquests, from the earliest Accounts till the Division of the Macedonian Empire in the East. Including the History of Literature, Philosophy, and the fine Arts. By *John Gillies*, M. D. 2 Vols. 2l. 10s.

The

The HISTORY of GREAT BRITAIN, from the first Invasion of it by the Romans, under Julius Cæsar; written on a new Plan. By *Robert Henry*, D. D. 5 Vols. 5l. 5s. in Boards.

An INQUIRY into the Principles of POLITICAL OECONOMY; being an Essay on the Science of Domestic Policy in Free Nations; in which are particularly considered, Population, Agriculture, Trade, Industry, Money, Coin, Interest, Circulation, Banks, Exchange, Public Credit, Taxes, &c. By Sir *James Stuart*, Bart. 2 Vols. Royal Paper. 2l. 2s. in Boards.

LECTURES on RHETORIC and BELLES LETTRES. By *Hugh Blair*, D. D., one of the Ministers of the High Church, and Professor of Rhetoric and Belles Lettres, in the University of Edinburgh; with a Head of the Author. 2 Vols. 2l. 2s.

\* \* \* Another Edition in 3 Vols. 18s.

An Account of the VOYAGES undertaken by Order of His present Majesty for making DISCOVERIES in the SOUTHERN HEMISPHERE, and successively performed by Commodore Byron, Captain Wallis, and Captain Carteret, in the Dolphin, and Swallow, and the Endeavour; drawn up from the Journals which were kept by the several Commanders, and from the Papers of Joseph Banks, Esq. and Dr. Solander. By *John Hawkesworth*, LL.D. Illustrated with Cuts and a great Variety of Charts and Maps (in all, fifty-two Plates) relative to the Countries now first discovered, or hitherto but imperfectly known. Price 3l. 12s. bound.

An Account of a VOYAGE towards the SOUTH POLE, and ROUND the WORLD. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775. Written by *James Cook*, Commander of the Resolution. In which is included Captain Furneaux's Narrative of his Proceedings in the Adventure, during the Separation of the Ships. Elegantly printed in 2 Vols. Royal. Illustrated with Maps and Charts, and a Variety of Portraits of Persons and Views of Places, drawn during the Voyage by Mr. *Hodges*, and engraved by the most eminent Masters. Price 2l. 12s.

A VOYAGE to the PACIFIC OCEAN, undertaken by Command of His Majesty, for making Discoveries in the NORTHERN HEMISPHERE, to determine the Position and Extent of the West Side of North America; its Distance from Asia; and the Practicability of a Northern Passage to Europe; performed under the Direction of Captains Cooke, Clerke, and Gore, in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Discovery, in the Years 1776, 1777, 1778, 1779, and 1780, in 3 Volumes. Vol. 1 and 2 written by Captain *James Cooke*, F. R. S. Vol. 3, by Captain *James King*, LL. D. F. R. S. Illustrated with Maps and Charts from the original Drawings made by Lieut. *Henry Roberts*, under the Direction of Captain Cook; and with a great Variety of Portraits of Persons, Views of Places, and historical Representations of remarkable Incidents, drawn by Mr. *Webber* during the Voyage, and engraved by the most eminent Artists. Published by Order of the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty.

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY



U. S. I. LIBRARY

REFERENCE BOOK

26 NOV 1986



Class No. 9.733

Book No. 8715

TAR  
Film

M733

T16 H